wishyou.today learning

chinese hsk 6 in 90 days

The whole course on paper: all 1800 new words with their meanings and examples, every grammar pattern and every dialogue.

Free, with audio, games and progress tracking, at wishyou.today/learning

contents

1. day 1 · at the service counter
2. day 2 · shopping smart
3. day 3 · what to wear
4. day 4 · fix it yourself
5. day 5 · hands and feet
6. day 6 · oops!
7. day 7 · a day off
8. day 8 · mission: a busy saturday
9. day 9 · flavours
10. day 10 · a string of grapes
11. day 11 · eating well
12. day 12 · at the doctor's
13. day 13 · inside the body
14. day 14 · germs and first aid
15. day 15 · body and mind
16. day 16 · mission: dinner and a doctor
17. day 17 · the whole family
18. day 18 · a new flat
19. day 19 · chores
20. day 20 · around town
21. day 21 · on the road
22. day 22 · planning a trip
23. day 23 · crossing borders
24. day 24 · mission: the family trip
25. day 25 · how do you feel?
26. day 26 · missing someone
27. day 27 · what are they like?
28. day 28 · getting along
29. day 29 · arguing and making up
30. day 30 · keep going
31. day 31 · talking and listening
32. day 32 · mission: the surprise party
33. day 33 · courses and subjects
34. day 34 · study habits
35. day 35 · campus life
36. day 36 · job hunting
37. day 37 · at the office
38. day 38 · teamwork
39. day 39 · plans and reviews
40. day 40 · mission: the job interview
41. day 41 · taking sides
42. day 42 · cause and effect
43. day 43 · thinking clearly
44. day 44 · solving problems
45. day 45 · learning from the past
46. day 46 · a good argument
47. day 47 · mission: the big debate
48. day 48 · starting a company
49. day 49 · made in China
50. day 50 · selling and deals
51. day 51 · money matters
52. day 52 · stocks and numbers
53. day 53 · lucky and unlucky
54. day 54 · mission: the start-up
55. day 55 · continents and coasts
56. day 56 · weather
57. day 57 · plants and farms
58. day 58 · wild animals
59. day 59 · disasters
60. day 60 · mountain rescue
61. day 61 · mission: the storm
62. day 62 · digital life
63. day 63 · online
64. day 64 · how things work
65. day 65 · in the lab
66. day 66 · big projects
67. day 67 · energy and the planet
68. day 68 · mission: the science fair
69. day 69 · the news
70. day 70 · trends
71. day 71 · doing good
72. day 72 · laws and rules
73. day 73 · crime and safety
74. day 74 · our country and the world
75. day 75 · mission: the reporter
76. day 76 · on stage
77. day 77 · music and stars
78. day 78 · art and design
79. day 79 · books and stories
80. day 80 · sports day
81. day 81 · winning and losing
82. day 82 · mission: the festival show
83. day 83 · festivals and customs
84. day 84 · the chinese language
85. day 85 · heritage and crafts
86. day 86 · emperors and dynasties
87. day 87 · war and heroes
88. day 88 · mission: the museum night

The practice exams need sound, so they live online: wishyou.today/learning/language/chinese/hsk-6/exam.html

wishyou.today learning

day 1 at the service counter

Chinese HSK 6 in 90 days
unit 1 · life admin

Sort out a bill, a receipt or a repair at a service counter, and say “although …” in a written style.

Life in China still runs through counters, hotlines and official receipts, and 虽……但…… makes you sound like the news.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
虽	suī	although (written)	他虽年轻，但做事很认真。 He is young, but he works very carefully.
窗口	chuāngkǒu	service window, counter	请到三号窗口办理。 Please go to window 3.
查询	cháxún	to look up, check (information)	你可以在网上查询航班信息。 You can check flight information online.
热线	rèxiàn	hotline	有问题可以打这个热线电话。 If you have a problem, you can call this hotline.
求助	qiúzhù	to ask for help	遇到困难的时候，不要害怕向别人求助。 When you run into trouble, don’t be afraid to ask others for help.
提示	tíshì	to alert, prompt; a hint	手机提示我密码错了。 My phone told me the password was wrong.
余额	yúé	balance (money left)	我卡里的余额不多了。 There isn’t much left on my card.
账单	zhàngdān	bill	这个月的电话账单怎么这么贵? Why is this month’s phone bill so high?
发票	fāpiào	official receipt, invoice	麻烦给我开一张发票。 Could you give me an official receipt, please?
投诉	tóusù	to complain (officially)	如果服务太差，你可以打电话投诉。 If the service is bad, you can phone and complain.
撤回	chèhuí	to withdraw, take back; unsend	我发错了消息，马上撤回了。 I sent the wrong message and unsent it straight away.
撤销	chèxiāo	to cancel, revoke	银行撤销了那笔{=(measure word: sums of money, deals)}错误的费用。 The bank cancelled the wrong charge.
保修	bǎoxiū	to be under warranty	这台洗衣机保修三年。 This washing machine has a three-year warranty.
损坏	sǔnhuài	to damage	快递到的时候，盒子已经损坏了。 When the parcel arrived, the box was already damaged.
归还	guīhuán	to return (something borrowed)	借的书要按时归还。 Borrowed books must be returned on time.
保管	bǎoguǎn	to keep safe, look after	你的护照我先帮你保管。 I’ll keep your passport safe for you for now.

财物	cáiwù	belongings, property	酒店可以帮客人保管财物。 The hotel can keep guests' belongings safe.
贵重	guìzhòng	valuable, precious	贵重的东西不要放在车里。 Don't leave valuable things in the car.
转交	zhuǎnjiāo	to pass on (to someone)	这封信请你转交给王老师。 Please pass this letter on to Teacher Wang.
通话	tōnghuà	to talk on the phone; a call	我和妈妈每周视频通话一次。 I video-call my mum once a week.
耽误	dānwu	to delay, hold up	对不起，耽误你的时间了。 Sorry for taking up your time.
当天	dàngtiān	that same day	在这家{=(measure word)}店买东西，当天就能送{=to deliver}到。 If you buy from this shop, it arrives the same day.
当场	dāngchǎng	on the spot, there and then	他当场就答应了。 He agreed there and then.
只得	zhǐdé	have no choice but to	最后一班车已经走了，我只得打车回家。 The last bus had gone, so I had no choice but to take a taxi home.

pattern 虽……，但……: although (written style)

虽 | a fact | ，但 / 可 / 却 / 也 | what is still true

虽 is the short, written form of 虽然. It goes after the subject (or at the very start), and the second half answers with 但、可、却 or 也. 却 and 也 sit after the subject of the second half, never before it.

我们虽只通话了五分钟，问题却解决了。 **wǒmen suī zhǐ tōnghuà le wǔ fēnzhōng wèntí què jiějué le** We only spoke for five minutes, yet the problem was solved.

虽耽误了一点时间，但我们当天就办完了。 **suī dānwu le yìdiǎn shíjiān dàn wǒmen dàngtiān jiù bàn wán le** Although it took a little longer, we got it all done the same day.

他虽很生气，也没有当场发脾气。 **tā suī hěn shēngqì yě méiyǒu dāngchǎng fā píqi** Angry as he was, he didn't lose his temper there and then.

dialogue a long wait at the service window

xiaoming 安娜，你也在这儿排队？
Ānnà nǐ yě zài zhèr páiduì · Anna, you're queuing here too?

anna 是啊，我这个月的账单多了两百块，打热线求助也没用。
shì a wǒ zhège yuè de zhàngdān duō le liǎngbǎi kuài dǎ rèxiàn qiúzhù yě méi yòng · Yes. My bill this month is two hundred yuan too high, and calling the hotline for help got me nowhere.

xiaoming 我也打过，通话半个小时，最后只得自己跑一趟。
wǒ yě dǎ guo tōnghuà bàn gè xiǎoshí zuìhòu zhǐdé zìjǐ pǎo yí tàng · I called too: I was on the phone for half an hour, and in the end I had to come in person.

anna 我本来已经投诉了，后来又把投诉撤回了，觉得还是来窗口说清楚比较好。
wǒ běnlái yǐjīng tóusù le hòulái yòu bǎ tóusù chèhuí le juéde háishi lái chuāngkǒu shuō qīngchu bǐjiào hǎo · I'd already filed a complaint, then I withdrew it: I thought it was better to come to the counter and explain.

xiaoming 对，有问题当场问清楚，不会耽误太多时间。
duì yǒu wèntí dāngchǎng wèn qīngchu bú huì dānwu tài duō shíjiān · Right. If you ask on the spot, it doesn't take so long.

anna 希望他们当天就能撤销那笔费用。
xīwàng tāmen dàngtiān jiù néng chèxiāo nà bǐ fèiyong · I hope they can cancel that charge today.

xiaoming 记得让他们开一张发票。我还要归还他们借给我的旧手机。
jìde ràng tāmen kāi yì zhāng fāpiào wǒ hái yào guīhuán tāmen jiè gěi wǒ de jiù shǒujī · Remember to ask them for an official receipt. I also have to return the old phone they lent me.

anna 那我们一起等吧。虽人多，但大家都很有耐心。
nà wǒmen yìqǐ děng ba suī rén duō dàn dàjiā dōu hěn yǒu nàixīn · Then let's wait together. There are lots of people, but everyone's being patient.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

归
guī
to belong to; to return

财
cái
wealth, money

good to know · A 发票 (fāpiào) is China's official tax receipt. If your company pays you back, ask for one: 我要开发票. On WeChat you can 撤回 (unsend) a message within two minutes of sending it.

You can now sort out a wrong bill in Chinese, calmly, at the counter. That's grown-up fluency.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 2 shopping smart

Compare prices, styles and sizes, and say “even if …”.

Shopping in China is half online, half in the mall, and full of vouchers and lucky draws.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
就算	jiùsuàn	even if	就算下雨，我们也要去。 Even if it rains, we’re going.
昂贵	ángguì	expensive, costly (formal)	这种手表价格昂贵。 This kind of watch is very expensive.
百货	bǎihuò	general goods	我妈妈喜欢逛百货商店。 My mum likes wandering round department stores.
店铺	diànpù	shop, store	这条街上的店铺都很有特色。 The shops on this street all have their own character.
实惠	shíhuì	good value, affordable	这家{=(measure word)}饭馆的菜又好吃又实惠。 The food at this restaurant is tasty and good value.
性价比	xìngjiàbǐ	value for money	这台电脑的性价比很高。 This computer is great value for money.
齐全	qíquán	complete, having everything	这家{=(measure word)}超市的东西很齐全。 This supermarket has everything.
款式	kuǎnshì	style, design	这件衣服的款式很新。 This piece of clothing has a very new style.
新款	xīnkuǎn	new model, latest style	新款手机下{=next}个月就能买到了。 The new phone goes on sale next month.
尺寸	chǐcùn	size, measurements	这双鞋的尺寸|有点{==a bit, rather}小。 These shoes are a little small.
看中	kànzhòng	to take a fancy to, pick out	她看中了一条红裙子。 She fell for a red skirt.
下单	xiàdān	to place an order	我昨天晚上在网上下单了。 I placed the order online last night.
便捷	biànjié	convenient and quick	用手机付钱非常便捷。 Paying by phone is very convenient.
快捷	kuàijié	fast, quick	这种付钱方式又快捷又安全。 This way of paying is fast and safe.
抽奖	chōujiǎng	to hold a lucky draw; a lucky draw	买东西满两百块就可以抽奖。 Spend two hundred yuan and you can enter the lucky draw.
中奖	zhòngjiǎng	to win a prize	你中奖了！ You’ve won a prize!
奖品	jiǎngpǐn	prize	这次的奖品是一台电脑。 This time the prize is a computer.

券	quàn	voucher, coupon	用这张券可以便宜二十块。 This voucher takes twenty yuan off.
卡片	kǎpiàn	card	她给我写了一张生日卡片。 She wrote me a birthday card.
定时	dìngshí	at a fixed time; timed	我每天定时吃药。 I take my medicine at the same time every day.
备用	bèiyòng	spare, for emergencies	出门最好带一个备用电池。 It's best to take a spare battery when you go out.
多亏	duōkuī	thanks to	多亏你提醒我，不然我就忘了。 Thanks to your reminder; otherwise I'd have forgotten.
一口气	yīkǒuqì	in one go	她一口气买了五件衣服。 She bought five pieces of clothing in one go.

pattern 就算……，也……: even if

就算 | a condition, even an extreme one | ，(subject) 也 | the result does not change

就算 opens a condition, often an extreme or unlikely one, and 也 in the second half says the result stays the same. It is the everyday spoken form; 即使 is the written one.

就算打折，这件大衣也不算实惠。 **jiùsuàn dǎzhé zhè jiàn dàyī yě bú suàn shíhuì** Even with the discount, this coat isn't good value.

就算没中奖，抽奖也很好玩。 **jiùsuàn méi zhòngjiǎng chōujiǎng yě hěn hǎowán** Even if you don't win, the lucky draw is fun.

就算是新款，性价比也不一定高。 **jiùsuàn shì xīnkuǎn xìngjiàbǐ yě bù yídìng gāo** Even if it's the new model, it isn't necessarily good value.

dialogue the perfect coat

little sister 安娜，你看这件外套，款式多好看！
Ānnà nǐ kàn zhè jiàn wàitào kuǎnshì duō hǎokàn · Anna, look at this coat. What a gorgeous style!

anna 好看是好看，可是太贵了。网上的店铺更实惠。
hǎokàn shì hǎokàn kěshì tài guì le wǎngshang de diànpù gèng shíhuì · It's lovely, but it's too expensive. The shops online are better value.

little sister 就算网上便宜，也不知道尺寸合不合适啊。
jiùsuàn wǎngshang piányi yě bù zhīdào chǐcùn hé bu héshì a · Even if it's cheaper online, I won't know if the size is right.

anna 不合适可以退。你看看这家的评价，性价比很高。
bù héshì kěyǐ tuì nǐ kàn kan zhè jiā de píngjià xìngjiàbǐ hěn gāo · If it doesn't fit, you can send it back. Look at this shop's reviews: great value for money.

little sister 我看中了这件！现在下单还可以抽奖呢。
wǒ kànzhòng le zhè jiàn xiànzài xiàdān hái kěyǐ chōujiǎng ne · I love this one! And if you order now, you get a lucky draw.

anna 奖品是什么？
jiǎngpǐn shì shénme · What are the prizes?

little sister 一等奖是新手机，二等奖是一张两百块的券和一个备用电池。
yī děng jiǎng shì xīn shǒujī èr děng jiǎng shì yì zhāng liǎngbǎi kuài de quàn hé yí gè bèiyòng diànchí · First prize is a new phone; second prize is a two-hundred-yuan voucher and a spare battery.

anna 活动晚上八点开始，我让手机定时提醒我们。
huódòng wǎnshang bā diǎn kāishǐ wǒ ràng shǒujī dìngshí tíxǐng wǒmen · It starts at eight tonight. I'll set my phone to remind us.

little sister 要是中奖了，我送你一张生日卡片！
yàoshi zhòngjiǎng le wǒ sòng nǐ yì zhāng shēngrì kǎpiàn · If I win, I'll give you a birthday card!

anna 就算不中奖，也谢谢你陪我逛街。
jiùsuàn bú zhòngjiǎng yě xièxie nǐ péi wǒ guàng jiē · Even if you don't win, thanks for shopping with me.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

昂
áng
high, raised

寸
cùn
cun (about 3.3 cm), inch

券
quàn
voucher, coupon

good to know · 性价比 (value for money) is one of the most-used words in Chinese online shopping: 性价比很高 is high praise. 中奖 is “hit the prize”: 中 is read zhòng here, as in 看中 “pick out” (the eye hits the target).

Next time you shop in Chinese, you can ask for your size, use a voucher and weigh up value for money.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 3 what to wear

Talk about clothes, fabrics, colours and jewellery, and say "so that …".

Choosing what to wear is daily life, and 以便 is the neat written way to say why you do something.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
以便	yǐbiàn	so that, in order to	请留下电话号码，以便我们联系你。 Please leave your number so that we can contact you.
背心	bèixīn	vest, tank top	夏天他总是穿一件白{=white}背心。 In summer he always wears a white vest.
内衣	nèiyī	underwear	内衣最好用冷水洗。 Underwear is best washed in cold water.
羽绒服	yǔróngfú	down jacket	北京的冬天很冷，一定要穿羽绒服。 Winters in Beijing are cold: you really need a down jacket.
袖子	xiùzi	sleeve	这件衬衫的袖子太长了。 The sleeves of this shirt are too long.
棉	mián	cotton	这条裤子是棉的，穿着很舒服。 These trousers are cotton and very comfortable.
布	bù	cloth, fabric	她用一块旧布做了一个包。 She made a bag out of an old piece of cloth.
皮	pí	leather; skin, peel	这个包是真皮的。 This bag is real leather.
柔软	róuruǎn	soft	这条围巾又柔软又暖和。 This scarf is soft and warm.
扣	kòu	to button, fasten; a button	外面风大，把衣服扣好。 It's windy outside: button up your coat.
披	pī	to drape over the shoulders	她披着一件外套出去了。 She went out with a jacket over her shoulders.
化妆	huàzhuāng	to put on make-up	她每天早上化妆要半个小时。 She spends half an hour on her make-up every morning.
香水	xiāngshuǐ	perfume	这瓶香水的味道很淡。 This perfume has a very light scent.
耳环	ěrhuán	earring	这对{=pair (measure word)}耳环是她自己做的。 She made this pair of earrings herself.
戒指	jièzhi	ring (for a finger)	他手上戴着一个戒指。 He's wearing a ring.
项链	xiàngliàn	necklace	这条项链是奶奶留给我的。 My grandma left me this necklace.
珍珠	zhēnzhū	pearl	她戴了一条珍珠项链。 She wore a pearl necklace.

珠宝	zhūbǎo	jewellery	商场一楼是珠宝店。 The ground floor of the mall is jewellery shops.
黄	huáng	to turn yellow; yellow	秋天到了，草都黄了。 Autumn is here and the grass has all turned yellow.
棕色	zōngsè	brown	我想买一双棕色的皮鞋。 I want to buy a pair of brown leather shoes.
染	rǎn	to dye	她把头发染红了。 She dyed her hair red.
搭配	dāpèi	to match, combine; go together	白{=white}衬衫搭配什么颜色的裤子都好看。 A white shirt goes with trousers of any colour.
眼看	yǎnkàn	any moment now; watch as	眼看就要下雨了，快回家吧。 It's about to rain: let's hurry home.
当下	dāngxià	right now, at present	这种颜色是当下最流行的。 This colour is the most fashionable right now.

pattern ……，以便……: so that, in order to

what you do ，以便 what it makes possible

以便 starts the second half of a sentence and gives the purpose: you do the first thing so that the second becomes easier. It is written, slightly formal Chinese; in speech people often say 好让 or just 为了.

出门前看一下天气，以便决定穿什么。 **chūmén qián kàn yíxià tiānqì yǐbiàn juédìng chuān shénme** Check the weather before you go out, so you can decide what to wear.

我把戒指放在盒子里，以便保管。 **wǒ bǎ jièzhi fàng zài hézi lǐ yǐbiàn bǎoguǎn** I put the ring in a box to keep it safe.

店员把棕色的皮包放在门口，以便顾客一进门就能看到。 **diàn yuán bǎ zōngsè de pí bāo fàng zài ménkǒu yǐbiàn gùkè yí jìn mén jiù néng kàn dào** The staff put the brown leather bags by the door so customers see them as soon as they walk in.

dialogue what to wear to the party

little sister 安娜，明天我要去参加朋友的生日会，你帮我看看穿什么。
Ānnà míngtiān wǒ yào qù cānjiā péngyou de shēngrì huì nǐ bāng wǒ kàn kan chuān shénme · Anna, I'm going to a friend's birthday party tomorrow. Help me pick something to wear.

anna 这件棕色的皮外套怎么样？是当下最流行的颜色。
zhè jiàn zōngsè de pí wàitào zěnmeyàng shì dāngxià zuì liúxíng de yánsè · How about this brown leather jacket? It's the colour of the moment.

little sister 好看，可是袖子有点长。
hǎokàn kěshì xiùzi yǒudiǎn cháng · It's nice, but the sleeves are a bit long.

anna 袖子长一点没关系，扣上以后很好看。
xiùzi cháng yìdiǎn méi guānxi kòu shàng yǐhòu hěn hǎokàn · Slightly long sleeves are fine; it looks great buttoned up.

little sister 那下面穿什么？这条裙子很柔软，那条有点短。
nà xiàmiàn chuān shénme zhè tiáo qúnzi hěn róuruǎn nà tiáo yǒudiǎn duǎn · What should I wear with it? This skirt is really soft; that one's a bit short.

anna 穿黑色那条吧，和棕色很搭配。
chuān hēisè nà tiáo ba hé zōngsè hěn dāpèi · Wear the black one: it goes well with brown.

little sister 我要不要戴点珠宝？我只有一个戒指。
wǒ yào búyào dài diǎn zhūbǎo wǒ zhǐyǒu yí gè jièzhi · Should I wear some jewellery? I've only got one ring.

anna 戴戒指就够了。简单就好，不用化妆也很漂亮。
dài jièzhi jiù gòu le jiǎndān jiù hǎo búyòng huàzhuāng yě hěn piàoliang · The ring is enough. Keep it simple: you look lovely without make-up.

little sister 好！我现在就去试试，这样明天早上就不用着急了。
hǎo wǒ xiànzài jiù qù shì shi zhèyàng míngtiān zǎoshang jiù búyòng zháojí le · Great! I'll try it on now so I won't be rushing tomorrow morning.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

披
pī
to drape over the shoulders

妆
zhuāng
make-up

戒
jiè
to guard against

good to know · 黄 on its own also works as a verb: 树叶黄了 "the leaves have turned yellow", 头发染黄了 "dyed blonde". 以便 belongs in emails, notices and essays. Chatting with friends, 好让 or 为了 sounds more natural.

You can now describe an outfit, from the fabric to the jewellery, and explain why you chose it.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 4 fix it yourself

Describe a repair job: sticking, drilling, hanging and propping things up. Say “only if …”.

Fixing things together is how friends help each other, and 除非……才…… is how you set conditions.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
除非	chúfēi	only if; unless	除非你亲自去，他才会答应。 He’ll only agree if you go in person.
补	bǔ	to patch, mend; make up for	妈妈帮我把裤子补好了。 Mum patched my trousers for me.
粘	zhān	to stick, glue	我把破了的照片粘好了。 I glued the torn photo back together.
胶带	jiāodài	sticky tape	用胶带把盒子粘上。 Tape the box shut.
胶水	jiāoshuǐ	glue	杯子摔坏了，用胶水也粘不好。 The cup is smashed; even glue won’t fix it.
钻	zuān	to drill; squeeze into, burrow	大白钻到床下面去了。 Dabai squeezed under the bed.
棍	gùn	stick, rod	他用一根长棍把球弄了出来。 He got the ball out with a long stick.
线	xiàn	thread, wire, line	电脑的线太短了。 The computer’s cable is too short.
环	huán	ring, hoop; link	这是整个计划中最重要的一环。 This is the most important link in the whole plan.
尖	jiān	pointed, sharp; tip	这把刀很尖，小心点{=a little, some}。 This knife is very sharp: be careful.
料	liào	material, stuff	这件大衣的料很好。 This coat is made of good material.
印	yìn	to print; a mark, print	请把这份材料印十份。 Please print ten copies of this document.
端	duān	to carry (level, in both hands)	服务员端来了一碗汤。 The waiter brought over a bowl of soup.
顶	dǐng	top; to hold up; (for hats)	他头上戴着一顶帽子。 He’s wearing a hat.
吊	diào	to hang, suspend	房间中间吊着一个灯。 A lamp hangs in the middle of the room.
撑	chēng	to prop up; hold open (an umbrella)	外面下雨了，她撑着伞走了出去。 It was raining, so she went out under an umbrella.
支	zhī	to prop up, support	他用手支{zhi1-6}着头，听得很认真。 Head propped on his hand, he listened closely.
支撑	zhīchēng	to support, hold up	中间这根木头支撑着整个书架。 This piece of wood in the middle holds up

			the whole bookshelf.
搭	dā	to put up (quickly); hang over	他把外套搭在椅子上。 He hung his jacket over the chair.
摆	bǎi	to put, arrange; to sway	桌子上摆着几本书。 There are a few books laid out on the table.
立	lì	to stand (something) up	请把这块牌子立在门口。 Please stand this sign by the door.
侧	cè	side; to lean to one side	我习惯侧着睡。 I usually sleep on my side.
歪	wāi	crooked, askew	墙上的画挂歪了。 The picture on the wall is hanging crooked.
弯曲	wānqū	bent, winding	这条小路很弯曲，开车要小心。 This lane is very winding, so drive carefully.

pattern 除非……，才……: only if

除非 | the one condition | ，(subject) 才 | the result

除非 names the one condition that has to be met, and 才 in the second half means “only then”. 除非你帮我，我才能修好 = I can only fix it if you help me. Tomorrow we meet its partner, 除非……否则……

除非有专业工具，我们才能在这面墙上钻洞。 **chúfēi yǒu zhuānyè gōngjù wǒmen cái néng zài zhè miàn qiáng shàng zuān dòng** We can only drill into this wall if we have proper tools.

除非下面再加一根棍子支撑，这个架子才不会倒。 **chúfēi xiàmiàn zài jiā yì gēn gùn zi zhīchēng zhège jià zi cái bú huì dǎo** This shelf will only stay up if we add another stick underneath to support it.

除非把线接好，灯才会亮。 **chúfēi bǎ xiàn jiē hǎo dēng cái huì liàng** The light will only come on if the wire is connected properly.

dialogue the bookshelf that fell down

anna 小明，我的书架倒了！你能来帮我看看吗?
Xiǎomíng wǒ de shūjià dǎo le nǐ néng lái bāng wǒ kàn kan ma · Xiaoming, my bookshelf has fallen down! Can you come and have a look?

xiaoming 我看看……这块木头太薄了，中间没有东西支撑。
wǒ kàn kan zhè kuài mùtou tài báo le zhōngjiān méiyǒu dōngxi zhīchēng · Let me see... this board is too thin, and there's nothing supporting the middle.

anna 那怎么办？要重新买吗?
nà zěnme bàn yào chóngxīn mǎi ma · So what do we do? Do I need a new one?

xiaoming 不用。除非整个书架都坏了，才需要买新的。我们在下面加一根棍子，把它支起来。
búyòng chúfēi zhěnggè shūjià dōu huài le cái xūyào mǎi xīn de wǒmen zài xiàmiàn jiā yì gēn gùn zi bǎ tā zhī qǐlai · No. You'd only need a new one if the whole thing were broken. We'll add a stick underneath and prop it up.

anna 好主意！我这儿有一些剩下的料，你看能用吗?
hǎo zhǔyi wǒ zhèr yǒu yìxiē shèng xià de liào nǐ kàn néng yòng ma · Good idea! I've got some leftover material here. Can you use it?

xiaoming 可以。小心，这块木头的一端很尖。
kěyǐ xiǎoxīn zhè kuài mùtou de yì duān hěn jiān · Yes. Careful, one end of this piece is sharp.

anna 说明书上印着一张图，你看是不是这样搭的?
shuōmíngshū shàng yìn zhe yì zhāng tú nǐ kàn shì bu shì zhèyàng dā de · There's a picture printed in the instructions. Is this how it goes together?

xiaoming 对。最上面那层不要摆太重的东西，顶上可以放几本小书。
duì zuì shàngmiàn nà céng búyào bǎi tài zhòng de dōngxi dǐng shàng kěyǐ fàng jǐ běn xiǎo shū · Yes. Don't put anything heavy on the top shelf; you can put a few small books on top.

anna 那个小环是干什么用的?
nàge xiǎo huán shì gàn shénme yòng de · What's that little ring for?

xiaoming 用来把书架固定在墙上，不然容易倒。
yònglái bǎ shūjià gùdìng zài qiáng shàng bùrán róngyì dǎo · It fixes the bookshelf to the wall; otherwise it falls over easily.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

尖
jiān
pointed, sharp; tip

顶
dǐng
top; to hold up; (for hats)

吊
diào
to hang, suspend



摆	摆	摆	摆	摆	摆	摆	摆	摆	摆	摆	摆	摆

摆
bǎi
to put, arrange; to sway

good to know · 钻 is zuān as a verb (to drill, to squeeze into) and zuàn as a noun (a drill, a diamond: 钻石). 顶 is also the measure word for hats: 一顶帽子 “a hat”.

You can now talk your way through a repair job in Chinese, and set conditions like a pro: only if …
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 5 hands and feet

Describe what hands, feet and bodies do, and say “unless …, otherwise …”.

Action verbs bring stories to life, and 除非……否则…… is how Chinese speakers warn and bargain.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
掏	tāo	to take out (from a pocket)	他从口袋里掏出一张纸。 He took a piece of paper out of his pocket.
捧	pěng	to hold in both hands	她捧着一束花走了进来。 She came in holding a bunch of flowers.
抛	pāo	to throw, toss	他把球抛给了我。 He tossed the ball to me.
扑	pū	to pounce, throw oneself at	大白一看到我就扑了过来。 As soon as Dabai saw me, he jumped up at me.
拾	shí	to pick up (from the ground)	他把地{di4-3}上的垃圾拾了起来。 He picked the rubbish up off the ground.
捉	zhuō	to catch	孩子们在草地上捉蝴蝶。 The children are catching butterflies on the grass.
牵	qiān	to lead (by the hand or a lead)	她牵着大白在公园里散步。 She’s walking Dabai in the park.
扭	niǔ	to twist, sprain	我打球的时候扭到了脚。 I twisted my ankle playing ball.
折	zhé	to break, snap; to fold	他不小心把铅笔折断了。 He snapped his pencil by accident.
挖	wā	to dig	大白在院子里挖了一个洞。 Dabai dug a hole in the yard.
喷	pēn	to spray	出门前她喷了一点香水。 She put on a little perfume before going out.
泼	pō	to splash, throw (liquid)	他不小心把咖啡泼在了我身上。 He accidentally splashed coffee on me.
撒	sǎ	to sprinkle, scatter	最后在汤上撒一点儿盐。 Finally, sprinkle a little salt over the soup.
塞	sāi	to stuff, squeeze in	她把衣服都塞进了箱子里。 She stuffed all the clothes into the suitcase.
吞	tūn	to swallow (whole)	这个药太大了，我吞不下去。 This pill is too big: I can’t swallow it.
踩	cǎi	to step on	对不起，我踩到你的脚了。 Sorry, I stepped on your foot.
蹲	dūn	to squat, crouch	他蹲下来和小朋友说话。 He crouched down to talk to the child.

迈	mài	to stride, take a step	他迈出了人生的第一步{=step}。 He took the first step of his life.
仰	yǎng	to face upward, tilt the head back	她仰着头看天上的星星。 She tilted her head back to look at the stars.
睁	zhēng	to open (the eyes)	我睁开眼睛，天已经亮了。 I opened my eyes, and it was already light.
闭	bì	to close (eyes, mouth)	请闭上眼睛，慢慢呼吸。 Please close your eyes and breathe slowly.
转身	zhuǎnshēn	to turn around	他说完就转身走了。 He said his piece, turned and left.
后退	hòutuì	to step back, retreat	看到那只大狗，孩子后退了两步{=step}。 Seeing the big dog, the child took two steps back.
使劲	shǐjìn	to use force, push hard	门太紧了，我使劲推也推不开。 The door is stuck; even pushing hard I can't open it.

pattern 除非……，否则……: unless …, otherwise …

除非 **the condition** ，否则 / 不然 **what happens if it isn't met**

除非 names the condition, and 否则 (or spoken 不然) says what happens if it isn't met. 除非下雨，否则我们去爬山 = we'll go hiking unless it rains. 否则 starts the second half, before the subject.

除非你使劲推，否则门打不开。 **chúfēi nǐ shǐjìn tuī fǒuzé mén dǎ bu kāi** Unless you push hard, the door won't open.

除非先挖一个深一点的洞，否则这棵树种不好。 **chúfēi xiān wā yí gè shēn yìdiǎn de dòng fǒuzé zhè kē shù zhòng bu hǎo** Unless you dig a deeper hole first, the tree won't take.

除非动作很快，否则捉不到这只小鸟。 **chúfēi dòngzuò hěn kuài fǒuzé zhuō bu dào zhè zhī xiǎo niǎo** Unless you're really quick, you won't catch this little bird.

dialogue dabai in the park

anna 小明，快看，大白在草地上挖洞呢！
Xiǎomíng kuài kàn Dàbái zài cǎodì shàng wā dòng ne · Xiaoming, look! Dabai's digging a hole in the grass!

xiaoming 大白，过来！……它不听我的。除非手里有吃的，否则它不会回来。
Dàbái guòlái tā bù tīng wǒ de chúfēi shǒu lǐ yǒu chī de fǒuzé tā bú huì huílái · Dabai, come here! … He won't listen. Unless I've got food in my hand, he won't come back.

anna 我出门的时候在口袋里塞了几块饼干，我把饼干抛给它吧。
wǒ chūmén de shíhou zài kǒudai lǐ sāi le jǐ kuài bǐnggān wǒ bǎ bǐnggān pāo gěi tā ba · I stuffed a few biscuits in my pocket before I left. I'll throw him one.

xiaoming 它跑回来了！哎，别扑我，我的新裤子！
tā pǎo huilai le āi bié pū wǒ wǒ de xīn kùzi · He's coming back! Hey, don't jump on me, my new trousers!

anna 哈哈，它好像把饼干整个吞下去了。
hā hā tā hǎoxiàng bǎ bǐnggān zhěnggè tūn xiaqu le · Ha ha, I think he swallowed the biscuit whole.

xiaoming 小心！草地上的水管喷水了，快后退！
xiǎoxīn cǎodì shàng de shuǐ guǎn pēn shuǐ le kuài hòutuì · Watch out! The sprinkler's come on, step back!

anna 来不及了，我全身都湿了。哎呀，我还踩到了大白挖的洞，脚扭了！
láibují le wǒ quánshēn dōu shī le āiyā wǒ hái cǎi dào le Dàbái wā de dòng jiǎo niǔ le · Too late, I'm soaked. Ouch, and I've stepped in Dabai's hole and twisted my foot!

xiaoming 快坐下来，别使劲。……还好，问题不大。
kuài zuò xialai bié shǐjìn hái hǎo wèntí bú dà · Sit down, don't put weight on it. … Phew, it's not too bad.

anna 刚才我步子迈得太大了，下次要小心一点。
gāngcái wǒ bù zi mài de tài dà le xià cì yào xiǎoxīn yìdiǎn · I was taking steps that were too big. I'll be more careful next time.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

侧
cè
side; to lean to one side

抛
pāo
to throw, toss

扑
pū
to pounce, throw oneself at



扭
niǔ
to twist, sprain

good to know · 否则 is the written word; in speech 不然 or 要不然 means the same. 拾 (to pick up) is the written word; in everyday speech people usually say 捡 jiǎn.

With today's verbs you can tell any little drama of a day, blow by blow, the way people really talk.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 6 oops!

Tell the story of things going wrong, and let it go with 算了.

Every friendship has a dinner that went wrong, and 算了 is the word that saves the evening.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
算了	suànle	forget it, never mind	算了，别生气了。 Forget it, don't be angry.
落	là	to leave behind, forget to bring	我把钥匙落{la4-6}在家里了。 I left my keys at home.
露	lòu	to show, reveal	他一笑就露{lou4-6}出了牙齿。 When he smiles, he shows his teeth.
害	hài	to cause trouble for; harm	你迟到了，害得我们等了半个小时。 You were late and made us wait half an hour.
避	bì	to avoid, keep away from	大家在商店门口避雨。 Everyone is sheltering from the rain in the shop doorway.
躲避	duǒbì	to dodge, hide from	他总是躲避这个问题。 He always dodges this question.
闪	shǎn	to dodge (quickly); to flash	一辆车开过来，他赶快往旁边一闪。 A car came towards him, and he quickly jumped aside.
逃	táo	to escape, flee	小猫从窗户逃了出去。 The kitten escaped through the window.
逃跑	táopǎo	to run away	那个人想逃跑，被警察抓住了。 The man tried to run away and was caught by the police.
扎	zhā	to prick, stab	小心，别让玻璃扎了手。 Careful, don't cut your hand on the glass.
点燃	diǎnrán	to light, ignite	他用一张旧报纸点燃了火。 He lit the fire with an old newspaper.
火柴	huǒchái	match (for lighting)	现在很少有人用火柴了。 Hardly anyone uses matches now.
混	hùn	to mix (up)	我把盐和糖混在一起了！ I've mixed up the salt and the sugar!
清	qīng	clear; to clear up, settle	我们把钱算清了。 We've settled up.
散	sǎn	to come loose, fall apart	包没拉好，书散{san3-6}了一地{di4-3}。 The bag wasn't zipped and the books spilled everywhere.
散	sàn	to break up, scatter	会议散{san4}了以后，大家一起去吃饭。 After the meeting broke up, everyone went for a meal.
散发	sànfā	to give off, send out	花园里的花散发着香味。 The flowers in the garden give off a lovely scent.

添	tiān	to add	不好意思，给你添麻烦了。 Sorry to put you to so much trouble.
转	zhuàn	to go around, spin	我们在附近转{zhuan4-6}了半天，|还是{==still, nevertheless}没找到。 We went round the area for ages and still couldn't find it.
中	zhòng	to hit (a target); be hit by	他一下就猜中{zhong4-6}了答案。 He guessed the answer straight away.
拖	tuō	to drag; to put off	这件事不能再拖了。 This can't be put off any longer.
招手	zhāoshǒu	to wave (to someone)	她在远处向我招手。 She's waving to me from far away.
片刻	piànkè	a moment	我们休息片刻再出发。 Let's rest a moment before we set off.
瞬间	shùnjiān	an instant	灯一关，房间瞬间暗了下来。 The light went off and the room was dark in an instant.

pattern 算了: forget it, let it go

what went wrong ，算了 what you'll do instead

算了 means "forget it, never mind, let it go". Say it alone, or before what you'll do instead: 算了，我们打车吧. After a condition, 就算了 is gentle: 你不想去就算了 "if you don't want to go, never mind".

你不想去就算了，我自己出去转一下。 **nǐ bù xiǎng qù jiù suànle wǒ zìjǐ chūqù zhuàn yíxià** If you don't want to go, never mind: I'll go for a wander on my own.

算了，电话里说不清，我们见面再谈吧。 **suànle diànhuà lǐ shuō bù qīng wǒmen jiànmiàn zài tán ba** Forget it, I can't explain this on the phone. Let's talk when we meet.

算了，别再躲避这个问题了，我们好好谈谈吧。 **suànle bié zài duǒbì zhège wèntí le wǒmen hǎohǎo tán tan ba** Come on, stop dodging the question. Let's talk it through.

dialogue the dinner that went wrong

anna 哎呀，汤怎么这么甜？我把盐和糖混在一起了！
āiyā tāng zěnme zhème tián wǒ bǎ yán hé táng hùn zài yìqǐ le · Oh no, why is the soup so sweet? I've mixed up the salt and the sugar!

little sister 没关系，再添一点盐就行了。
méi guānxi zài tiān yìdiǎn yán jiù xíng le · Don't worry, just add a bit more salt.

anna 算了，这锅汤别喝了。厨房里还散发着怪味呢。
suànle zhè guō tāng bié hē le chúfáng lǐ hái sànfā zhe guài wèi ne · Forget it, let's not drink this soup. The kitchen still smells funny.

xiaoming 哎，怎么突然停电了？
āi zěnme tūrán tíng diàn le · Hey, why has the power suddenly gone off?

little sister 大家别动！我刚才打破了一个杯子，小心玻璃扎脚。
dàjiā bié dòng wǒ gāngcái dǎpò le yí gè bēizi xiǎoxīn bōli zhā jiǎo · Nobody move! I just broke a glass: careful you don't cut your feet.

xiaoming 我去找火柴……找到了！我先点燃一根，请大家稍等片刻。
wǒ qù zhǎo huǒchái zhǎo dào le wǒ xiān diǎnrán yì gēn qǐng dàjiā shāo děng piànkè · I'll find the matches... got them! I'll light one: give me a moment, everyone.

anna 大白呢？它最怕黑了，肯定躲到床下面去了。
Dàbái ne tā zuì pà hēi le kěndìng duǒ dào chuáng xiàmiàn qù le · Where's Dabai? He hates the dark: he'll be hiding under the bed.

little sister 我看到它了！它只露出了一条尾巴，我向它招手，它也不出来。
wǒ kàn dào tā le tā zhǐ lòu chū le yì tiáo wěiba wǒ xiàng tā zhāoshǒu tā yě bù chūlái · I can see him! Only his tail is sticking out. I'm waving to him, but he won't come out.

xiaoming 灯亮了！大白一下就从床下逃了出来。
dēng liàng le Dàbái yíxià jiù cóng chuáng xià táo le chulai · The lights are back! Dabai has shot out from under the bed.

anna 今天的晚饭虽有点乱，但大家都很开心。
jīntiān de wǎnfàn suī yǒudiǎn luàn dàn dàjiā dōu hěn kāixīn · Dinner was a bit of a mess, but everyone had fun.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

吞
tūn
to swallow (whole)

迈
mài
to stride, take a step

仰
yǎng
to face upward, tilt the head back



劲 jìn strength										

good to know · Several of today's characters have two readings: 落 là “leave behind” (luò “fall”), 露 lòu “show” (lù “dew”), 散 sǎn “come loose” and sàn “break up”. 算了 is soft and kind; 得了 (tomorrow) is sharper. Use 算了 to calm a friend down.

You can now turn a disaster into a funny story in Chinese, and end it with a relaxed 算了.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 7 a day off

Talk about your free time, then and now, and brush things off with 得了.

A day off is when the best conversations happen, and time words let you tell how life has changed.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
得了	déle	OK, enough; come off it	得了，别再说了。 OK, that's enough.
空闲	kòngxián	free, spare (time)	空闲的时候，我喜欢去公园走走。 In my free time I like a walk in the park.
歇	xiē	to rest, take a break	走累了，我们歇一会儿吧。 We're tired from walking: let's have a rest.
放飞	fàngfēi	to let fly; let go	周末到了，放飞一下心情吧！ It's the weekend: let your mood fly free!
望	wàng	to look into the distance	他站{zhan4-3}在窗前望着远处的山。 He stood at the window gazing at the far-off mountains.
划	huà	to mark, draw (a line)	我在重要的地方划{hua4-6}了一条线。 I underlined the important parts.
出入	chūrù	coming and going; discrepancy	这两份材料的数字有些出入。 The figures in these two documents don't quite match.
栏	lán	column, box (on a form); railing	请在这一栏写上你的名字。 Please write your name in this box.
此刻	cǐkè	this moment, right now	此刻我只{zhi3}想好好休息。 Right now all I want is a good rest.
当初	dāngchū	at the time, originally	早知道这样，当初就不该来。 If I'd known, I wouldn't have come in the first place.
起初	qǐchū	at first	起初我不太习惯，后来就好了。 At first I wasn't used to it, but later it was fine.
原本	yuánběn	originally	我原本打算去爬山，后来下雨了。 I'd meant to go hiking, but then it rained.
原先	yuánxiān	formerly, before	这里原先是一家{=(measure word)}书店。 This used to be a bookshop.
先前	xiānqián	before, previously	他比先前瘦多了。 He is much thinner than before.
过后	guòhòu	afterwards, later	这件事过后再说吧。 Let's talk about it afterwards.
事后	shìhòu	after the event	事后他才知道自己错了。 Only afterwards did he realise he was wrong.
日后	rìhòu	in the future, some day	日后有机会，我一定去看你。 If I get the chance some day, I'll definitely come and see you.

日前	rìqián	a few days ago (written)	日前，这家{=(measure word)}博物馆开始免费开放。 A few days ago, the museum began opening free of charge.
往后	wǎnghòu	from now on, in future	往后我每天都要早起。 From now on I'll get up early every day.
回头	huítóu	later; to turn the head	我现在|有点{==a bit, rather}忙，回头再给你打电话。 I'm a bit busy right now: I'll call you later.
匆匆	cōngcōng	hurriedly, in a rush	他匆匆吃了几口饭就走了。 He grabbed a few mouthfuls and rushed off.
趁	chèn	while, taking the chance	趁天气好，我们出去走走吧。 Let's go out while the weather is good.
嘿	hēi	hey!	嘿，你也在这儿啊！ Hey, you're here too!
哇	wā	wow!	哇，这里的风景太美了！ Wow, the view here is stunning!

pattern 得了: ok, enough; come off it

得了 **(吧)** **, what you say next**

得了 (déle) ends a discussion: "OK, enough". It can also brush something aside: "come off it". 得了吧 is stronger and a bit teasing. Like 算了, it belongs to speech, not to essays.

得了，别说了，我们走吧。 **déle bié shuō le wǒmen zǒu ba** OK, enough talking: let's go.

得了吧，你哪儿有空闲时间？ **déle ba nǐ nǎr yǒu kòngxián shíjiān** Come off it, when do you ever have free time?

得了，事后再说吧，先吃饭。 **déle shìhòu zàishuō ba xiān chī fàn** OK, we'll talk about it afterwards. Let's eat first.

dialogue a day by the lake

little sister 嘿，安娜，你今天怎么没上班？
hēi Ānnà nǐ jīntiān zěnme méi shàngbān · Hey, Anna, why aren't you at work today?

anna 我请了一天假。此刻我只想坐在湖边，什么也不做。
wǒ qǐng le yì tiān jià cǐkè wǒ zhǐ xiǎng zuò zài hú biān shénme yě bú zuò · I took a day off. Right now all I want is to sit by the lake and do nothing.

little sister 哇，你也会休息啊！先前你周末都在加班。
wā nǐ yě huì xiūxi a xiānqián nǐ zhōumò dōu zài jiābān · Wow, so you do take breaks! You used to work every weekend.

anna 得了，别笑我了。当初我刚来北京的时候，每天早上都匆匆吃一口饭就去上班。
déle bié xiào wǒ le dāngchū wǒ gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou měi tiān zǎoshang dōu cōngcōng chī yì kǒu fàn jiù qù shàngbān · Oh, stop teasing. When I first came to Beijing, I'd grab a bite every morning and rush off to work.

little sister 那往后你每个月都要休息一天。
nà wǎnghòu nǐ měi gè yuè dōu yào xiūxi yì tiān · Then from now on, take a day off every month.

anna 好。回头我们一起去看看那家新开的书店吧，原先那里是一家咖啡店。
hǎo huítóu wǒmen yìqǐ qù kàn kan nà jiā xīn kāi de shūdiàn ba yuánxiān nàlǐ shì yì jiā kāfēi diàn · Deal. Let's go and see that new bookshop sometime; it used to be a café.

little sister 好啊！不过你说的跟小明说的有些出入。他说你上周末也在加班！
hǎo a búguò nǐ shuō de gēn Xiǎomíng shuō de yǒuxiē chūrù tā shuō nǐ shàng zhōumò yě zài jiābān · Sure! But your story doesn't quite match Xiaoming's. He says you worked last weekend too!

anna 得了得了，那是一件急事。过后我请你吃饭，好吗？
déle déle nà shì yí jiàn jí shì guòhòu wǒ qǐng nǐ chī fàn hǎo ma · All right, all right, that was urgent. I'll buy you dinner afterwards, OK?

write it trace the grey, then write your own

闪
shǎn
to dodge (quickly); to flash

扎
zhā
to prick, stab

匆
cōng
hurried

good to know · 日前 and 日后 are written words, common in news reports; in speech say 前几天 and 以后. 回头 means "turn your head", but in speech it often means "later": 回头见 "see you later".

You can now talk about how things were at first, how they are now, and what comes next. That's a life story in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 8 mission: a busy saturday

Chinese HSK 6 in 90 days
unit 1 · life admin

Follow a whole busy Saturday in Chinese: a bank counter and its notice, a sale with clothes and jewellery, a repair, a dog in the park and a rest by the lake.

Missions put the whole unit to work in one story, the way real life mixes everything together.

chapter 1 at the bank

xiaoming 嘿，安娜，你这么早就来银行了？
hēi Ānnà nǐ zhème zǎo jiù lái yínháng le · Hey, Anna, you're at the bank this early?

anna 是啊，我早上匆匆吃了口饭就来了。卡里的余额不对，少了五百块。
shì a wǒ zǎoshang cōngcōng chī le kǒu fàn jiù lái le kǎ lǐ de yú é bú duì shǎo le wǔbǎi kuài · Yes, I just grabbed a quick bite this morning and came. My card balance is wrong: five hundred yuan is missing.

anna 打热线也问不清楚，通话半个小时都没用。
dǎ rèxiàn yě wèn bu qīngchu tōnghuà bàn gè xiǎoshí dōu méi yòng · The hotline couldn't work it out either. Half an hour on the phone, and nothing.

xiaoming 你在手机上查询过账单吗？
nǐ zài shǒujī shàng cháxún guo zhàngdān ma · Have you checked your statement on your phone?

anna 查过了，跟我记的有出入。我只得来窗口求助。
chá guo le gēn wǒ jì de yǒu chūrù wǒ zhǐdé lái chuāngkǒu qiúzhù · I have, and it doesn't match what I wrote down. So I had no choice but to come to the counter for help.

xiaoming 你看墙上的提示：“请保管好您的贵重财物。办理业务前请准备好身份证，以便当场处理。”
nǐ kàn qiáng shàng de tíshì qǐng bǎoguǎn hǎo nín de guìzhòng cáiwù bànlǐ yèwù qián qǐng zhǔnbèi hǎo shēnfènzhèng yǐbiàn dāngchǎng chǔlǐ · Look at the notice on the wall: "Please look after your valuables. Have your ID card ready before your appointment so that we can deal with it on the spot."

anna 窗口的人说当天就能撤销那笔费用，让我在这一栏签名。
chuāngkǒu de rén shuō dàngtiān jiù néng chèxiāo nà bǐ fèiyong ràng wǒ zài zhè yì lán qiānmíng · The person at the counter said they can cancel that charge the same day, and asked me to sign in this box.

xiaoming 你先前不是说要投诉吗？
nǐ xiānqián bú shì shuō yào tóusù ma · Didn't you say before that you were going to make a complaint?

anna 投诉了，后来又撤回了。在窗口说清楚比较快，不会耽误太多时间。
tóusù le hòulái yòu chèhuí le zài chuāngkǒu shuō qīngchu bǐjiào kuài bú huì dānwu tài duō shíjiān · I did, and then I withdrew it. Sorting it out at the counter is quicker and doesn't waste much time.

xiaoming 那就好。虽麻烦了一点，但钱能退回来。
nà jiù hǎo suī máfan le yìdiǎn dàn qián néng tuì huilai · That's good. It's a bit of a hassle, but you'll get the money back.

anna 多亏你上次提醒我，我把所有的发票都保管好了。
duōkuī nǐ shàng cì tíxǐng wǒ wǒ bǎ suǒyǒu de fāpiào dōu bǎoguǎn hǎo le · Thanks to your reminder last time, I kept all my receipts safe.

chapter 2 the big sale

little sister 安娜，小明，这边！今天百货商店打折。
Ānnà Xiǎomíng zhèbiān jīntiān bǎihuò shāngdiàn dǎzhé · Anna, Xiaoming, over here! The department store has a sale today.

little sister 你们看这个广告：“全场商品打折，珠宝不再昂贵！买满三百元就可以抽奖，奖品是新款电脑。”
nǐmen kàn zhège guǎnggào quánchǎng shāngpǐn dǎzhé zhūbǎo bú zài ángguì mǎi mǎn sānbǎi yuán jiù kěyǐ chōujiǎng jiǎngpǐn shì xīnkuǎn diànnǎo · Look at this ad: “Everything on sale: jewellery is no longer expensive! Spend 300 yuan and enter the lucky draw. The prize is a brand-new computer.”

anna 就算没中奖，我手里也还有一张一百块的券呢。
jiùsuàn méi zhòngjiǎng wǒ shǒu lǐ yě hái yǒu yì zhāng yìbǎi kuài de quàn ne · Even if we don’t win, I’ve still got a hundred-yuan voucher.

anna 我原本只想买一件棉背心，没想到这里的款式这么齐全。
wǒ yuánběn zhǐ xiǎng mǎi yí jiàn mián bèixīn méi xiǎng dào zhèlǐ de kuǎnshì zhème qíquán · I only meant to buy a cotton vest, but I didn’t expect them to have every style.

little sister 你试试这件棕色的皮外套，是当下最流行的。
nǐ shì shi zhè jiàn zōngsè de pí wàitào shì dāngxià zuì liúxíng de · Try this brown leather jacket. It’s the most fashionable thing right now.

anna 皮的太贵了。这件布的很柔软，性价比也高，就是袖子有点长。
pí de tài guì le zhè jiàn bù de hěn róuruǎn xìngjiàbǐ yě gāo jiùshì xiùzi yǒudiǎn cháng · Leather’s too pricey. This cloth one is soft and good value too, only the sleeves are a bit long.

little sister 扣上以后很好看，和你的珍珠项链也很搭配。
kòu shàng yǐhòu hěn hǎokàn hé nǐ de zhēnzhū xiàngliàn yě hěn dāpèi · Buttoned up it looks great, and it goes well with your pearl necklace.

xiaoming 我看中了一件羽绒服，可是没有我的尺寸。
wǒ kànzhòng le yí jiàn yǔróngfú kěshì méiyǒu wǒ de chǐcùn · I’ve found a down jacket I like, but they don’t have my size.

little sister 你可以在网上的店铺下单，当天就能送到，很便捷。
nǐ kěyǐ zài wǎngshang de diànpù xiàdān dàngtiān jiù néng sòng dào hěn biànjié · You can order it from their online shop: it arrives the same day. Very handy.

xiaoming 好，我让手机定时提醒我，晚上八点下单。
hǎo wǒ ràng shǒujī dìngshí tíxǐng wǒ wǎnshang bā diǎn xiàdān · OK, I’ll set my phone to remind me, and order at eight tonight.

anna 快走吧，眼看就要十二点了，抽奖快开始了！
kuài zǒu ba yǎnkàn jiù yào shíèr diǎn le chōujiǎng kuài kāishǐ le · Come on, it’s almost twelve: the lucky draw is about to start!

chapter 3 the bookshelf, again

xiaoming 你的书架又歪了！还在保修期内吗?
nǐ de shūjià yòu wāi le hái zài bǎoxiū qī nèi ma · Your bookshelf is crooked again! Is it still under warranty?

anna 别提了，早过了。再说是大白钻到后面弄坏的，这种损坏不保修。
bié tí le zǎo guò le zàishuō shì Dàbái zuān dào hòumiàn nòng huài de zhè zhǒng sǔnhuài bù bǎoxiū · Don't ask, it ran out ages ago. Besides, Dabai squeezed behind it and broke it: the warranty doesn't cover that kind of damage.

xiaoming 你看，这根棍子都弯曲了，中间没有东西支撑，书架就侧向一边了。
nǐ kàn zhè gēn gùn zi dōu wānqū le zhōngjiān méiyǒu dōngxi zhīchēng shūjià jiù cè xiàng yìbiān le · Look, this rod is bent, and with nothing holding up the middle, the shelf leans to one side.

xiaoming 除非把它固定在墙上，否则它还会倒。我得在墙上钻两个洞。
chúfēi bǎ tā gùdìng zài qiáng shàng fǒuzé tā hái huì dǎo wǒ děi zài qiáng shàng zuān liǎng gè dòng · Unless we fix it to the wall, it'll fall again. I need to drill two holes.

anna 上次剩下的料还在，这块木头能用吗?
shàng cì shèng xià de liào hái zài zhè kuài mùtou néng yòng ma · The leftover material from last time is still here. Can you use this piece of wood?

xiaoming 能，就是这一头太尖了，别扎到手。我先用胶带包一下。
néng jiùshì zhè yì tóu tài jiān le bié zhā dào shǒu wǒ xiān yòng jiāodài bāo yíxià · Yes, but this end is too sharp, so don't prick your hand. I'll wrap it in tape first.

anna 你先坐一会儿，我给你端杯水来。
nǐ xiān zuò yíhuìr wǒ gěi nǐ duān bēi shuǐ lái · Sit down for a minute. I'll bring you a glass of water.

xiaoming 谢谢。你使劲撑住书架，我蹲下来钻洞。
xièxie nǐ shǐjìn chēng zhù shūjià wǒ dūn xialai zuān dòng · Thanks. Hold the bookshelf up firmly, and I'll crouch down and drill.

anna 小心，别踩到地上的胶水，它还散发着怪味呢。
xiǎoxīn bié cǎi dào dì shàng de jiāoshuǐ tā hái sànfā zhe guài wèi ne · Careful, don't step in the glue on the floor. It still smells funny, too.

xiaoming 哎呀，已经踩到了！我的鞋粘在地上了！
āiyā yǐjīng cǎi dào le wǒ de xié zhān zài dì shàng le · Oh no, too late! My shoe is stuck to the floor!

anna 哈哈！算了，你先把鞋脱下来，我来擦。又给你添麻烦了。
hā hā suànle nǐ xiān bǎ xié tuō xialai wǒ lái cā yòu gěi nǐ tiān máfan le · Ha ha! Never mind, take your shoe off and I'll wipe it. Sorry to cause you more trouble.

xiaoming 好了，书架立起来了，书也摆回去了。除非大白再钻到后面去，它才会倒。
hǎo le shūjià lì qǐlai le shū yě bǎi huiqu le chúfēi Dàbái zài zuān dào hòumiàn qù tā cái huì dǎo · There: the bookshelf is standing and the books are back on it. It will only fall if Dabai squeezes behind it again.

chapter 4 dabai in the park

little sister 我牵着大白在楼下等你们呢！它一直拖着我往外走。
wǒ qiān zhe Dàbái zài lóu xià děng nǐmen ne tā yìzhí tuō zhe wǒ wǎng wài zǒu · I'm downstairs with Dabai on his lead! He keeps dragging me towards the door.

little sister 糟了，我把它的球落在家里了！
zāo le wǒ bǎ tā de qiú là zài jiā lǐ le · Oh no, I left his ball at home!

xiaoming 别急，我口袋里有一个。我来抛，大白，接住！
bié jí wǒ kǒudai lǐ yǒu yí gè wǒ lái pāo Dàbái jiē zhù · Don't worry, I've got one in my pocket. I'll throw it. Dabai, catch!

little sister 哇，它扑过去，瞬间就接住了！
wā tā pū guoqu shùnjiān jiù jiē zhù le · Wow, he leapt at it and caught it in a flash!

xiaoming 糟了，它又在草地上挖洞，把土撒得到处都是。
zāo le tā yòu zài cǎodì shàng wā dòng bǎ tǔ sǎ de dàochù dōu shì · Oh no, he's digging holes in the grass again, scattering soil everywhere.

anna 小心，水管在喷水！快后退！
xiǎoxīn shuǐ guǎn zài pēn shuǐ kuài hòutuì · Careful, the hose is spraying water! Step back, quick!

xiaoming 我想闪开，可是来不及了，全身都湿了！都是大白害的。
wǒ xiǎng shǎn kāi kěshì láibují le quánshēn dōu shī le dōu shì Dàbái hài de · I tried to jump out of the way, but too late: I'm soaked! It's all Dabai's fault.

little sister 大白，别跑！……它把我的手套塞在嘴里逃跑了！
Dàbái bié pǎo tā bǎ wǒ de shǒutào sāi zài zuǐ lǐ táopǎo le · Dabai, stop! … He's stuffed my glove in his mouth and run off!

anna 别追，你越追它跑得越快。蹲下来，向它招手。
bié zhuī nǐ yuè zhuī tā pǎo de yuè kuài dūn xialai xiàng tā zhāoshǒu · Don't chase him: the more you chase, the faster he runs. Crouch down and wave to him.

little sister 大白，过来！……它转身跑回来了。还好，手套没被吞下去。
Dàbái guòlái tā zhuǎnshēn pǎo huilai le háihǎo shǒutào méi bèi tūn xiaqu · Dabai, come here! … He's turned round and come back. Phew, he didn't swallow the glove.

xiaoming 我刚才跑得太急，把脚扭了。你掏块饼干给大白吧。
wǒ gāngcái pǎo de tài jí bǎ jiǎo niǔ le nǐ tāo kuài bǐnggān gěi Dàbái ba · I ran too fast just now and twisted my ankle. Get a biscuit out for Dabai.

chapter 5 evening by the lake

anna 得了，今天干的活够多了。我们趁天还亮，去湖边歇一会儿吧。
déle jīntiān gàn de huó gòu duō le wǒmen chèn tiān hái liàng qù hú biān xiē yíhuìr ba · OK, that's enough work for today. Let's rest by the lake while it's still light.

little sister 哇，湖水真清！你们看，那边有个小朋友在放飞气球。
wā hú shuǐ zhēn qīng nǐmen kàn nàbiān yǒu gè xiǎopéngyǒu zài fàngfēi qìqiú · Wow, the water is so clear! Look, there's a child over there letting a balloon fly away.

xiaoming 太阳太晒了，我们去树下避一避吧。
tàiyáng tài shài le wǒmen qù shù xià bì yi bi ba · The sun is too strong. Let's get out of it under the trees.

anna 此刻我只想坐在这儿望着湖，什么也不想。
cǐkè wǒ zhǐ xiǎng zuò zài zhèr wàng zhe hú shénme yě bù xiǎng · Right now all I want is to sit here, gaze at the lake and think about nothing.

little sister 起初我以为今天会很无聊，没想到这么忙。
qǐchū wǒ yǐwéi jīntiān huì hěn wúliáo méi xiǎng dào zhème máng · At first I thought today would be boring. I never expected it to be so busy.

anna 当初刚来北京的时候，我空闲的时间都在加班。现在完全不一样了。
dāngchū gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou wǒ kòngxián de shíjiān dōu zài jiābān xiànzài wánquán bù yíyàng le · When I first came to Beijing, I spent all my free time working overtime. Now it's totally different.

xiaoming 太阳快下山了，湖水都被染红了，草也黄了。
tàiyáng kuài xià shān le hú shuǐ dōu bèi rǎn hóng le cǎo yě huáng le · The sun is about to set and the lake has turned red. The grass has gone yellow, too.

little sister 风好大，我的头发都散了！哎呀，耳环也掉了！
fēng hǎo dà wǒ de tóufa dōu sǎn le āiyā ěrhuán yě diào le · It's so windy, my hair's come loose! Oh no, and my earring has fallen off!

xiaoming 别动……拾到了，就在你脚边。我们再转一会儿就回家吧。
bié dòng shí dào le jiù zài nǐ jiǎo biān wǒmen zài zhuàn yíhuìr jiù huí jiā ba · Don't move … got it, it was right by your foot. Let's wander around a bit more and then go home.

little sister 好！往后每个周六我们都这样过吧！
hǎo wǎnghòu měi gè zhōu liù wǒmen dōu zhèyàng guò ba · OK! From now on, let's spend every Saturday like this!

xiaoming 好啊，不过下次别再让我修书架了。
hǎo a búguò xià cì bié zài ràng wǒ xiū shūjià le · Sure, but don't make me fix a bookshelf next time.

anna 回头再说吧！
huítóu zàishuō ba · We'll see!

A whole Saturday in Chinese, from the bank to the lake. Unit 1 is done: life admin, sorted.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 9 flavours

Describe flavours and textures, and say how strong something is with 特, 异常 and 较为.

Food is the heart of Chinese social life, and praising a host's cooking is a skill in itself.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
特	tè	really, especially (spoken)	这家{=(measure word)}的饺子特好吃。 The dumplings here are really good.
异常	yìcháng	unusual; unusually, extremely	今年夏天异常热。 This summer is unusually hot.
较为	jiàowéi	relatively, fairly (written)	这里的菜较为清淡。 The food here is fairly light.
地道	dìdao	authentic, genuine	这家{=(measure word)}饭馆的北京菜很地道。 This restaurant's Beijing food is the real thing.
可口	kěkǒu	tasty, delicious	妈妈做的饭菜又可口又健康。 Mum's cooking is tasty and healthy.
口感	kǒugǎn	texture, mouthfeel	这种面包的口感很软。 This bread has a soft texture.
味觉	wèijué	sense of taste	感冒的时候，味觉会变差。 When you have a cold, your sense of taste gets worse.
气味	qìwèi	smell, odour	这种花的气味很特别。 This flower has a very unusual smell.
清淡	qīngdàn	light, mild (food)	生病的时候要吃清淡一点的东西。 When you're ill, eat lighter food.
辣椒	làjiāo	chilli pepper	他做菜喜欢放很多辣椒。 He likes to put lots of chilli in his cooking.
醋	cù	vinegar	吃饺子的时候，我喜欢加一点醋。 I like a little vinegar with my dumplings.
酱	jiàng	sauce, paste	这道菜的酱是自己做的。 The sauce for this dish is home-made.
酱油	jiàngyóu	soy sauce	炒菜的时候放一点酱油。 Add a little soy sauce when you stir-fry.
香肠	xiāngcháng	sausage	早饭我吃了两根香肠。 I had two sausages for breakfast.
粥	zhōu	congee, rice porridge	早上喝一碗热粥，胃很舒服。 A bowl of hot congee in the morning is easy on the stomach.
花生	huāshēng	peanut	他对花生过敏。 He's allergic to peanuts.
面粉	miànfěn	flour	做饺子要先准备面粉。 To make dumplings, first get the flour ready.
粉	fěn	powder; rice noodles	这种粉加水就可以喝。 Just add water to this powder and drink it.

脆	cuì	crisp, crunchy	这个苹果又甜又脆。 This apple is sweet and crunchy.
烂	làn	rotten; mushy, very soft	这些水果放得太久，已经烂了。 This fruit was left too long and has gone rotten.
烫	tàng	scalding hot; to scald	汤很烫，慢点{=a little, some}喝。 The soup is very hot: drink it slowly.
盛	chéng	to ladle, fill (a bowl)	我给你盛一碗饭吧。 Let me get you a bowl of rice.
品尝	pǐncháng	to taste, sample	欢迎大家来品尝我们的新菜。 Everyone is welcome to try our new dishes.
纯	chún	pure	这是纯牛奶，什么都没加。 This is pure milk, with nothing added.

pattern 特、异常、较为: really, unusually, fairly

subject | 特 / 异常 / 较为 | adjective

Three ways to turn the volume up or down, all before the adjective. 特 is a quick, spoken “really” (特好吃). 异常 means “unusually, extremely” and is a little formal. 较为 means “fairly, relatively” and belongs to writing.

他做的菜特香。 **tā zuò de cài tè xiāng** His cooking smells amazing.

今年的辣椒价格异常高。 **jīnnián de làjiāo jiàgé yìcháng gāo** Chilli prices are unusually high this year.

这种面粉较为便宜，适合做面包。 **zhè zhǒng miànfěn jiàowéi piányi shìhé zuò miànbāo** This flour is fairly cheap and good for making bread.

dialogue ms zhang’s feast

ms zhang 安娜，来尝尝我做的菜。这是我老家的做法，很地道。
Ānnà lái cháng chang wǒ zuò de cài zhè shì wǒ lǎojiā de zuòfǎ hěn dìdao · Anna, come and try my cooking. It's the way we make it in my home town: the real thing.

anna 哇，好香啊！这个酱是用什么做的？
wā hǎo xiāng a zhège jiàng shì yòng shénme zuò de · Wow, it smells wonderful! What's this sauce made of?

ms zhang 花生、酱油，再加一点醋。
huāshēng jiàngyóu zài jiā yìdiǎn cù · Peanuts and soy sauce, plus a little vinegar.

xiaoming 妈妈，你做的菜特可口，就是辣椒放得有点多。
māma nǐ zuò de cài tè kěkǒu jiùshì làjiāo fàng de yǒudiǎn duō · Mum, your cooking is really tasty, but you've gone a bit heavy on the chilli.

anna 我觉得辣一点更好。这道菜的口感也很好，又香又脆。
wǒ juéde là yìdiǎn gèng hǎo zhè dào cài de kǒugǎn yě hěn hǎo yòu xiāng yòu cuì · I think a bit spicier is better. This dish has a great texture too: fragrant and crunchy.

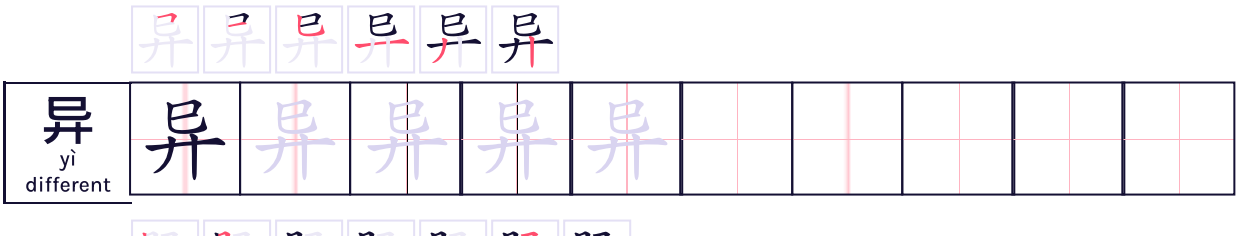
ms zhang 你再品尝一下这个香肠，是我自己做的，纯肉，什么都没加。
nǐ zài pǐncháng yíxià zhège xiāngcháng shì wǒ zìjǐ zuò de chún ròu shénme dōu méi jiā · Try this sausage too. I made it myself: pure meat, nothing added.

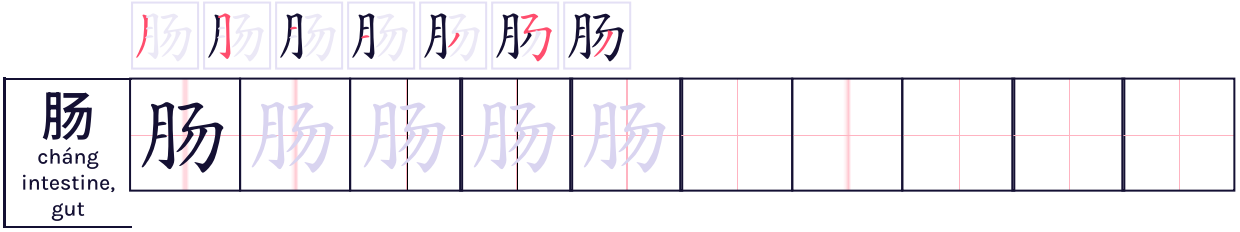
xiaoming 我先喝一碗粥。哎，这个粥好烫！
wǒ xiān hē yì wǎn zhōu āi zhège zhōu hǎo tàng · I'll have some congee first. Ouch, it's boiling hot!

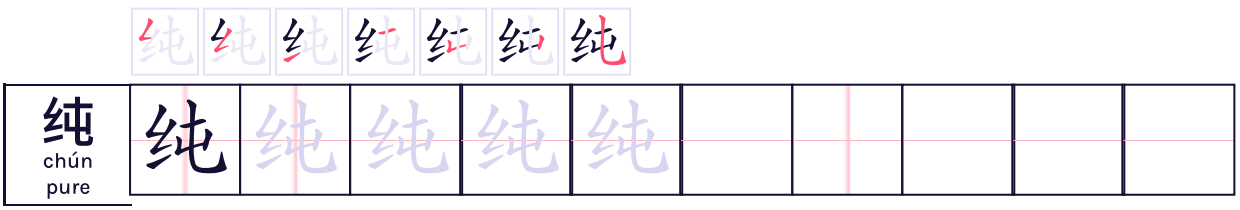
ms zhang 慢一点。我给你们每人多盛一碗，以便你们吃饱。
màn yìdiǎn wǒ gěi nǐmen měi rén duō chéng yì wǎn yǐbiàn nǐmen chī bǎo · Slow down. I'll serve you each another bowl so you go home full.

anna 谢谢阿姨！今天的饭菜特好吃，比饭馆的还地道！
xièxie āyí jīntiān de fàn cài tè hǎochī bǐ fànguǎn de hái dìdao · Thank you so much! Today's food is fantastic: more authentic than any restaurant!

write it trace the grey, then write your own







good to know · 特 + adjective (特好, 特便宜) is very common in northern speech; in writing use 特别 or 非常. Praise the food often when you eat at someone's home: 太可口了！ and 很地道！ always go down well.

Next time someone cooks for you, you can tell them exactly why it's delicious.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 10 a string of grapes

Count food and things with special measure words, and talk about buffets, set meals and banquets.

Measure words make your Chinese sound native, and food is where you use them most.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
串	chuàn	string, bunch; (measure) a bunch of	我买了一串葡萄。 I bought a bunch of grapes.
滴	dī	to drip; (measure) a drop	汤里加几滴醋就更好喝了。 A few drops of vinegar make the soup even better.
枝	zhī	branch; (measure) for stems, pens	她买了一枝红色的花。 She bought a single red flower.
扇	shàn	(measure) for doors and windows	房间里有两扇{shan4}窗户。 The room has two windows.
卷	juǎn	to roll up; a roll	他把袖子卷{juan3}了起来。 He rolled up his sleeves.
卷	juàn	(measure) volume; exam paper	这套书一共有三卷{juan4}。 This set of books has three volumes.
粒	lì	(measure) grain, small round thing	碗里还剩几粒米。 There are still a few grains of rice in the bowl.
罐	guàn	jar, can, tin	我买了一罐咖啡。 I bought a tin of coffee.
壶	hú	pot, kettle	请再给我们一壶茶。 Another pot of tea for us, please.
叉	chā	fork; to spear (with a fork)	吃西餐要用刀和叉。 You eat Western food with a knife and fork.
夹	jiā	to pick up (with chopsticks); to clip	奶奶给我夹了一块肉。 Grandma put a piece of meat on my plate with her chopsticks.
泡	pào	to soak, steep; a bubble	我给你泡一杯茶吧。 Let me make you a cup of tea.
薯片	shǔpiàn	crisps, potato chips	看电影的时候，我喜欢吃薯片。 I like eating crisps when I watch a film.
糖果	tángguǒ	sweets, candy	孩子们都喜欢吃糖果。 All children love sweets.
奶粉	nǎifěn	powdered milk, baby formula	这种奶粉适合一岁以上的孩子。 This formula is for children over one.
套餐	tàocān	set meal	我要一个午餐套餐。 I'd like a lunch set, please.
自助	zìzhù	self-service	这家{=(measure word)}酒店的早饭是自助的。 Breakfast at this hotel is self-service.

用餐	yòngcān	to dine, have a meal (formal)	请各位到二楼用餐。 Please go up to the first floor to dine, everyone.
宴会	yànhuì	banquet	公司今天晚上有一个宴会。 The company has a banquet this evening.
招待	zhāodài	to entertain, serve (guests)	谢谢你们的热情招待。 Thank you for your warm hospitality.
酒水	jiǔshuǐ	drinks (on a menu)	宴会的酒水有茶和果汁。 The drinks at the banquet include tea and juice.
家常	jiācháng	home-style; everyday	我最喜欢吃妈妈做的家常菜。 My favourite food is Mum's home cooking.
一一	yīyī	one by one	老师一一回答了大家的问题。 The teacher answered everyone's questions one by one.
数目	shùmù	number, amount	这个数目不对，你再算一下。 This number's wrong: work it out again.

pattern 串、滴、枝、扇、卷: picture measure words

number **串 / 滴 / 枝 / 扇 / 卷** **thing**

A measure word sits between a number and a thing. Today's are little pictures: 串 a string or bunch (grapes, keys), 滴 a drop, 枝 a stem, a flower or a pen, 扇 a door or window, 卷 a roll (juǎn) or a volume (juàn).

他从口袋里掏出一串钥匙。 **tā cóng kǒudai lǐ tāo chū yí chuàn yàoshi** He took a bunch of keys out of his pocket.

桌子上放着几枝花。 **zhuōzi shàng fàng zhe jǐ zhī huā** There are a few flowers on the table.

请把那扇门关上。 **qǐng bǎ nà shàn mén guān shàng** Please close that door.

dialogue the company banquet

ms zhang 今天的宴会是自助的，大家想吃什么就自己拿。
jīntiān de yànhuì shì zìzhù de dàjiā xiǎng chī shénme jiù zìjǐ ná · Tonight's banquet is a buffet: help yourselves to whatever you like.

anna 我不太会用筷子夹，可以用叉吗？
wǒ bú tài huì yòng kuàizi jiā kěyǐ yòng chā ma · I'm not great at picking things up with chopsticks. Can I use a fork?

xiaoming 可以，那边有叉。你看，这道家常豆腐特好吃。
kěyǐ nàbiān yǒu chā nǐ kàn zhè dào jiācháng dòufu tè hǎochī · Sure, there are forks over there. Look, this home-style tofu is really good.

ms zhang 酒水在那边，有茶，也有果汁。我给你们泡了一壶花茶。
jiǔshuǐ zài nàbiān yǒu chá yě yǒu guǒzhī wǒ gěi nǐmen pào le yì hú huā chá · Drinks are over there: tea and juice. I've made you a pot of flower tea.

anna 谢谢您的招待！这么多菜，我要一一品尝。
xièxie nín de zhāodài zhème duō cài wǒ yào yīyī pǐncháng · Thank you for having us! So many dishes: I'm going to try them one by one.

xiaoming 别吃太多，后面还有薯片和糖果。
bié chī tài duō hòumiàn hái yǒu shǔpiàn hé tángguǒ · Don't eat too much: there are crisps and sweets later.

ms zhang 小明小时候最爱吃糖果，那时候他还在喝奶粉呢。
Xiǎomíng xiǎoshíhou zuì ài chī tángguǒ nà shíhou tā hái zài hē nǎifěn ne · When Xiaoming was little he loved sweets more than anything. He was still on baby formula then!

xiaoming 妈妈！……安娜，你的碗里还有几粒米，别浪费。
māma Ānnà nǐ de wǎn lǐ hái yǒu jǐ lì mǐ bié làngfèi · Mum! … Anna, there are still a few grains of rice in your bowl. Don't waste them.

anna 哈哈，好。下次我请你们吃饭，那家的套餐很实惠。
hā hā hǎo xià cì wǒ qǐng nǐmen chī fàn nà jiā de tàocān hěn shíhuì · Ha ha, OK. Next time I'll treat you: there's a place with great-value set meals.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

串
chuàn
string, bunch; (measure) a bunch of

枝
zhī
branch; (measure) for stems, pens



夹
jiā
to pick up (with chopsticks); to clip



泡
pào
to soak, steep; a bubble

good to know · 卷 has two readings: juǎn “to roll up, a roll” and juàn “a volume”. 试卷 (an exam paper) uses juàn. 酒水 on a menu means all drinks. Tea and juice are always fine choices at a banquet.

From a bunch of grapes to a pot of tea, you can now count your way through any banquet.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 11 eating well

Talk about nutrition, healthy eating and ageing well, and say 透了 for "completely".

Health and diet are everyday small talk in China, from parents, doctors and the news.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
透	tòu	through; completely	这些西红柿已经熟透了。 These tomatoes are fully ripe.
蛋白质	dànbáizhì	protein	鸡蛋里有很多蛋白质。 Eggs contain a lot of protein.
脂肪	zhīfáng	fat (in the body or food)	这种肉的脂肪太多了。 This kind of meat has too much fat.
维生素	wéishēngsù	vitamin	水果里有丰富的维生素。 Fruit is rich in vitamins.
有机	yǒujī	organic	有机蔬菜比较贵。 Organic vegetables are fairly expensive.
添加	tiānjiā	to add (an additive)	这种饮料没有添加糖。 This drink has no added sugar.
混合	hùnhé	to mix, blend	把面粉和水混合在一起。 Mix the flour and the water together.
常温	chángwēn	room temperature	这种牛奶可以常温保存。 This milk can be kept at room temperature.
变质	biànzhì	to go off, spoil	夏天食物容易变质。 Food goes off easily in summer.
中毒	zhòngdú	to be poisoned	吃了变质的东西可能会中毒。 Eating spoiled food can give you food poisoning.
饥饿	jīè	hunger; hungry (written)	世界上还有很多人生活在饥饿中。 Many people in the world still live with hunger.
食欲	shíyù	appetite	天太热，我没有食欲。 It's too hot: I've no appetite.
胃口	wèikǒu	appetite	他今天胃口很好，吃了三碗饭。 He had a good appetite today: three bowls of rice.
肥	féi	fatty (meat); loose, baggy	这块肉太肥了，我不吃。 This piece of meat is too fatty: I won't eat it.
肥胖	féipàng	obese, overweight	肥胖会带来很多健康问题。 Obesity brings many health problems.
保健	bǎojiàn	health care	老人应该注意保健。 Older people should look after their health.
适度	shìdù	moderate	适度运动对身体有好处。 Moderate exercise is good for you.
长寿	chángshòu	long-lived	爷爷很长寿，今年九十五岁了。 Grandpa has lived a long life: he's ninety-

			five this year.
寿命	shòumìng	lifespan, life	这种电池的寿命很长。 This kind of battery lasts a long time.
衰老	shuāilǎo	to age; ageing	睡眠不足会让人衰老得更快。 Lack of sleep makes you age faster.
结实	jiēshi	sturdy, solid; strong (body)	这张桌子很结实。 This table is very sturdy.
强壮	qiángzhuàng	strong, robust	他每天锻炼，身体很强壮。 He works out every day and is very strong.
功效	gōngxiào	effect, efficacy	这种茶有什么功效? What is this tea good for?
剧烈	jùliè	intense, violent (pain, exercise)	吃饭以后不要做剧烈运动。 Don't do hard exercise right after a meal.

pattern ……透了: completely, through and through

verb / adjective **透了**

透 means "through". Put 透了 after a verb or adjective and it means completely, all the way through: 熟透了 fully ripe, 湿透了 soaked, 累透了 exhausted. It is strong and a little informal.

下了一场大雨，我全身都湿透了。 **xià le yì chǎng dà yǔ wǒ quánshēn dōu shī tòu le** It poured with rain and I got soaked to the skin.

这几天加班，我累透了。 **zhè jǐ tiān jiābān wǒ lèi tòu le** I've been working late all week and I'm completely worn out.

这块肉要煮透了再吃，不然容易中毒。 **zhè kuài ròu yào zhǔ tòu le zài chī bùrán róngyì zhòngdú** Cook this meat all the way through before eating it, or you could get food poisoning.

dialogue a talk with dr li

anna 李医生，我最近总是很累，胃口也不好。
Lǐyīshēng wǒ zuìjìn zǒngshì hěn lèi wèikǒu yě bù hǎo · Dr Li, I'm tired all the time lately, and I've lost my appetite.

dr li 你是不是每天只吃外卖?
nǐ shì bu shì měi tiān zhǐ chī wàimài · Are you living on takeaways?

anna 差不多……工作太忙了。不过我每天吃维生素。
chàbuduō gōngzuò tài máng le búguò wǒ měi tiān chī wéishēngsù · More or less… work is so busy. But I take vitamins every day.

dr li 维生素不能代替饭菜。你要多吃蔬菜，也要有蛋白质，比如鸡蛋和鱼。
wéishēngsù bù néng dàitì fàn cài nǐ yào duō chī shūcài yě yào yǒu dànbáizhì bǐrú jīdàn hé yú · Vitamins can't replace real meals. Eat more vegetables, and get some protein: eggs or fish, say.

anna 那脂肪呢？我怕胖。
nà zhīfáng ne wǒ pà pàng · What about fat? I'm afraid of putting on weight.

dr li 适度的脂肪是必要的。现在很多人的问题不是饥饿，而是肥胖，所以要少吃添加了很多糖的东西。
shìdù de zhīfáng shì bìyào de xiànzài hěn duō rén de wèntí bú shì jīè ér shì féipàng suǒyǐ yào shǎo chī tiānjiā le hěn duō táng de dōngxi · Some fat is necessary. Today many people's problem isn't hunger but obesity, so cut down on foods with lots of added sugar.

anna 有机食品是不是更健康?
yǒujī shípǐn shì bu shì gèng jiànkāng · Is organic food healthier?

dr li 有机的当然好，但最重要的是新鲜。变质的东西千万别吃，会中毒的。
yǒujī de dāngrán hǎo dàn zuì zhòngyào de shì xīnxiān biànzhì de dōngxi qiānwàn bié chī huì zhòngdú de · Organic is good, of course, but freshness matters most. Never eat anything that's gone off: you could be poisoned.

anna 那保健品呢？广告上说有很多功效。
nà bǎojiàn pǐn ne guǎnggào shàng shuō yǒu hěn duō gōngxiào · And health supplements? The adverts say they do all sorts of things.

dr li 那些功效很多都不可信。好好吃饭，好好睡觉，身体才会结实，人才会长寿。
nàxiē gōngxiào hěn duō dōu bù kě xìn hǎohǎo chī fàn hǎohǎo shuìjiào shēntǐ cái huì jiēshi rén cái huì chángshòu · Most of those claims can't be trusted. Eat well and sleep well: that's what keeps you strong and lets you live long.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

饥
jī
hungry

寿
shòu
long life

壮
zhuàng
sturdy

good to know · 肥 is for meat, animals and baggy clothes; calling a person 肥 is rude. For people say 胖, or the medical word 肥胖. 长寿 (long life) is a classic birthday wish for older people: 祝您健康长寿!

You can now follow a doctor's advice about diet in Chinese, and give some yourself.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 12 at the doctor's

Chinese HSK 6 in 90 days
unit 2 · food & health

Describe symptoms to a doctor, understand the advice, and say "it took ages" with 好不容易.

Being able to explain what hurts, in Chinese, is one of the most useful skills you can have abroad.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
好容易	hǎoróngyì	with great difficulty, at last	我好容易才找到这家{=(measure word)}医院。 It took me ages to find this hospital.
好不	hǎobù	how very ...! (before adjectives)	孩子们在公园里玩得好不开心。 The children had such fun in the park.
症状	zhèngzhuàng	symptom	感冒的症状有发烧、咳嗽什么的。 The symptoms of a cold include fever, a cough and so on.
不适	bùshì	unwell, discomfort	如果感到身体不适，请马上告诉医生。 If you feel unwell, tell the doctor straight away.
发炎	fāyán	to become inflamed	我的嗓子发炎了。 My throat is inflamed.
炎症	yánzhèng	inflammation	医生说只{zhi3}是一点炎症，不用担心。 The doctor says it's just a little inflammation: nothing to worry about.
肿	zhǒng	swollen	我的脚肿了，走路很疼。 My foot is swollen and hurts when I walk.
痒	yǎng	itchy	我的眼睛很痒。 My eyes are really itchy.
恶心	ěxin	sick, nauseous; disgusting	我坐车坐久了就会恶心。 I feel sick if I'm in a car for too long.
吐	tǔ	to spit out, breathe out	他把嘴里的东西吐{tu3-6}了出来。 He spat out what was in his mouth.
吐	tù	to vomit, throw up	他吃坏了肚子，吐{tu4}了好几次。 He ate something bad and threw up several times.
晕	yūn	dizzy; to faint	我站{zhan4-3}起来的时候觉得头|有点{==a bit, rather}晕。 I felt a bit dizzy when I stood up.
嗓子	sǎngzi	throat; voice	我嗓子疼，说话都难受。 My throat hurts: even talking is painful.
发病	fābìng	to fall ill, have an attack	这种病常在冬天发病。 This illness usually strikes in winter.
患	huàn	to suffer from (an illness)	他患了很严重的感冒。 He came down with a very bad cold.
患者	huànzhě	patient	医生正在给患者检查身体。 The doctor is examining a patient.
内科	nèikē	internal medicine	你发烧了，应该去看内科。 You have a fever: you should see internal medicine.

外科	wàikē	surgery (department)	他是一名外科医生。 He is a surgeon.
儿科	érkē	paediatrics	孩子生病了，要去儿科看。 When a child is ill, go to paediatrics.
针	zhēn	needle; injection	医生给我打了一针。 The doctor gave me an injection.
服用	fúyòng	to take (medicine, formal)	这种药每天服用两次。 Take this medicine twice a day.
服	fú	to take (medicine)	这种药饭后服，每次一片。 Take this medicine after meals, one tablet at a time.
医药	yīyào	medicine, medical	她在一家{=(measure word)}医药公司工作。 She works for a pharmaceutical company.
不宜	bùyí	not advisable, should not	感冒的时候不宜吃太油的东西。 You shouldn't eat greasy food when you have a cold.

pattern 好容易 / 好不容易: at long last, with great difficulty

subject | 好（不）容易 | 才 | what finally happened

好容易 and 好不容易 mean exactly the same: "with great difficulty, at long last". Yes, the 不 changes nothing! They are usually followed by 才. On its own, 好不 + adjective means "how very...": 好不热闹 "so lively".

他好不容易才把药吞下去。 **tā hǎobù róngyì cái bǎ yào tūn xiaqu** It took him ages to swallow the pill.

等了两个小时，好不容易才见到医生。 **děng le liǎng gè xiǎoshí hǎobù róngyì cái jiàn dào yīshēng** After a two-hour wait, we finally got to see the doctor.

孩子们在公园里玩得好不开心。 **háizimen zài gōngyuán lǐ wán de hǎobù kāixīn** The children had such fun in the park.

dialogue anna sees dr li

dr li 安娜，你怎么了？哪里不适？

Ānnà nǐ zěnme le nǎlǐ búshì · Anna, what's the matter? Where don't you feel well?

anna 李医生，我好容易才挂上您的号。我从昨天开始就头晕、恶心。

Lǐyīshēng wǒ hǎoróngyì cái guà shàng nín de hào wǒ cóng zuótiān kāishǐ jiù tóu yūn ěxin · Dr Li, it took me ages to get an appointment with you. Since yesterday I've felt dizzy and sick.

dr li 还有别的症状吗？发烧吗？

hái yǒu biéde zhèngzhuàng ma fāshāo ma · Any other symptoms? Do you have a fever?

anna 有一点。嗓子也很疼，吃东西的时候还想吐。

yǒu yìdiǎn sǎngzi yě hěn téng chī dōngxi de shíhou hái xiǎng tù · A slight one. My throat hurts too, and I feel like throwing up when I eat.

dr li 来，深吸一口气，再慢慢吐出来……没什么问题。

lái shēn xī yì kǒu qì zài màn màn tǔ chulai méi shénme wèntí · Right, take a deep breath, and slowly breathe out... that's fine.

dr li 嗓子有点肿，是炎症。你最近患过感冒吗？

sǎngzi yǒudiǎn zhǒng shì yánzhèng nǐ zuìjìn huàn guo gǎnmào ma · Your throat is a bit swollen: it's inflamed. Have you had a cold recently?

anna 上个星期感冒了，好不容易才好，没想到又不舒服了。

shàng gè xīngqī gǎnmào le hǎobù róngyì cái hǎo méi xiǎng dào yòu bù shūfu le · I had one last week. I finally got over it, and now I feel ill again.

dr li 这种情况很常见，很多患者都这样。不用打针，我给你开点药，医药费不贵。

zhè zhǒng qíngkuàng hěn cháng jiàn hěn duō huànzhě dōu zhèyàng búyòng dǎ zhēn wǒ gěi nǐ kāi diǎn yào yīyào fèi bú guì · That's very common: lots of patients get it. No injection needed: I'll prescribe some medicine, and it won't cost much.

anna 这个药怎么服用？

zhège yào zěnme fúyòng · How do I take this medicine?

dr li 每天三次，饭后服。这几天不宜吃辣的，多喝水。

měi tiān sān cì fàn hòu fú zhè jǐ tiān bùyí chī là de duō hē shuǐ · Three times a day after meals. Avoid spicy food for a few days, and drink plenty of water.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

炎 yán inflammation

肿 zhǒng swollen

恶 ě bad



吐 tǔ to spit out, breathe out											

good to know · In a Chinese hospital you first 挂号 (register) for a department: 内科 internal medicine, 外科 surgery, 儿科 paediatrics. 吐 tǔ is to spit or breathe out; 吐 tù is to vomit. Same character, different reading. 花 is also an adjective at HSK 6: 眼睛花了 or 眼花 “eyes gone blurry” (from age or tiredness), 头发花白 “greying hair”.

If you ever fall ill in China, you can now explain what’s wrong and understand what to do.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 13 inside the body

Name the parts and organs of the body, and describe how people act with 不禁, 赶忙, 特地, 特意 and 偷偷.

Body words come up at the doctor's, the gym and the massage parlour, and manner adverbs make stories vivid.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
不禁	bùjīn	can't help (doing)	听到这个好消息，她不禁笑了起来。 Hearing the good news, she couldn't help laughing.
赶忙	gǎnmáng	hurriedly, at once	看到老人上车，他赶忙站{zhan4-3}了起来。 When he saw an old man get on the bus, he quickly stood up.
特地	tèdì	specially (for a purpose)	她特地从北京来看我。 She came all the way from Beijing to see me.
特意	tèyì	on purpose, specially	这是我特意为你做的蛋糕。 I made this cake specially for you.
偷偷	tōutōu	secretly, on the quiet	他偷偷地把礼物放在了我的桌子上。 He secretly left a present on my desk.
心脏	xīnzàng	heart (the organ)	适度运动对心脏有好处。 Moderate exercise is good for the heart.
血液	xuèyè	blood	血液检查的结果很正常。 The blood test results are normal.
血管	xuèguǎn	blood vessel	吃太多油对血管不好。 Too much oil is bad for your blood vessels.
血压	xuèyā	blood pressure	爷爷每天早上都量血压。 Grandpa takes his blood pressure every morning.
血型	xuèxíng	blood type	你是什么血型? What's your blood type?
肺	fèi	lung	抽烟对肺很不好。 Smoking is very bad for your lungs.
肺炎	fèiyán	pneumonia	他得{de2}了肺炎，住了一个星期的医院。 He got pneumonia and spent a week in hospital.
肝	gān	liver	经常熬夜对肝不好。 Staying up late often is bad for your liver.
肠	cháng	intestine, gut	多吃蔬菜对肠有好处。 Eating more vegetables is good for your gut.
神经	shénjīng	nerve	考试以前，我的神经很紧张。 Before the exam I was really on edge.
骨头	gǔtou	bone	大白最喜欢吃骨头。 Dabai loves bones more than anything.

颈椎	jǐngzhuī	neck vertebrae, cervical spine	长时间低头看手机，对颈椎不好。 Looking down at your phone for hours is bad for your neck.
脖子	bózi	neck	我的脖子|有点{==a bit, rather}疼。 My neck hurts a bit.
肩膀	jiānbǎng	shoulder	他拍了拍我的肩膀。 He patted me on the shoulder.
手臂	shǒubì	arm	打完针，我的手臂|有点{==a bit, rather}疼。 After the injection my arm is a bit sore.
胸	xiōng	chest	他突然觉得胸很疼。 Suddenly he felt a sharp pain in his chest.
部位	bùwèi	part (of the body), position	你身体的哪个部位疼? Which part of your body hurts?
一身	yīshēn	all over the body; a whole outfit	跑完步，我出了一身汗。 After my run, I was dripping with sweat.

pattern 不禁、赶忙、特地、特意、偷偷: how someone acts

subject **不禁 / 赶忙 / 特地 / 特意 / 偷偷** **action**

These adverbs sit right before the verb and say how or why something happens: 不禁 can't help it, 赶忙 at once, in a hurry, 特地 and 特意 specially, on purpose, 偷偷 secretly. 特意 stresses the intention; 特地 the special trip or effort.

看到他摔倒了，我赶忙跑过去扶他。 **kàn dào tā shuāi dǎo le wǒ gǎnmáng pǎo guoqu fú tā** When I saw him fall, I rushed over to help him up.

这碗汤是妈妈特意为你做的。 **zhè wǎn tāng shì māma tèyì wèi nǐ zuò de** Mum made this soup specially for you.

看到这张老照片，奶奶不禁笑了。 **kàn dào zhè zhāng lǎo zhàopiàn nǎinai bùjīn xiào le** Seeing this old photo, Grandma couldn't help smiling.

医生特地给我做了血液检查。 **yīshēng tèdì gěi wǒ zuò le xuèyè jiǎnchá** The doctor ordered a blood test specially for me.

dialogue a hospital visit

anna
我特地给你带了你最喜欢的水果。你好点了吗?
wǒ tèdì gěi nǐ dài le nǐ zuì xǐhuan de shuǐguǒ nǐ hǎo diǎn le ma · I've brought you your favourite fruit. Are you feeling better?

little sister
好多了！医生说我的肺炎快好了，再过两天就能出院。
hǎo duō le yīshēng shuō wǒ de fèiyán kuài hǎo le zài guò liǎng tiān jiù néng chūyuàn · Much better! The doctor says my pneumonia is nearly gone, and I can go home in two days.

anna
太好了。那几天我们的神经都很紧张。
tài hǎo le nà jǐ tiān wǒmen de shénjīng dōu hěn jǐnzhāng · Wonderful. We were all on edge for those few days.

little sister
那天晚上我出了一身汗，胸也很疼。
nà tiān wǎnshang wǒ chū le yìshēn hàn xiōng yě hěn téng · That night I was drenched in sweat and my chest really hurt.

anna
医生给你做了哪些检查?
yīshēng gěi nǐ zuò le nǎxiē jiǎnchá · What tests did the doctors do?

little sister
查了肺，还查了肝和心脏，都没问题。护士还问了我的血型。
chá le fèi hái chá le gān hé xīnzàng dōu méi wèntí hùshi hái wèn le wǒ de xuèxíng · They checked my lungs, and my liver and heart too: all fine. The nurse even asked my blood type.

anna
那就好。你别看手机看太久，小心颈椎。
nà jiù hǎo nǐ bié kàn shǒujī kàn tài jiǔ xiǎoxīn jǐngzhuī · That's good. Don't spend too long on your phone: mind your neck.

little sister
得了，你说话跟我爸爸一样！我偷偷告诉你，我爸爸刚才特意给我送来了一碗汤。
déle nǐ shuōhuà gēn wǒ bàba yíyàng wǒ tōutōu gàosu nǐ wǒ bàba gāngcái tèyì gěi wǒ sòng lái le yì wǎn tāng · Oh come on, you sound like my dad! Between you and me, Dad just brought me a bowl of soup specially.

anna
听你这么说，我不禁想起了我小时候生病的事。
tīng nǐ zhème shuō wǒ bùjīn xiǎng qǐ le wǒ xiǎoshíhou shēngbìng de shì · Hearing that, I can't help remembering being ill as a child.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

晕
yūn
dizzy; to faint

肺
fèi
lung

肝
gān
liver

骨
gǔ
bone

good to know · 心脏 is the heart as an organ; 心 alone is the heart as feelings and mind. 脏 is read zàng here, not zāng “dirty”. 神经 is a nerve, and 神经紧张 is “on edge”. Careful: calling someone 神经病 is an insult (“crazy”).

You can now say exactly where it hurts, and tell a story about how people acted.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 14 germs and first aid

Talk about germs, infections and first aid, and give two choices with 要么……要么……

Knowing how to clean a cut or explain an infection is everyday safety, and 要么 helps you make quick decisions.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
要么	yàome	either … or …; or else	要么现在走，要么明天早上走。 Either we leave now or tomorrow morning.
病毒	bìngdú	virus	感冒一般是病毒引起的。 Colds are usually caused by viruses.
细菌	xìjūn	bacteria, germs	饭前洗手可以减少细菌。 Washing your hands before eating cuts down on germs.
传染	chuánrǎn	to infect, be contagious	感冒会传染，你离我远一点。 Colds are catching: keep your distance.
传染病	chuánrǎnbìng	infectious disease	经常洗手可以预防传染病。 Washing your hands often helps prevent infectious diseases.
感染	gǎnrǎn	to get infected, infect	伤口要保持干净，不然容易感染。 Keep the wound clean, or it can easily get infected.
免疫	miǎnyì	immunity; immune	多运动可以提高免疫能力。 Exercise boosts your immunity.
防治	fángzhì	to prevent and treat	这家{=(measure word)}医院专门防治传染病。 This hospital specialises in preventing and treating infectious diseases.
消毒	xiāodú	to disinfect	医生先用酒精给伤口消毒。 The doctor first cleaned the wound with rubbing alcohol.
消灭	xiāomiè	to wipe out, destroy	高温可以消灭大部分细菌。 High temperatures kill most bacteria.
酒精	jiǔjīng	rubbing alcohol, spirit	用酒精擦一下手。 Wipe your hands with a little alcohol.
抑制	yìzhì	to restrain, inhibit	这种药可以抑制细菌生长。 This medicine stops bacteria from growing.
急救	jíjiù	first aid; emergency treatment	每个人都应该学一点急救知识。 Everyone should learn a little first aid.
伤口	shāngkǒu	wound, cut	伤口不深，过几天就好了。 The cut isn't deep: it'll heal in a few days.
损伤	sǔnshāng	to injure, damage	跑步的姿势不对，会损伤身体。 Running with bad form can injure you.
轮椅	lúnyǐ	wheelchair	奶奶腿不方便，出门要坐轮椅。 Grandma has trouble walking and uses a wheelchair to go out.

康复	kāngfù	to recover	祝你早日康复！ Get well soon!
加重	jiāzhòng	to get worse; make heavier	不按时吃药，病会加重。 If you don't take your medicine on time, the illness will get worse.
死亡	sǐwáng	death; to die (formal)	医学的进步让死亡人数大大减少了。 Medical progress has greatly reduced the number of deaths.
疲劳	píláo	tired, fatigued	长时间开车容易疲劳。 Driving for hours makes you tired.
中暑	zhòngshǔ	heatstroke; to get heatstroke	天太热了，小心中暑。 It's so hot: watch out for heatstroke.
毒	dú	poison; poisonous	这种花有毒，不能吃。 This flower is poisonous: don't eat it.
难免	nánmiǎn	hard to avoid, bound to happen	第一次做饭，难免会出错。 The first time you cook, mistakes are bound to happen.

pattern 要么……，要么……: either … or …

要么 | choice A | ，要么 | choice B

要么……，要么…… lays out two options and only two: either this or that. It often sounds firm, like a decision: 要么现在去，要么别去. A single 要么 offers another idea: "or, how about …".

你要么吃药，要么去打针，别再拖了。 **nǐ yàome chī yào yàome qù dǎzhēn bié zài tuō le** Either take the medicine or get an injection: stop putting it off.

伤口要么每天消毒，要么去医院处理，不然会感染。 **shāngkǒu yàome měi tiān xiāodú yàome qù yīyuàn chǔlǐ bùrán huì gǎnrǎn** Either disinfect the wound every day or have it treated at the hospital; otherwise it will get infected.

要么少跑一点，要么换一双好鞋，不然容易损伤骨头。 **yàome shǎo pǎo yìdiǎn yàome huàn yì shuāng hǎo xié bùrán róngyì sǔnshāng gǔtou** Either run a bit less or get a good pair of shoes, or you could damage your bones.

dialogue a cut finger

xiaoming 哎呀！我切菜的时候把手切了。
āiyā wǒ qiē cài de shíhou bǎ shǒu qiē le · Ouch! I've cut my hand chopping vegetables.

anna 别动，我看看。伤口不太深，先用水冲一下。
bié dòng wǒ kàn kan shāngkǒu bú tài shēn xiān yòng shuǐ chōng yíxià · Don't move, let me look. It isn't very deep: rinse it under the tap first.

xiaoming 好疼！要不要去医院?
hǎo téng yào búyào qù yīyuàn · It really hurts! Should I go to hospital?

anna 要么现在去医院，要么我先给你消毒。家里有酒精吗?
yàome xiànzài qù yīyuàn yàome wǒ xiān gěi nǐ xiāodú jiā lǐ yǒu jiǔjīng ma · Either we go to hospital now or I disinfect it for you first. Have you got any rubbing alcohol?

xiaoming 在柜子里。……啊，好凉！
zài guìzi lǐ a hǎo liáng · It's in the cupboard. ... Ooh, that's cold!

anna 酒精可以消灭细菌，伤口就不容易感染了。我以前学过一点急救。
jiǔjīng kěyǐ xiāomiè xìjūn shāngkǒu jiù bù róngyì gǎnrǎn le wǒ yǐqián xué guo yìdiǎn jíjiù · Alcohol kills bacteria, so the cut won't get infected so easily. I did a bit of first aid training once.

xiaoming 多亏你在。我爸爸说，小伤不处理也会加重，发炎了就一定得去医院。
duōkuī nǐ zài wǒ bàba shuō xiǎo shāng bù chǔlǐ yě huì jiāzhòng fāyán le jiù yídìng děi qù yīyuàn · Good thing you're here. Dad says even small cuts get worse if you leave them, and if one gets inflamed you must go to hospital.

anna 对。这几天别碰水，好好休息，很快就会康复的。
duì zhè jǐ tiān bié pèng shuǐ hǎohǎo xiūxi hěn kuài jiù huì kāngfù de · Right. Keep it dry for a few days and rest, and it'll heal soon.

xiaoming 做饭难免会受点小伤，下次我小心一点。
zuòfàn nánmiǎn huì shòu diǎn xiǎo shāng xià cì wǒ xiǎoxīn yìdiǎn · Little injuries are bound to happen when you cook. I'll be more careful next time.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

肩
jiān
shoulder

灭
miè
to go out; put out (a fire)

抑
yì
to press down



轮
lún
wheel; to take turns; (measure) a round

good to know · 酒精 here is rubbing alcohol for cleaning cuts and hands. 75% alcohol is what Chinese pharmacies sell for disinfecting. 病毒 (virus) and 细菌 (bacteria) are different: antibiotics fight bacteria, not viruses.

You can now handle a small emergency in Chinese, calmly, and help a friend choose what to do.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 15 body and mind

Talk about the face, sleep, stress and growing up, and add feeling with 啦 and 嘛.

Sentence endings like 啦 and 嘛 are what make Chinese sound warm and alive instead of textbook.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
啦	la	(了 + 啊: excited, friendly)	太好啦，我们明天放假啦！ Brilliant, we're off tomorrow!
嘛	ma	(it's obvious!; softens a request)	你别着急嘛，慢慢说。 Don't panic: take your time.
面部	miànbù	face (formal)	他的面部表情很丰富。 His face is very expressive.
眉毛	méimao	eyebrow	她的眉毛又黑又长。 Her eyebrows are dark and long.
胡子	húzi	beard, moustache	爷爷留了很长的胡子。 Grandpa has grown a long beard.
舌头	shétou	tongue	汤太烫了，我把舌头烫了。 The soup was so hot I burned my tongue.
口腔	kǒuqiāng	mouth, oral cavity	每天刷牙，保持口腔健康。 Brush your teeth every day to keep your mouth healthy.
脑袋	nǎodai	head (spoken)	他摸了摸脑袋，不好意思地笑了。 He scratched his head and smiled sheepishly.
脑子	nǎozi	brain, mind	太累了，我的脑子一点都转{zhuan4-6}不动了。 I'm so tired my brain has stopped working.
视力	shìlì	eyesight	经常看手机|会影响视力。 Looking at your phone a lot can affect your eyesight.
近视	jìnshì	short-sighted	我|有点{==a bit, rather}近视，看不清远处的字。 I'm a bit short-sighted: I can't read things far away.
清醒	qīngxǐng	clear-headed; awake	喝了一杯咖啡以后，我清醒多了。 After a cup of coffee I'm much more awake.
身心	shēnxīn	body and mind	旅行能让人身心放松。 Travel relaxes body and mind.
减压	jiǎnyā	to reduce stress, de-stress	听音乐是一种很好的减压方法。 Listening to music is a great way to de-stress.
按摩	ànmó	massage	我给你按摩一下肩膀吧。 Let me give your shoulders a rub.
调节	tiáojié	to regulate, adjust	运动可以帮助调节心情。 Exercise helps balance your mood.

保暖	bǎonuǎn	to keep warm	冬天出门要注意保暖。 In winter, wrap up warm when you go out.
发育	fāyù	to develop, grow (the body)	孩子正在发育，要多吃有营养的东西。 Children are growing and need nourishing food.
青春期	qīngchūnqī	puberty, adolescence	孩子到了青春期，常常不想和父母说话。 Teenagers often don't want to talk to their parents.
怀孕	huáiyùn	to be pregnant	她怀孕了，明年春天孩子就出生了。 She's pregnant: the baby is due next spring.
日夜	rìyè	day and night	医生护士日夜照顾病人。 Doctors and nurses look after the patients day and night.
深夜	shēnyè	late at night	他经常工作到深夜。 He often works late into the night.
凌晨	língchén	the small hours, before dawn	我凌晨三点才睡。 I didn't get to sleep till three in the morning.
清晨	qīngchén	early morning	清晨的公园里有很多人在锻炼。 In the early morning the park is full of people exercising.

pattern 啦 and 嘛: feeling at the end of a sentence

sentence	啦 / 嘛

啦 is 了 + 啊 rolled into one: friendly, excited, a bit playful (我到啦！). 嘛 says "it's obvious!" (他是新来的嘛 "he's new, after all") or softens a request (你就去嘛 "oh, go on").

别担心啦，你的视力没问题。 **bié dānxīn la nǐ de shìlì méi wèntí** Don't worry, your eyesight is fine.

我说过嘛，熬夜对身体不好。 **wǒ shuō guo ma áoyè duì shēntǐ bù hǎo** I told you, didn't I: staying up late is bad for you.

你就试一试嘛，按摩很舒服的。 **nǐ jiù shì yi shi ma ànmó hěn shūfu de** Oh, go on, try it: massage feels great.

姐姐怀孕啦，我要当阿姨啦！ **jiějie huáiyùn la wǒ yào dāng āyí la** My sister's pregnant: I'm going to be an aunt!

dialogue too many late nights

manager liu 安娜，你看起来很累，是不是又工作到深夜了？
Ānnà nǐ kàn qǐlai hěn lèi shì bu shì yòu gōngzuò dào shēnyè le · Anna, you look exhausted. Have you been working late into the night again?

anna 是啊，昨天凌晨一点才睡，今天清晨六点就醒了。脑子一点都不清醒。
shì a zuótiān língchén yī diǎn cái shuì jīntiān qīngchén liù diǎn jiù xǐng le nǎozi yìdiǎn dōu bù qīngxǐng · Yes. I went to bed at one in the morning and woke at six. My brain isn't working at all.

manager liu 别这样嘛，身体最重要。你要学着给自己减压。
bié zhèyàng ma shēntǐ zuì zhòngyào nǐ yào xué zhe gěi zìjǐ jiǎnyā · Don't do this to yourself: your health comes first. Try to learn how to de-stress.

anna 我也想。可是项目这么多，我日夜都在想工作。
wǒ yě xiǎng kěshì xiàngmù zhème duō wǒ rìyè dōu zài xiǎng gōngzuò · I'd like to. But there are so many projects that I think about work day and night.

manager liu 我以前也这样，后来每个周末都去做面部按摩，也慢慢懂得了怎么调节心情。
wǒ yǐqián yě zhèyàng hòulái měi gè zhōumò dōu qù zuò miànbù ànmó yě màn màn dǒngde le zěnme tiáojié xīnqíng · I used to be the same. Then I started having a facial massage every weekend, and slowly learned how to manage my mood.

anna 我的颈椎也不太好，看电脑久了，眼睛也难受。
wǒ de jǐngzhuī yě bú tài hǎo kàn diànnǎo jiǔ le yǎnjing yě nánshòu · My neck isn't great either, and my eyes hurt after hours at the computer.

manager liu 每工作一个小时，就让眼睛休息几分钟，保护视力。对了，下周我给你放两天假。
měi gōngzuò yí gè xiǎoshí jiù ràng yǎnjing xiūxi jǐ fēnzhōng bǎohù shìlì duì le xià zhōu wǒ gěi nǐ fàng liǎng tiān jià · Every hour, rest your eyes for a few minutes to protect your eyesight. Oh, and next week I'm giving you two days off.

anna 真的吗？太好啦！谢谢刘经理！
zhēn de ma tài hǎo la xièxie Liújīnglǐ · Really? Brilliant! Thank you, Manager Liu!

manager liu 别客气。身心健康，工作才有效率嘛。
bié kèqi shēnxīn jiànkāng gōngzuò cái yǒu xiàolǜ ma · Don't mention it. A healthy body and mind make you work better, after all.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

亡
wáng
to perish

舌
shé
tongue

孕
yùn
pregnancy

good to know · 啦 and 嘛 are for speech and chat messages. Leave them out of emails to your boss (unless your boss uses them first!). 凌晨 is the small hours (about midnight to dawn); 清晨 is early morning, when it gets light.

With 啦 and 嘛, your Chinese now has a tone of voice, and that's what makes it sound like you.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 16 mission: dinner and a doctor

Chinese HSK 6 in 90 days
unit 2 · food & health

Follow a whole evening in Chinese: a family dinner, a stomach ache, the hospital, health tips and home again.

Missions put the whole unit to work in one story: food, the body and the doctor's advice.

chapter 1 a family dinner

ms zhang 外面的宴会吃多了，今天我特意做了几道家常菜。
wàimiàn de yànhuì chī duō le jīntiān wǒ tèyì zuò le jǐ dào jiācháng cài · We've all had enough banquets out, so today I've specially made a few home-style dishes.

anna 哇，好香的气味！这个香肠是您自己做的吗？
wā hǎo xiāng de qìwèi zhège xiāngcháng shì nín zìjǐ zuò de ma · Wow, what a lovely smell! Did you make this sausage yourself?

ms zhang 对，纯肉的，没有添加别的东西。
duì chún ròu de méiyǒu tiānjiā biéde dōngxi · Yes: pure meat, nothing else added.

xiaoming 妈妈，酱油和醋在哪儿？我想做一个酱。
māma jiàngyóu hé cù zài nǎr wǒ xiǎng zuò yí gè jiàng · Mum, where are the soy sauce and the vinegar? I want to make a dipping sauce.

ms zhang 在那罐花生酱旁边。把它们混合一下，再加几滴辣椒油。
zài nà guàn huāshēng jiàng pángbiān bǎ tāmen hùnhé yíxià zài jiā jǐ dī làjiāo yóu · Next to the jar of peanut butter. Mix them together, then add a few drops of chilli oil.

little sister 我要喝粥，先给我盛一碗吧。
wǒ yào hē zhōu xiān gěi wǒ chéng yì wǎn ba · I want congee: serve me a bowl first.

dr li 慢点喝，粥很烫，别烫了舌头。
màn diǎn hē zhōu hěn tàng bié tàng le shétou · Drink it slowly: the congee is very hot, don't burn your tongue.

anna 这碗粉的口感真好，味道特地道。
zhè wǎn fěn de kǒugǎn zhēn hǎo wèidào tè dìdao · These rice noodles have a lovely texture, and they taste really authentic.

dr li 今天的菜较为清淡，肉也煮得很烂，很适合我。
jīntiān de cài jiàowéi qīngdàn ròu yě zhǔ de hěn làn hěn shìhé wǒ · Today's food is fairly light and the meat is cooked very soft: just right for me.

ms zhang 这些饺子是用有机面粉包的，大家品尝一下。
zhèxiē jiǎozi shì yòng yǒujī miànfěn bāo de dàjiā pǐncháng yíxià · These dumplings are made with organic flour. Do try them, everyone.

little sister 哥哥，你给安娜夹一块肉嘛！
gēge nǐ gěi Ānnà jiā yí kuài ròu ma · Come on, brother, pick up a piece of meat for Anna!

anna 谢谢阿姨的热情招待！今天家里好不热闹啊！
xièxie āyí de rèqíng zhāodài jīntiān jiā lǐ hǎobú rènao a · Thank you for having us so warmly! It's so lively at home today!

chapter 2 one bowl too many

anna 这些菜太可口了，我一口气吃了三碗饭。
zhèxiē cài tài kěkǒu le wǒ yìkǒuqì chī le sān wǎn fàn · This food is so good I've had three bowls of rice in one go.

little sister 我也是。你再尝尝这串葡萄，又甜又脆。
wǒ yě shì nǐ zài cháng chang zhè chuàn pútao yòu tián yòu cuì · Me too. Try this bunch of grapes: sweet and crunchy.

ms zhang 还有薯片和糖果，都是给你们准备的。
hái yǒu shǔpiàn hé tángguǒ dōu shì gěi nǐmen zhǔnbèi de · There are crisps and sweets too, all for you.

anna 我最近工作太累，一直没有食欲，今天胃口特别好。
wǒ zuìjìn gōngzuò tài lèi yìzhí méiyǒu shíyù jīntiān wèikǒu tèbié hǎo · Work has worn me out lately and I've had no appetite, but today I'm really hungry.

anna 哎呀，我好像吃得太多了，有点恶心。
āiyā wǒ hǎoxiàng chī de tài duō le yǒudiǎn ěxin · Oh dear, I think I've eaten too much. I feel a bit sick.

xiaoming 是不是吃了太多辣椒？你的脸好红，还出了一身汗。
shì bu shì chī le tài duō làjiāo nǐ de liǎn hǎo hóng hái chū le yìshēn hàn · Did you have too much chilli? Your face is all red, and you're sweating all over.

anna 我的头也有点晕……
wǒ de tóu yě yǒudiǎn yūn · And I feel a bit dizzy...

dr li 别着急，先坐下来休息片刻。小明，把那扇窗户打开。
bié zháojí xiān zuò xialai xiūxi piànkè Xiǎomíng bǎ nà shàn chuānghu dǎkāi · Don't worry. Sit down and rest a moment. Xiaoming, open that window.

dr li 安娜，要么喝点热水，要么出去走走。
Ānnà yàome hē diǎn rè shuǐ yàome chūqù zǒu zou · Anna, either have some hot water or go for a little walk.

anna 不行，我想吐……
bùxíng wǒ xiǎng tù · No good, I think I'm going to be sick...

dr li 我还是带你去医院看看吧，这样大家都放心。
wǒ háishi dài nǐ qù yīyuàn kàn kan ba zhèyàng dàjiā dōu fàngxīn · I'd better take you to the hospital to be checked, so everyone can relax.

chapter 3 at the hospital

xiaoming 安娜，你脑袋还晕吗？要不要我去推个轮椅来？
Ānnà nǐ nǎodai hái yūn ma yàobúyào wǒ qù tuī gè lúnyǐ lái · Anna, is your head still spinning? Shall I go and get a wheelchair?

anna 不用啦，我自己能走。内科在几楼？
búyòng la wǒ zìjǐ néng zǒu nèikē zài jǐ lóu · No need, I can walk. Which floor is internal medicine on?

xiaoming 二楼。你看墙上写着：“最近传染病较多，请患者进门时用酒精消毒双手。”
èr lóu nǐ kàn qiáng shàng xiě zhe zuìjìn chuánrǎnbìng jiào duō qǐng huànzhě jìn mén shí yòng jiǔjīng xiāodú shuāng shǒu · The second. Look, the sign on the wall says: “Infectious diseases are common at the moment. Patients, please disinfect your hands with alcohol as you come in.”

anna 还写着：“如有发烧等异常症状，请先告诉护士。”
hái xiě zhe rú yǒu fāshāo děng yìcháng zhèngzhuàng qǐng xiān gàosu hùshi · It also says: “If you have a fever or other unusual symptoms, please tell a nurse first.”

xiaoming 那位女士怀孕了，我们把座位让给她吧。
nà wèi nǚshì huáiyùn le wǒmen bǎ zuòwèi ràng gěi tā ba · That lady is pregnant. Let’s give her our seats.

dr li 安娜，到你了。你哪个部位不舒服？
Ānnà dào nǐ le nǐ nǎge bùwèi bù shūfu · Anna, it’s your turn. Where does it feel bad?

anna 胃还有点不适，嗓子也又痒又疼。
wèi hái yǒudiǎn búshì sǎngzi yě yòu yǎng yòu téng · My stomach is still a bit uncomfortable, and my throat is itchy and sore.

dr li 张开嘴，我看看口腔。辣椒吃多了，嗓子有点发炎。
zhāngkāi zuǐ wǒ kàn kan kǒuqiāng làjiāo chī duō le sǎngzi yǒudiǎn fāyán · Open your mouth, let me look inside. Too much chilli: your throat is a little inflamed.

dr li 你以前患过胃病吗？
nǐ yǐqián huàn guo wèi bìng ma · Have you ever had stomach trouble before?

anna 没有。要打针吗？我最怕针了。
méiyǒu yào dǎzhēn ma wǒ zuì pà zhēn le · No. Do I need an injection? I’m terrified of needles.

dr li 不用。我听听你的心脏和肺……都很正常，血压也没问题。
búyòng wǒ tīng ting nǐ de xīnzàng hé fèi dōu hěn zhèngcháng xuèyā yě méi wèntí · No. Let me listen to your heart and lungs… all normal, and your blood pressure is fine too.

dr li 血液检查也正常，炎症不严重。
xuèyè jiǎnchá yě zhèngcháng yánzhèng bù yánzhòng · The blood test is normal too, and the inflammation isn’t serious.

chapter 4 the doctor’s advice

dr li 不是病毒或细菌感染，也不会传染。
bú shì bìngdú huò xìjūn gǎnrǎn yě bú huì chuánrǎn · It isn't a viral or bacterial infection, and it isn't contagious.

anna 那是食物中毒吗?
nà shì shíwù zhòngdú ma · Is it food poisoning, then?

dr li 也不是，你只是吃得太多太急了。
yě bú shì nǐ zhǐshì chī de tài duō tài jí le · No, you just ate too much, too fast.

dr li 这个药饭后服，每次两粒。症状要是加重，马上打电话给我。
zhège yào fàn hòu fú měi cì liǎng lì zhèngzhuàng yàoshi jiāzhòng mǎshàng dǎ diànhuà gěi wǒ · Take this medicine after meals, two tablets each time. If the symptoms get worse, call me at once.

xiaoming 爸爸，墙上的保健小知识写得真好：“一、饮食要适度，多补充维生素和蛋白质。”
bàba qiáng shàng de bǎojiàn xiǎo zhīshi xiě de zhēn hǎo yī yǐnshí yào shìdù duō bǔchōng wéishēngsù hé dànbáizhì · Dad, the health-care tips on the wall are really good: “One: eat in moderation, and get plenty of vitamins and protein.”

xiaoming “二、少吃肥肉，脂肪太多容易引起肥胖，对血管也不好。”
èr shǎo chī féi ròu zhīfáng tài duō róngyì yǐnqǐ féipàng duì xuèguǎn yě bù hǎo · “Two: eat less fatty meat. Too much fat easily leads to obesity, and it is bad for the blood vessels too.”

xiaoming “三、常温下放久的食物容易变质；剩菜要热透了，才能消灭细菌。”
sān chángwēn xià fàng jiǔ de shíwù róngyì biànzhì shèng cài yào rè tòu le cái néng xiāomiè xìjūn · “Three: food left at room temperature for long goes off easily. Heat leftovers right through: only then are the germs killed.”

xiaoming “四、饭后不宜做剧烈运动；夏天小心中暑，冬天注意保暖。”
sì fàn hòu bùyí zuò jùliè yùndòng xiàtiān xiǎoxīn zhòngshǔ dōngtiān zhùyì bǎonuǎn · “Four: avoid hard exercise after meals. Watch out for heatstroke in summer and keep warm in winter.”

xiaoming “五、长期疲劳、经常熬夜，会让人衰老得更快。”
wǔ chángqī píláo jīngcháng áoyè huì ràng rén shuāilǎo de gèng kuài · “Five: long-term tiredness and frequent late nights make you age faster.”

dr li 坚持这些，身体才能结实、强壮，免疫能力也会提高。
jiānchí zhèxiē shēntǐ cái néng jiēshi qiángzhuàng miǎnyì nénglì yě huì tígāo · Stick to these and your body will stay strong and sturdy, and your immunity will improve too.

xiaoming 照您这么说，人人都能长寿啦?
zhào nín zhème shuō rén rén dōu néng chángshòu la · By that logic, everyone will live to a ripe old age, then?

dr li 寿命跟很多东西有关，但好习惯的功效是真的。
shòumìng gēn hěn duō dōngxi yǒuguān dàn hǎo xíguàn de gōngxiào shì zhēn de · Lifespan depends on many things, but good habits really do work.

anna 我工作忙，难免熬夜。以后一定注意！
wǒ gōngzuò máng nánmiǎn áoyè yǐhòu yídìng zhùyì · I'm busy at work, so late nights are hard to avoid. I'll be careful from now on!

chapter 5 home again

little sister 安娜，你回来啦！感觉怎么样？
Ānnà nǐ huílái la gǎnjué zěnmeyàng · Anna, you're back! How do you feel?

anna 好多啦！我好容易才不恶心了，脑子也清醒了。
hǎoduō la wǒ hǎoróngyì cái bù ěxin le nǎozi yě qīngxǐng le · Much better! At last I don't feel sick any more, and my head is clear again.

little sister 我就说嘛，你就是吃太多了。我给你泡了一壶热茶。
wǒ jiù shuō ma nǐ jiùshì chī tài duō le wǒ gěi nǐ pào le yì hú rè chá · Told you: you just ate too much. I've made you a pot of hot tea.

little sister 刚才你说想吐，我爸爸赶忙去开车，我不禁担心起来。
gāngcái nǐ shuō xiǎng tù wǒ bàba gǎnmáng qù kāichē wǒ bùjīn dānxīn qǐlai · When you said you were going to be sick, Dad rushed off to get the car, and I couldn't help worrying.

anna 所以你特地给我买了这枝花？
suǒyǐ nǐ tèdì gěi wǒ mǎi le zhè zhī huā · So you bought me this flower specially?

little sister 对，我偷偷去楼下买的，我哥哥都不知道。
duì wǒ tōutōu qù lóu xià mǎi de wǒ gēge dōu bù zhīdào · Yes, I slipped downstairs and bought it on the quiet. My brother doesn't even know.

little sister 来，我给你按摩一下肩膀和脖子，帮你减压。
lái wǒ gěi nǐ ànmó yíxià jiānbǎng hé bózi bāng nǐ jiǎnyā · Come here, I'll massage your shoulders and neck to help you unwind.

anna 太舒服了！我天天看电脑，颈椎老疼，眼睛也花了。
tài shūfu le wǒ tiāntiān kàn diànnǎo jǐngzhuī lǎo téng yǎnjing yě huā le · That's lovely! I'm at the computer every day: my neck always hurts, and my eyes have gone blurry too.

little sister 你本来就近视，深夜别再工作了，要保护视力。
nǐ běnlái jiù jìnshì shēnyè bié zài gōngzuò le yào bǎohù shìlì · You're short-sighted already. No more working late at night: look after your eyesight.

anna 对，今天晚上我要早点睡，不能再熬夜到凌晨了。
duì jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ yào zǎo diǎn shuì bù néng zài áoyè dào língchén le · Right, I'm going to bed early tonight: no more staying up into the small hours.

little sister 明天清晨我们去公园走走吧，调节一下身心。
míngtiān qīngchén wǒmen qù gōngyuán zǒu zou ba tiáojié yíxià shēnxīn · Let's go for a walk in the park early tomorrow morning, to refresh body and mind.

little sister 下次我们一起去吃自助吧？
xià cì wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zìzhù ba · Shall we go to a buffet together next time?

anna 我可不敢啦！要么点个套餐，要么就喝一碗粥。
wǒ kě bù gǎn la yàome diǎn gè tàocān yàome jiù hē yì wǎn zhōu · I wouldn't dare! Either I order a set meal, or I just have a bowl of congee.

Unit 2 is done: you can enjoy a feast, describe what hurts and follow the doctor's orders, all in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 17 the whole family

Name your whole family, from aunts to nephews, talk about marriage and old age, and use 人家.

Chinese has a word for every relative, and family gatherings are where you'll need them all.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
人家	rénjia	others; he, she, they; (playful) I	人家都下班了，你怎么还在忙? Everyone else has gone home: why are you still working?
姑姑	gūgu	aunt (father's sister)	我姑姑在北京当老师。 My aunt (Dad's sister) is a teacher in Beijing.
姨	yí	aunt (mother's sister)	我姨就住在我们家旁边。 My aunt (Mum's sister) lives right next to us.
舅舅	jiùjiu	uncle (mother's brother)	舅舅每年过年都来我们家。 My uncle (Mum's brother) comes to us every Chinese New Year.
外甥	wàisheng	nephew (sister's son)	我的外甥今年上小学了。 My nephew (my sister's son) started primary school this year.
侄子	zhízi	nephew (brother's son)	我侄子特别喜欢踢足球。 My nephew (my brother's son) loves football.
亲属	qīnshǔ	relatives (formal)	请填写一位亲属的电话号码。 Please give the phone number of a relative.
家属	jiāshǔ	family members (of a patient, an employee)	医院只{zhi3}允许一位家属陪病人。 The hospital only lets one family member stay with a patient.
长辈	zhǎngbèi	elders, the older generation	和长辈说话要有礼貌。 Be polite when you speak to your elders.
老太太	lǎotàitai	old lady	那位老太太已经九十岁了。 That old lady is already ninety.
母	mǔ	female (of animals)	我们家的猫是母的。 Our cat is female.
媳妇	xífu	wife (colloquial); daughter-in-law	他媳妇是北京人。 His wife is from Beijing.
婚姻	hūnyīn	marriage	他们的婚姻很幸福。 They have a very happy marriage.
订婚	dìnghūn	to get engaged	他们去年订婚，今年结婚。 They got engaged last year and are getting married this year.
求婚	qiúhūn	to propose (marriage)	他在海边向女朋友求婚了。 He proposed to his girlfriend by the sea.

嫁	jià	(of a woman) to marry	她嫁给了一个医生。 She married a doctor.
娶	qǔ	(of a man) to marry, take a wife	他娶了一个很能干的姑娘。 He married a very capable young woman.
夫人	fūrén	Mrs, madam; wife (formal)	王先生和夫人一起参加了宴会。 Mr Wang and his wife came to the banquet together.
娃娃	wáwa	baby, child; doll	小姑娘抱着一个布娃娃。 The little girl is hugging a rag doll.
婴儿	yīngér	baby, infant	婴儿每天要睡很长时间。 Babies sleep for a very long time every day.
岁数	suìshu	age (of an older person)	您多大岁数了? May I ask how old you are?
养老	yǎnglǎo	to retire; care for the elderly	很多人退休以后回老家养老。 Many people go back to their home town when they retire.
养老院	yǎnglǎoyuàn	care home, old people's home	周末我们去养老院看望老人。 At the weekend we visit the elderly at the care home.
一辈子	yībèizi	a lifetime, all one's life	奶奶当了一辈子老师。 Grandma was a teacher all her life.
终身	zhōngshēn	lifelong	这台洗衣机终身保修。 This washing machine has a lifetime warranty.

pattern 人家: other people, he or she, or a playful "me"

人家 **= other people / he, she / I (playful)**

人家 has three uses. "Other people": 人家都走了 everyone else has left. Someone you've just mentioned: 人家是专家 she's the expert, you know. And said coyly, "me": 人家不想去嘛 I don't wanna go!

人家是专家，你听人家的吧。 **rénjia shì zhuānjiā nǐ tīng rénjia de ba** She's the expert: do what she says.

你看人家小明，又能干又懂事。 **nǐ kàn rénjia Xiǎomíng yòu nénggàn yòu dǒng shì** Look at Xiaoming: capable and sensible.

人家不想去嘛！ **rénjia bù xiǎng qù ma** But I don't want to go!

dialogue grandma's ninetieth birthday

anna 小明，今天来了这么多人！他们都是你的亲属吗?
Xiǎomíng jīntiān lái le zhème duō rén tāmen dōu shì nǐ de qīnshǔ ma · Xiaoming, so many people today! Are they all your relatives?

xiaoming 对，今天是我奶奶九十岁生日。那位穿红衣服的是我姑姑，旁边是我舅舅。
duì jīntiān shì wǒ nǎinai jiǔshí suì shēngrì nà wèi chuān hóng yīfu de shì wǒ gūgu pángbiān shì wǒ jiùjiu · Yes, it's my grandma's ninetieth birthday. The one in red is my aunt, and next to her is my uncle.

anna 姑姑和舅舅有什么不一样?
gūgu hé jiùjiu yǒu shénme bù yíyàng · What's the difference between 姑姑 and 舅舅?

xiaoming 姑姑是我爸爸的姐妹，舅舅是我妈妈的兄弟。
gūgu shì wǒ bàba de jiěmèi jiùjiu shì wǒ māma de xiōngdì · 姑姑 is my dad's sister; 舅舅 is my mum's brother.

ms zhang 那个抱着婴儿的是我姨的女儿，她去年刚嫁到北京。小娃娃才三个月。
nàge bào zhe yīngér de shì wǒ yí de nǚér tā qùnián gāng jià dào Běijīng xiǎo wáwa cái sān gè yuè · The one holding the baby is my aunt's daughter. She married and moved to Beijing last year. The little one is only three months old.

anna 那位老太太就是奶奶吧？这么大岁数了，身体还这么好！
nà wèi lǎotàitai jiùshì nǎinai ba zhème dà suìshu le shēntǐ hái zhème hǎo · And that old lady must be Grandma. At her age, and still so healthy!

ms zhang 是啊。人家都劝她去养老院，她说在家养老最舒服。
shì a rénjia dōu quàn tā qù yǎnglǎoyuàn tā shuō zài jiā yǎnglǎo zuì shūfu · Yes. People keep telling her to move to a care home, but she says home is the best place to grow old.

little sister 奶奶还问小明什么时候娶媳妇呢！
nǎinai hái wèn Xiǎomíng shénme shíhou qǔ xífu ne · Grandma even asked Xiaoming when he's getting married!

ms zhang 长辈嘛，都关心这些。
zhǎngbèi ma dōu guānxīn zhèxiē · That's what the older generation worry about, isn't it.

xiaoming 得了，你们别说我了，人家还想好好工作呢。
déle nǐmen bié shuō wǒ le rénjia hái xiǎng hǎohǎo gōngzuò ne · Oh come on, leave me alone: I just want to get on with my job.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

舅
jiù
mother's brother

甥
sheng
sister's child

good to know · Chinese family words show which side a relative is on: 姑姑 and 叔叔 are on your father's side, 姨 and 舅舅 on your mother's. 嫁 is for a woman marrying (嫁给他), 娶 for a man (娶她). 结婚 works for both. 疼 isn't only "it hurts": as a verb it means "to dote on": 奶奶最疼我 "Grandma dotes on me". 心疼 (to feel for someone) comes from the same idea.

At the next family dinner, you'll know exactly who is who, and what to call them.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 18 a new flat

Describe a flat and a building, and use 净, 一同 and 大都 to say “nothing but”, “together” and “mostly”.

Flat-hunting is a rite of passage in Chinese cities, and house prices are everyone’s favourite topic.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
净	jìng	nothing but, all the time; clean	你别净玩手机了，快来帮忙。 Stop playing on your phone all the time and come and help.
一同	yītóng	together (written)	我们一同去参观了新房子。 We went to see the new house together.
大都	dàdū	mostly, for the most part	这个小区的居民大都是年轻人。 Most of the residents on this estate are young.
住宅	zhùzhái	residence, housing	这栋住宅楼有二十层。 This block of flats has twenty floors.
建筑物	jiànzhùwù	building, structure	这座建筑物已经有一百年的历史了。 This building is already a hundred years old.
栋	dòng	(measure) for buildings	我们小区一共有十栋楼。 There are ten buildings on our estate.
户	hù	(measure) households	这栋楼一共有三十户。 There are thirty households in this building.
平方米	píngfāngmǐ	square metre	这套房子有八十平方米。 This flat is eighty square metres.
房价	fángjià	housing prices	北京的房价很高。 House prices in Beijing are very high.
隔壁	gébì	next door	隔壁住着一对{=pair, couple (measure word)}老夫妻。 An old couple live next door.
楼道	lóudào	stairwell, corridor (in a block of flats)	楼道里的灯坏了。 The light in the stairwell is broken.
走廊	zǒuláng	corridor, hallway	卫生间在走廊的右边。 The toilet is on the right of the corridor.
角落	jiǎoluò	corner	房间的角落里放着一张小桌子。 There’s a small table in the corner of the room.
墙壁	qiángbì	wall	我们打算把墙壁刷白{=white}。 We’re planning to paint the walls white.
砖	zhuān	brick	这面墙是用红砖建的。 This wall is built of red brick.
坚固	jiāngù	solid, sturdy	这座桥非常坚固。 This bridge is very solid.

拆除	chāichú	to demolish, remove	这栋旧楼明年就要拆除了。 This old building will be pulled down next year.
改造	gǎizào	to transform, renovate	他们改造了一栋老房子。 They renovated an old house.
家居	jiājū	home furnishings; home	周末我们去家居商场买了一张床。 At the weekend we bought a bed at a furniture store.
摆放	bǎifàng	to place, arrange	书架上整齐地摆放着很多书。 Lots of books are neatly arranged on the shelves.
布置	bùzhì	to decorate, arrange (a room)	她把房间布置得很温暖。 She has made her room really cosy.
配套	pèitào	to make a complete set; supporting	这个小区的配套设施很齐全。 The estate has all the facilities you need.
有序	yǒuxù	orderly	大家有序地上了车。 Everyone got on the bus in an orderly way.
透过	tòuguò	through (a window); by means of	阳光透过窗户照进房间。 Sunlight shines into the room through the window.

pattern 净、一同、大都: nothing but, together, mostly

subject | 净 / 一同 / 大都 | verb phrase

Three scope adverbs that go right before the verb. 净 means “nothing but, all the time” and is often a complaint (你净说好听的). 一同 means “together” and is more written than 一起. 大都 means “mostly, for the most part”.

你别净玩手机了，快来帮忙。 **nǐ bié jìng wán shǒujī le kuài lái bāngmáng** Stop playing on your phone all the time and come and help.

周末我们一同去看了新房子。 **zhōumò wǒmen yìtóng qù kàn le xīn fángzi** At the weekend we went to see the new flat together.

这些老房子大都是用砖建的。 **zhèxiē lǎo fángzi dàdū shì yòng zhuān jiàn de** These old houses are mostly built of brick.

dialogue anna’s new flat

anna 小明，这就是我的新家！我好容易才找到这套房子。
Xiǎomíng zhè jiùshì wǒ de xīn jiā wǒ hǎoróngyì cái zhǎo dào zhè tào fángzi · Xiaoming, this is my new home! It took me ages to find this flat.

xiaoming 不错！多少平方米？
búcuò duōshao píngfāngmǐ · Not bad! How many square metres?

anna 六十平方米。这栋楼一共有二十层，每层住着四户。
liùshí píngfāngmǐ zhè dòng lóu yígòng yǒu èrshí céng měi céng zhù zhe sì hù · Sixty. The building has twenty floors, with four households on each floor.

xiaoming 这种老楼的墙很坚固。不过厨房好像被改造过。
zhè zhǒng lǎo lóu de qiáng hěn jiāngù búguò chúfáng hǎoxiàng bèi gǎizào guo · The walls in these old blocks are really solid. But the kitchen looks like it's been redone.

anna 对，原来的房东把厨房和客厅中间的墙拆除了，现在大多了。
duì yuánlái de fángdōng bǎ chúfáng hé kètīng zhōngjiān de qiáng chāichú le xiànzài dà duō le · Yes, the old landlord knocked down the wall between the kitchen and the living room, so it's much bigger now.

xiaoming 家具怎么摆放？我建议把沙发放在窗户旁边，书架放在角落里。
jiājù zěnme bǎifàng wǒ jiànyì bǎ shāfā fàng zài chuānghu pángbiān shūjià fàng zài jiǎoluò lǐ · How will you arrange the furniture? I'd put the sofa by the window and the bookshelf in the corner.

anna 好主意。周末我想去家居商场，再买一些东西布置一下。
hǎo zhǔyi zhōumò wǒ xiǎng qù jiājū shāngchǎng zài mǎi yìxiē dōngxi bùzhì yíxià · Good idea. At the weekend I want to go to a furniture store and get a few things to decorate.

xiaoming 我和妹妹可以一同去帮你。对了，隔壁住的是谁？
wǒ hé mèimei kěyǐ yìtóng qù bāng nǐ duì le gébì zhù de shì shéi · My sister and I can come along and help. By the way, who lives next door?

anna 一位老太太，人很好。她每天都打扫楼道。
yí wèi lǎotàitai rén hěn hǎo tā měi tiān dōu dǎsǎo lóudào · An old lady. She's lovely: she sweeps the stairwell every day.

xiaoming 那你运气真好！
nà nǐ yùnqi zhēn hǎo · You're lucky, then!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

宅
zhái
house

栋
dòng
(measure) for buildings

good to know · Chinese flats are measured in 平方米 (square metres), and the size usually includes a share of the stairwell and corridors. 净 as an adverb usually sounds like a complaint: 你净买没用的东西 "you only ever buy useless stuff".

You can now describe a flat room by room, and talk house prices like a local.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 19 chores

Talk about housework and the things in your home, and use time adverbs: 一时, 不时, 仍旧, 依旧, 一向.

Sharing chores is part of living with anyone, and these adverbs let you say “still”, “always” and “now and then”.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
一时	yīshí	for a moment; at the moment	他的名字我一时想不起来了。 I just can’t think of his name right now.
不时	bùshí	now and then, from time to time	他一边工作，一边不时地看看手机。 He’s working, but keeps glancing at his phone.
仍旧	réngjiù	still, as before	已经十年了，这里仍旧没什么变化。 It’s been ten years, and this place still hasn’t changed much.
依旧	yījiù	still, as before (written)	十年过去了，这条街依旧那么热闹。 Ten years on, this street is as lively as ever.
一向	yīxiàng	always, all along	他一向很准时。 He’s always on time.
清洁	qīngjié	clean; cleaning	公司每天晚上都有人来做清洁。 Someone comes to clean the office every evening.
清理	qīnglǐ	to clear out, tidy up	周末我要清理一下冰箱。 At the weekend I’m going to clear out the fridge.
清扫	qīngsǎo	to sweep, clean up	雪停了，工人们开始清扫街道。 The snow has stopped, and workers have started clearing the streets.
清洗	qīngxǐ	to wash, rinse	水果吃之前要清洗干净。 Wash fruit well before you eat it.
灰尘	huīchén	dust	桌子上全是灰尘。 The table is covered in dust.
洗漱	xǐshù	to wash up (face and teeth)	我每天早上六点起床洗漱。 I get up and wash at six every morning.
浴室	yùshì	bathroom	浴室的灯坏了。 The bathroom light is broken.
晾	liàng	to hang out to dry	把洗好的衣服晾在阳台上。 Hang the washing out on the balcony.
铺	pū	to spread, lay out; make (a bed)	我帮你铺床吧。 Let me make the bed for you.
枕头	zhěntou	pillow	这个枕头太高了，我睡不好。 This pillow is too high: I can’t sleep well.
暖气	nuǎnqì	central heating	北京的冬天有暖气，房间里很暖和。 Beijing homes have heating in winter, so it’s warm indoors.

热水器	rèshuǐqì	water heater	热水器坏了，没有热水了。 The water heater is broken: there's no hot water.
电饭锅	diànfànguō	rice cooker	用电饭锅做饭又快又方便。 Cooking rice in a rice cooker is quick and easy.
插座	chāzuò	socket, power point	床边没有插座，手机没法充电。 There's no socket by the bed, so I can't charge my phone.
开关	kāiguān	switch	灯的开关在门旁边。 The light switch is by the door.
照明	zhàomíng	lighting	这个房间的照明不太好。 The lighting in this room isn't very good.
明亮	míngliàng	bright, well-lit	新的客厅又宽又明亮。 The new living room is spacious and bright.
通风	tōngfēng	to ventilate, air (a room)	每天开窗通风，对身体有好处。 Opening the windows every day to air the room is good for you.
自来水	zìláishuǐ	tap water	这里的自来水不能直接喝。 You can't drink the tap water here straight.

pattern 一时、不时、仍旧、依旧、一向: time adverbs

subject **一时 / 不时 / 仍旧 / 依旧 / 一向** **verb phrase**

Five time adverbs, all before the verb: 一时 "for the moment" (一时想不起来 can't think of it right now), 不时 "every now and then", 仍旧 and 依旧 "still, as before" (依旧 is more written), 一向 "always, all along".

他叫什么名字？我一时想不起来了。 **tā jiào shénme míngzi wǒ yìshí xiǎng bu qǐlai le** What's his name? I just can't think of it.

我在家工作，大白不时过来看看我。 **wǒ zài jiā gōngzuò Dàbái bùshí guòlái kàn kan wǒ** I work from home, and Dabai comes over to check on me every now and then.

这么多年过去了，这里的风景依旧很美。 **zhème duō nián guòqù le zhèlǐ de fēngjǐng yījiù hěn měi** After all these years, the view here is as beautiful as ever.

dialogue cleaning day

anna 今天我们把整个房子都清洁一遍吧。
jīntiān wǒmen bǎ zhěnggè fángzi dōu qīngjié yí biàn ba · Let's give the whole flat a proper clean today.

little sister 好！你看，窗户上全是灰尘。
hǎo nǐ kàn chuānghu shàng quán shì huīchén · OK! Look, the windows are covered in dust.

anna 我先清扫地面，你帮我清洗浴室，好吗？
wǒ xiān qīngsǎo dìmiàn nǐ bāng wǒ qīngxǐ yùshì hǎo ma · I'll sweep the floor first. Could you clean the bathroom?

little sister 没问题。哎，热水器怎么没有热水？
méi wèntí āi rèshuǐqì zěnme méiyǒu rè shuǐ · Sure. Hey, why isn't the water heater giving any hot water?

anna 我也不知道，昨天还能用。我一时也想不起房东的电话。
wǒ yě bù zhīdào zuótiān hái néng yòng wǒ yìshí yě xiǎng bu qǐ fángdōng de diànhuà · No idea: it worked yesterday. And I can't remember the landlord's number right now.

little sister 看看开关是不是关了。……对，开关没开！
kàn kan kāiguān shì bu shì guān le duì kāiguān méi kāi · Check whether it's switched off. … Yes, the switch was off!

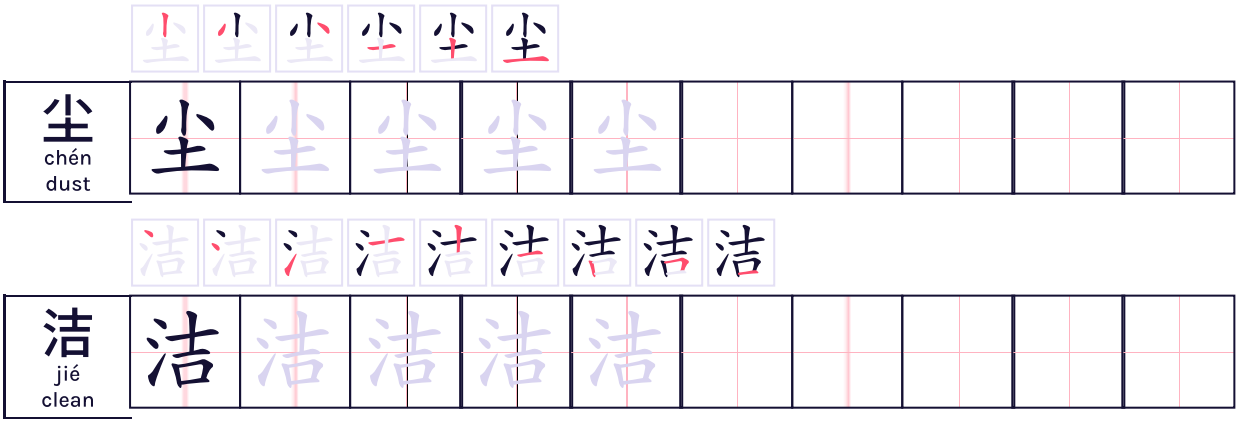
anna 哈哈，原来是这样。对了，洗漱的东西都放在浴室里吧。
hā hā yuánlái shì zhèyàng duì le xǐshù de dōngxi dōu fàng zài yùshì lǐ ba · Ha ha, so that was it. Oh, put all the toiletries in the bathroom, will you?

little sister 好的。床我帮你铺好了，枕头也放好了。
hǎo de chuáng wǒ bāng nǐ pū hǎo le zhěntou yě fàng hǎo le · OK. I've made the bed for you and put the pillows out.

anna 谢谢！这个房间又明亮又通风，我一向喜欢这样的房子。
xièxie zhège fángjiān yòu míngliàng yòu tōngfēng wǒ yíxiàng xǐhuan zhèyàng de fángzi · Thanks! This room is bright and airy: I've always loved places like this.

little sister 不过照明不太够，晚上看书得买一个台灯。
búguò zhàomíng bú tài gòu wǎnshang kàn shū děi mǎi yí gè táidēng · The lighting isn't great, though: you'll need a desk lamp for reading at night.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · In China, people usually boil tap water before drinking it, which is why every home has a kettle or a water dispenser. North of the Huai River, Chinese cities have central heating (暖气) in winter; in the south most homes don't.

Now you can share the chores in Chinese, and say what has always been, and still is, true.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 20 around town

Describe a neighbourhood, a town and the countryside, and complain about bad timing with 早不……，晚不……

Every place has a story, and “of all the times to…” is one of the most human things you can say.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
街头	jiētóu	the street(s), street corner	街头有很多卖小吃的。 There are lots of snack sellers on the street.
人行道	rénxíngdào	pavement, sidewalk	请走人行道，注意安全。 Please walk on the pavement and stay safe.
周边	zhōubiān	surroundings, nearby	学校周边有很多饭馆。 There are lots of restaurants around the school.
空地	kòngdì	open space, empty lot	楼下有一块空地，孩子们常在那儿踢球。 There’s an open space downstairs where the kids often play football.
井	jǐng	well (for water)	村庄里原先有一口老井。 The village used to have an old well.
镇	zhèn	town; to chill (a drink)	他住在一个小镇上。 He lives in a small town.
城镇	chéngzhèn	towns, cities and towns	越来越多的人从农村搬到了城镇。 More and more people are moving from the countryside to the towns.
都市	dūshì	metropolis, big city	北京是一个热闹的大都市。 Beijing is a bustling metropolis.
村庄	cūnzhuāng	village	河边有一个美丽的小村庄。 There’s a beautiful little village by the river.
郊外	jiāowài	the countryside around a city	周末我们开车去郊外玩。 At the weekend we drove out into the countryside.
家园	jiāyuán	home, homeland	保护环境就是保护我们的家园。 Protecting the environment means protecting our home.
家家户户	jiājiāhùhù	every household	过年的时候，家家户户都很热闹。 At Chinese New Year every household is full of life.
千家万户	qiānjiāwànhù	countless households, everyone	互联网已经走进了千家万户。 The internet has reached just about every home.
衣食住行	yīshízhùxíng	the basics of daily life	手机改变了我们的衣食住行。 Phones have changed every part of our daily life.
轮流	lúnliú	to take turns	我们轮流打扫房间。 We take turns cleaning the room.

封闭	fēngbì	to close off, seal	这条路正在修，暂时封闭了。 This road is being repaired and is closed for now.
通道	tōngdào	passage, passageway	请不要在安全通道里放东西。 Please don't leave things in the emergency exit.
处处	chùchù	everywhere, in every way	春天来了，处处都是花。 Spring is here and there are flowers everywhere.
遍地	biàndì	everywhere (on the ground), all over	这个季节，郊外遍地是花。 At this time of year, the countryside is covered in flowers.
一带	yīdài	area, around (a place)	这一带的房价很高。 House prices around here are very high.
内外	nèiwài	inside and outside; home and abroad	这家{=(measure word)}公司在国内外都很有名。 This company is famous both at home and abroad.
远方	yuǎnfāng	a distant place, far away	他常常想念远方的家人。 He often misses his family far away.
遥远	yáoyuǎn	distant, far-off	那是一个遥远的国家。 That's a faraway country.
众人	zhòngrén	everyone, the crowd (written)	他的话让众人都笑了起来。 What he said made everyone burst out laughing.

pattern 早不……，晚不……: of all the times to …

早不 X **，晚不 X** **，the worst possible moment**

早不……，晚不…… complains about bad timing: "of all the times to …". Use the same verb in both halves, then say the unlucky moment. Speakers often add 偏偏 ("just, of all things") in the last part.

早不停电，晚不停电，我一做饭就停电了。 **zǎo bù tíng diàn wǎn bù tíng diàn wǒ yí zuòfàn jiù tíng diàn le** Of all the times for a power cut: just as I started cooking.

早不说，晚不说，你怎么现在才说！ **zǎo bù shuō wǎn bù shuō nǐ zěnme xiànzài cái shuō** You could have said so any time: why tell me now?

早不坏，晚不坏，电梯在我搬家那天坏了。 **zǎo bú huài wǎn bú huài diàntī zài wǒ bānjiā nà tiān huài le** Of all the days for the lift to break down: the day I moved house.

早不来，晚不来，他在众人都走了以后才来。 **zǎo bu lái wǎn bù lái tā zài zhòngrén dōu zǒu le yǐhòu cái lái** Of all the times to arrive: he came after everyone had left.

dialogue a walk round the neighbourhood

anna 小明，我们去附近走走吧，我想了解一下周边的情况。
Xiǎomíng wǒmen qù fùjìn zǒu zou ba wǒ xiǎng liǎojiě yíxià zhōubiān de qíngkuàng · Xiaoming, let's go for a walk. I want to get to know the area.

xiaoming 好啊。这一带原先是一个村庄，听说还有一口老井呢。
hǎo a zhè yídài yuánxiān shì yí gè cūnzhuāng tīngshuō hái yǒu yì kǒu lǎo jǐng ne · Sure. This area used to be a village. Apparently there's still an old well.

anna 真的吗？现在完全是城镇的样子了。
zhēn de ma xiànzài wánquán shì chéngzhèn de yàngzi le · Really? It looks completely like a town now.

xiaoming 是啊，二十年前这里还是遥远的郊外，现在变成了大都市的一部分。
shì a èrshí nián qián zhèlǐ háishi yáoyuǎn de jiāowài xiànzài biànchéng le dà dūshì de yí bùfen · Yes. Twenty years ago this was the far-off countryside; now it's part of the big city.

anna 你看那边有一块空地，以后会建什么？
nǐ kàn nàbiān yǒu yí kuài kòngdì yǐhòu huì jiàn shénme · Look, there's an empty lot over there. What will they build?

xiaoming 听说要建一个公园。现在那边封闭了，要么从这条通道走，要么绕过去。
tīngshuō yào jiàn yí gè gōngyuán xiànzài nàbiān fēngbì le yàome cóng zhè tiáo tōngdào zǒu yàome rào guoqu · A park, I hear. It's closed off at the moment: we either take this passage or go round.

anna 哎呀，早不下雨，晚不下雨，我们一出来散步就下雨了！
āiyā zǎo bú xià yǔ wǎn bú xià yǔ wǒmen yì chūlái sànbù jiù xià yǔ le · Oh no! Of all the times to rain: the moment we come out for a walk!

xiaoming 我们去那家咖啡店避一避雨吧。
wǒmen qù nà jiā kāfēi diàn bì yi bi yǔ ba · Let's shelter in that café for a bit.

anna 好。这里处处都有小店，衣食住行都很方便。
hǎo zhèlǐ chùchù dōu yǒu xiǎo diàn yī shí zhù xíng dōu hěn fāngbiàn · OK. There are little shops everywhere here: everything you need is close by.

xiaoming 现在快递和外卖已经走进了千家万户嘛。
xiànzài kuàidì hé wàimài yǐjīng zǒu jìn le qiānjiā wànhù ma · Well, deliveries and takeaways reach just about every home now.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

井
jǐng
well (for water)

庄
zhuāng
village, farmstead

good to know · 衣食住行 (clothes, food, housing, transport) is the standard way to say "daily life" in news and essays. 都 is dū in 都市 and 首都 (city, capital), and dōu in 都 "all".

You can now tell the story of a place, from village to city, and grumble about the rain like a native.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 21 on the road

Talk about traffic, vehicles and directions, and use 把 with a thing or event as the subject.

Traffic is the small talk of every Chinese city, and this 把 pattern is everywhere in the news.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
路况	lùkuàng	road and traffic conditions	出发前先查一下路况。 Check the traffic before you set off.
路面	lùmiàn	road surface	下雪以后路面很滑。 The roads are slippery after the snow.
路程	lùchéng	distance, journey	从我家到公司，开车要半个小时的路程。 From my home to the office is half an hour's drive.
畅通	chàngtōng	flowing freely, unblocked	今天路上很畅通，十分钟就到了。 The roads were clear today: we got there in ten minutes.
拥挤	yōngjǐ	crowded	早上的地铁非常拥挤。 The underground is packed in the morning.
高峰	gāofēng	peak, rush hour	下班高峰的时候，路上特别堵。 At evening rush hour the roads are really jammed.
机动车	jīdòngchē	motor vehicle	这条路上禁止机动车通行。 Motor vehicles are not allowed on this road.
摩托车	mótuōchē	motorbike	他每天骑摩托车上班。 He rides his motorbike to work every day.
货车	huòchē	lorry, truck	一辆大货车停在路边。 A big lorry is parked by the road.
客车	kèchē	coach, long-distance bus	我们坐长途客车回老家。 We take the long-distance coach back to our home town.
轮	lún	wheel; to take turns; (measure) a round	下{=next}一轮比赛明天开始。 The next round of the competition starts tomorrow.
轮子	lúnzi	wheel	我的箱子掉了一个轮子。 One of the wheels has come off my suitcase.
刹车	shāchē	to brake; brakes	前面有人，司机赶紧刹车。 There was someone ahead, so the driver braked hard.
碰撞	pèngzhuàng	to collide, crash	两辆车在路口发生了碰撞。 Two cars collided at the junction.
拐	guǎi	to turn (a corner)	在前面路口往左拐。 Turn left at the next junction.
拐弯	guǎiwān	to turn a corner	拐弯的时候要慢一点。 Slow down when you turn a corner.

拦	lán	to stop, block; hail (a taxi)	我在路边拦了一辆出租车。 I hailed a taxi by the road.
倒车	dǎochē	to change (buses, trains)	从我家去公司不用倒车，很方便。 From home to the office there's no need to change: very handy.
时速	shísù	speed (per hour)	这条路的最高时速是八十公里。 The speed limit on this road is eighty kilometres an hour.
方位	fāngwèi	direction, position	在山里很容易搞不清方位。 It's easy to lose your bearings in the mountains.
乘	chéng	to ride, take (transport, written)	您可以乘{cheng2-6-2}地铁去机场。 You can take the underground to the airport.
穿过	chuānguò	to go through, cross	穿过这条马路就是公园。 Cross this road and you're at the park.
晕车	yùnchē	to be carsick	我一坐客车就晕车。 I get carsick as soon as I get on a coach.
漫长	màncháng	long, endless (time, a road)	北方的冬天很漫长。 Winters in the north are long.

pattern 把 with a thing as the subject

a thing or an event | 把 | someone / something | verb + result

把 usually follows a person, but the subject can also be a thing or an event that causes a result: 一场大雨把路面弄湿了 "a downpour soaked the roads". The verb always carries a result or change after it.

大风把门吹开了。 **dà fēng bǎ mén chuī kāi le** The wind blew the door open.

那辆摩托车把路边的花撞倒了。 **nà liàng mótuōchē bǎ lùbiān de huā zhuàng dǎo le** That motorbike knocked over the flowers by the road.

漫长的路程把大家都累坏了。 **màncháng de lùchéng bǎ dàjiā dōu lèi huài le** The long journey wore everyone out.

dialogue stuck in traffic

xiaoming 哎呀，前面怎么这么堵？刚才路上还很畅通。
āiyā qiánmiàn zěnme zhème dǔ gāngcái lùshang hái hěn chàngtōng · Oh no, why is it so jammed up ahead? The road was clear a minute ago.

anna 我看看手机上的路况……前面有两辆车发生了碰撞。
wǒ kàn kan shǒujī shàng de lùkuàng qiánmiàn yǒu liǎng liàng chē fāshēng le pèngzhuàng · Let me check the traffic on my phone... two cars have collided ahead.

ms zhang 难怪。这个时间不是高峰，平时很少堵车。
nán guài zhège shíjiān bú shì gāofēng píngshí hěn shǎo dǔchē · That explains it. It's not rush hour: there's hardly ever a jam at this time.

xiaoming 一辆货车把路堵住了，机动车都过不去。
yí liàng huòchē bǎ lù dǔ zhù le jīdòngchē dōu guò bu qù · A lorry is blocking the road, and no vehicles can get past.

anna 那摩托车呢？我看见有几辆摩托车从旁边穿过。
nà mótuōchē ne wǒ kànjiàn yǒu jǐ liàng mótuōchē cóng pángbiān chuānguò · What about motorbikes? I saw a few slipping through at the side.

ms zhang 警察在前面拦着，只让客车先走。
jǐngchá zài qiánmiàn lán zhe zhǐ ràng kèchē xiān zǒu · The police are stopping traffic up ahead and only letting coaches through.

xiaoming 我们拐弯，走另一条路吧。安娜，你帮我看看地图上的方位。
wǒmen guǎiwān zǒu lìng yì tiáo lù ba Ānnà nǐ bāng wǒ kàn kan dìtú shàng de fāngwèi · Let's turn off and take another road. Anna, can you check where we are on the map?

anna 好。不过开慢一点嘛，我有点晕车。
hǎo búguò kāi màn yìdiǎn ma wǒ yǒudiǎn yùnchē · OK. But drive a bit slower, will you? I'm feeling carsick.

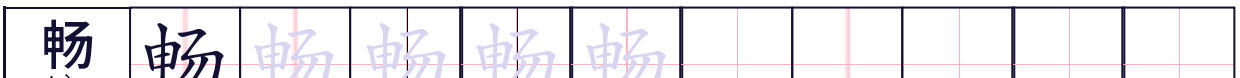
ms zhang 别着急，路程还很长，我们轮着开吧。
bié zháojí lùchéng hái hěn cháng wǒmen lún zhe kāi ba · No rush: we've still got a long way to go. Let's take turns driving.

xiaoming 哎，车好像有点不对，是不是哪个轮子没气了？
āi chē hǎoxiàng yǒudiǎn bú duì shì bu shì nǎge lúnzi méi qì le · Hey, something feels wrong with the car. Has one of the tyres gone flat?

write it trace the grey, then write your own



畅 chàng — smooth, unimpeded



托 tuō — to support



拐 guǎi — to turn (a corner)



拦
lán
to stop, block; hail (a taxi)

good to know · 倒车 dǎochē is “to change buses or trains”; 倒车 dàochē, with a different tone, is “to reverse a car”. 乘 is the written word for taking transport (乘地铁, 乘飞机); in speech say 坐.

Traffic jams, detours, carsickness: you can now ride out any road trip in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 22 planning a trip

Plan a trip, from booking a guesthouse to arriving, and describe mess with 东一……，西一……

Travel is where Chinese opens up the whole country, and planning it together is half the fun.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
旅程	lǚchéng	journey, trip	祝你旅程愉快！ Have a good trip!
旅途	lǚtú	journey, (on) the way	旅途中我认识了很多新朋友。 I made lots of new friends on the way.
全程	quánchéng	the whole journey, the whole way	这次旅行全程有导游陪同。 A guide comes with us the whole way on this trip.
出游	chūyóu	to go on a trip	春天是出游的好季节。 Spring is a great season for trips.
观光	guānguāng	to go sightseeing	每年都有很多外国人来北京观光。 Every year lots of foreigners come to Beijing to see the sights.
观赏	guānshǎng	to view and enjoy, admire	很多人特地来这里观赏日出。 Many people come here specially to watch the sunrise.
游人	yóurén	tourists, visitors	周末公园里的游人特别多。 The park is full of visitors at the weekend.
人山人海	rénshānrénhǎi	huge crowds	国庆节的时候，长城上人山人海。 At National Day there are huge crowds on the Great Wall.
风光	fēngguāng	scenery, view	这里的自然风光非常美。 The natural scenery here is beautiful.
景观	jǐngguān	landscape, sight	这座桥是这座城市最有名的景观。 This bridge is the most famous sight in the city.
名胜	míngshèng	famous scenic spot	这座城市有很多名胜。 This city has lots of famous sights.
闻名	wénmíng	famous, well-known	这里的小吃闻名全国。 The snacks here are famous all over the country.
迷人	mírén	charming, enchanting	晚上的湖边风景很迷人。 The lake is enchanting at night.
塔	tǎ	tower, pagoda	山上有一座古老的塔。 There's an ancient pagoda on the hill.
民宿	mínsù	guesthouse, B&B	我们在网上预定了一家{=(measure word)}民宿。 We booked a guesthouse online.
预定	yùdìng	to book, reserve	我已经预定了明天的火车票。 I've already booked tomorrow's train tickets.

陪同	péitóng	to accompany (formal)	王老师陪同学生们参观了博物馆。 Teacher Wang took the students round the museum.
携带	xiédài	to carry, take along	请随身携带护照。 Please keep your passport with you.
落地	luòdì	to land; fall to the ground	飞机已经安全落地了。 The plane has landed safely.
抵达	dǐdá	to arrive, reach (formal)	我们将在下午三点抵达北京。 We will arrive in Beijing at 3 p.m.
接连	jiēlián	in a row, one after another	这几天接连下了好几场雨。 It has rained several days in a row.
一道	yīdào	together	我们一道去吧。 Let's go together.
为期	wéiqī	lasting (a period)	这次为期三天的旅行非常愉快。 This three-day trip was really enjoyable.
成千上万	chéngqiānshàngwàn	thousands and thousands	每年都有成千上万的游人来这里。 Thousands of visitors come here every year.

pattern 东一……，西一……: scattered all over

东一 | measure word + noun | ，西一 | the same again

东一……，西一…… repeats a measure word (or a verb) to say things are scattered all over, in no order: 衣服东一件，西一件 "clothes everywhere". 东一句，西一句 is talking in bits and pieces.

地上东一个箱子，西一个包，乱得很。 **dì shàng dōng yí gè xiāngzi xī yí gè bāo luàn de hěn** There are cases and bags all over the floor: what a mess.

他东一句，西一句，我也没听明白。 **tā dōng yí jù xī yí jù wǒ yě méi tīng míngbai** He kept jumping from one thing to another, and I didn't follow.

公园里的游人东一群，西一群，都在拍照。 **gōngyuán lǐ de yóurén dōng yì qún xī yì qún dōu zài pāizhào** Groups of visitors all over the park are taking photos.

dialogue planning the family holiday

little sister 下个月放假，我们全家一道出游吧！
xià gè yuè fàngjià wǒmen quán jiā yídào chūyóu ba · We're off next month: let's all go on a trip together!

ms zhang 好啊。我想去南方看看，那边的风光很迷人。
hǎo a wǒ xiǎng qù nánfāng kàn kan nàbiān de fēngguāng hěn mírén · Good idea. I'd like to see the south: the scenery there is lovely.

xiaoming 有一个海边小城，以一座古塔闻名，周边还有很多名胜。
yǒu yí gè hǎi biān xiǎo chéng yǐ yí zuò gǔ tǎ wénmíng zhōubiān hái yǒu hěn duō míngshèng · There's a little seaside town famous for its old pagoda, with lots of sights nearby.

anna 我也想一起去观光！
wǒ yě xiǎng yìqǐ qù guānguāng · I'd love to come sightseeing too!

little sister 我已经在网上看了几家民宿，有一家能观赏海上的日出。
wǒ yǐjīng zài wǎngshang kàn le jǐ jiā mínsù yǒu yì jiā néng guānshǎng hǎi shàng de rì chū · I've already looked at a few guesthouses online. From one of them you can watch the sunrise over the sea.

ms zhang 现在去会不会人山人海?
xiànzài qù huì bu huì rénshān rénhǎi · Won't it be packed with people?

xiaoming 不会，我们不在节日去，游人不会太多。
bú huì wǒmen bú zài jiérì qù yóurén bú huì tài duō · No, we won't go on a holiday weekend, so there won't be too many visitors.

anna 那我们坐飞机还是坐火车?
nà wǒmen zuò fēijī háishi zuò huǒchē · So do we fly or take the train?

xiaoming 坐飞机，两个小时就落地了。落地以后再坐车，全程大概四个小时。
zuò fēijī liǎng gè xiǎoshí jiù luòdì le luòdì yǐhòu zài zuò chē quánchéng dàgài sì gè xiǎoshí · Fly: we land in two hours. Then a drive, so about four hours door to door.

little sister 太好了！行李别带太多，东一个包，西一个箱子，太麻烦了。
tài hǎo le xíngli bié dài tài duō dōng yí gè bāo xī yí gè xiāngzi tài máfan le · Great! Don't bring too much luggage: bags and cases everywhere are such a pain.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

抵
dǐ
to reach

塔
tǎ
tower, pagoda

good to know · 民宿 are small family-run guesthouses, very popular in China's villages and old towns, often with home cooking. 人山人海 ("mountains and seas of people") is the go-to phrase for holiday crowds.

You can now plan a whole trip in Chinese, from booking to touchdown.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 23 crossing borders

Get through the airport and the border, and talk about ports and ships. Review 除非……才……, 大都 and 一同.

Crossing a border in Chinese means understanding every sign and question at check-in, security and passport control.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
出境	chūjìng	to leave the country	出境的时候要检查护照。 Passports are checked when you leave the country.
入境	rùjìng	to enter a country	外国人入境需要签证。 Foreigners need a visa to enter the country.
出示	chūshì	to show, present (a document)	请出示您的护照。 Please show your passport.
免税	miǎnshuì	tax-free, duty-free	机场有很多免税店。 There are lots of duty-free shops at the airport.
退税	tuìshuì	tax refund	外国游客买东西可以退税。 Foreign visitors can get a tax refund on their shopping.
托运	tuōyùn	to check in (luggage); to ship	这个箱子太大了，需要托运。 This case is too big: it needs to be checked in.
港口	gǎngkǒu	port, harbour	这座城市有一个很大的港口。 This city has a very big port.
码头	mǎtóu	dock, pier	我们在码头等船。 We're waiting for the boat at the pier.
船只	chuánzhī	ships, vessels	港口里停着很多船只。 There are lots of ships in the harbour.
轮船	lúnchuán	steamship, ship	我们坐轮船去旅行。 We're travelling by ship.
艘	sōu	(measure) for ships	海上有一艘大船。 There's a big ship at sea.
渡	dù	to cross (water)	以前人们只{zhi3}能坐小船渡河。 In the past people could only cross the river in small boats.
运送	yùnsòng	to transport, ship	这些货物要用船运送到国外。 These goods are going abroad by sea.
跟随	gēnsuí	to follow	请跟随导游上船。 Please follow the guide onto the boat.
跟前	gēnqián	in front of, close by	他走到我跟前，问我去哪儿。 He came up to me and asked where I was going.
相连	xiānglián	to be linked, connected	这两个城市由一座大桥相连。 The two cities are linked by a big bridge.

延伸	yánshēn	to extend, stretch	这条路一直延伸到海边。 This road runs all the way to the sea.
截至	jiézhì	up to (a date), as of	截至昨天，已经有一千人报名了。 As of yesterday, a thousand people had signed up.
间隔	jiàngé	interval, gap	地铁每间隔五分钟来一班。 There's an underground train every five minutes.
往年	wǎngnián	previous years	今年的游客比往年多。 There are more visitors this year than in previous years.
历年	lìnián	over the years	这些是历年考试的题目。 These are exam questions from past years.
常年	chángnián	all year round	这座山上常年有雪。 There's snow on this mountain all year round.
一律	yīlǜ	all, without exception	所有行李一律要检查。 All luggage must be checked, without exception.
近来	jìnlái	recently, lately	近来天气一直很好。 The weather has been lovely lately.

pattern review: 除非……，才…… at the border

除非 | the one condition | ，(subject) 才 | what is allowed

Back from day 4: 除非 names the one condition, and 才 means "only then". Border rules love it: 除非有签证，才能入境 "you can only enter with a visa". Today's texts also bring back 大都 and 一同 from day 18.

除非出示护照，才能登机。 **chúfēi chūshì hùzhào cái néng dēngjī** You can only board if you show your passport.

除非买够五百块，才能退税。 **chúfēi mǎi gòu wǔbǎi kuài cái néng tuìshuì** You only get a tax refund if you spend five hundred or more.

除非行李太大，才需要托运。 **chúfēi xíngli tài dà cái xūyào tuōyùn** You only need to check in your luggage if it's too big.

除非天气好，船只才能渡海。 **chúfēi tiānqì hǎo chuánzhī cái néng dù hǎi** Boats can only cross the sea if the weather is good.

dialogue a first trip abroad

little sister 安娜，这是我第一次出境，好紧张啊！
Ānnà zhè shì wǒ dì yī cì chūjìng hǎo jǐnzhāng a · Anna, this is my first time leaving the country. I'm so nervous!

anna 别担心，跟着我就行了。我们先去托运行李。
bié dānxīn gēn zhe wǒ jiù xíng le wǒmen xiān qù tuōyùn xíngli · Don't worry, just follow me. First let's check in our bags.

little sister 我的箱子会不会太重？
wǒ de xiāngzi huì bu huì tài zhòng · Is my case too heavy?

anna 不会。除非超过二十三公斤，才需要另外付钱。
bú huì chúfēi chāoguò èrshísān gōngjīn cái xūyào lìngwài fù qián · No. You only pay extra if it's over twenty-three kilos.

little sister 过安检的时候要出示什么？
guò ānjiǎn de shíhou yào chūshì shénme · What do I have to show at security?

anna 护照和机票。还有，水一律不能带上飞机。
hùzhào hé jīpiào hái yǒu shuǐ yílǜ bù néng dài shàng fēijī · Your passport and ticket. And no water on the plane, no exceptions.

little sister 那我们出境以后，能去免税店看看吗？
nà wǒmen chūjìng yǐhòu néng qù miǎnshuì diàn kàn kan ma · After passport control, can we have a look at the duty-free shop?

anna 当然可以，我们一同去。不过近来很多东西在网上买更便宜。
dāngrán kěyǐ wǒmen yìtóng qù búguò jìnlái hěn duō dōngxi zài wǎngshang mǎi gèng piányi · Of course, we'll go together. Mind you, lately a lot of things are cheaper online.

little sister 到了英国，买东西还能退税吗？
dào le Yīngguó mǎi dōngxi hái néng tuìshuì ma · And in the UK, can we get tax back on shopping?

anna 外国游客大都可以退税，记得保管好发票。
wàiguó yóukè dàdū kěyǐ tuìshuì jìde bǎoguǎn hǎo fāpiào · Most foreign visitors can, yes. Remember to keep your receipts safe.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

港
gǎng
harbour

艘
sōu
(measure) for ships

good to know · 出境 and 入境 are on every airport sign in China: 出境 departures (international), 入境 arrivals. 截至 + date is the standard way news reports say "as of": 截至今年六月 "as of June this year". 轮船 is one ship, a steamer (坐轮船去大连); 船只 is the collective "ships, vessels" of notices and news (港口的船只), so it rarely takes a number.

Check-in, security, passport control: you can now cross a border entirely in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 24 mission: the family trip

Follow a whole family trip in Chinese: packing, the flight and the road, the ferry, a relative's guesthouse and an old hometown.

Missions put the whole unit to work in one story: family, home, town, road and travel.

chapter 1 packing

ms zhang 明天早上六点出发，洗漱完就走。大家的行李都收拾好了吗?
míngtiān zǎoshang liù diǎn chūfā xǐshù wán jiù zǒu dàjiā de xíngli dōu shōushi hǎo le ma · We leave at six tomorrow morning, as soon as we've washed. Has everyone packed?

little sister 还没有……我的衣服东一件，西一件，到处都是。
hái méiyǒu wǒ de yīfu dōng yí jiàn xī yí jiàn dàochù dōu shì · Not yet... my clothes are scattered all over the place.

xiaoming 人家安娜早就收拾好了，你看看人家!
rénjia Ānnà zǎo jiù shōushi hǎo le nǐ kàn kan rénjia · Anna packed ages ago: look at her!

little sister 知道啦！我的枕头可以带吗?
zhīdào la wǒ de zhěntou kěyǐ dài ma · All right! Can I bring my pillow?

ms zhang 得了，民宿里什么都有。冰箱我已经清理过了，洗的衣服也晾干了。
déle mínsù lǐ shénme dōu yǒu bīngxiāng wǒ yǐjīng qīnglǐ guo le xǐ de yīfu yě liàng gān le · Oh, come on: the guesthouse has everything. I've cleared out the fridge, and the washing is dry.

dr li 走之前把暖气关了，热水器的开关也别忘了。
zǒu zhīqián bǎ nuǎnqì guān le rèshuǐqì de kāiguān yě bié wàng le · Before we go, turn off the heating, and don't forget the switch on the water heater.

xiaoming 大白怎么办？它净在门口转来转去。
Dàbái zěnme bàn tā jìng zài ménkǒu zhuàn lái zhuàn qù · What about Dabai? He keeps pacing around by the door.

ms zhang 隔壁的老太太会照顾它，她一向喜欢狗。
gébì de lǎotàitai huì zhàogù tā tā yíxiàng xǐhuan gǒu · The old lady next door will look after him: she's always loved dogs.

little sister 奶奶不跟我们一同去吗?
nǎinai bù gēn wǒmen yìtóng qù ma · Isn't Grandma coming with us?

dr li 她岁数大了，不想走远路。不过她给小明做了一包点心，让他路上吃。
tā suìshu dà le bù xiǎng zǒu yuǎn lù búguò tā gěi Xiǎomíng zuò le yì bāo diǎnxin ràng tā lùshang chī · She's getting on and doesn't want to travel far. But she's made Xiaoming a bag of snacks for the journey.

little sister 又是小明！奶奶最疼孙子了。
yòu shì Xiǎomíng nǎinai zuì téng sūnzi le · Xiaoming again! Grandma dotes on her grandson the most.

chapter 2 landing and the road

anna 飞机落地了！我们为期五天的旅程正式开始！
fēijī luòdì le wǒmen wéiqī wǔ tiān de lǚchéng zhèngshì kāishǐ · We've landed! Our five-day trip has officially begun!

little sister 哎呀，我托运的箱子掉了一个轮子！
āiyā wǒ tuōyùn de xiāngzi diào le yí gè lúnzi · Oh no, my checked suitcase has lost a wheel!

xiaoming 早不坏，晚不坏，一下飞机就坏了。
zǎo bú huài wǎn bú huài yí xià fēijī jiù huài le · Of all the times to break: the moment we get off the plane.

dr li 没事，我帮你提。大家随身携带的东西都拿好了吗？
méishì wǒ bāng nǐ tí dàjiā suíshēn xiédài de dōngxi dōu ná hǎo le ma · Never mind, I'll carry it. Has everyone got the things they brought with them?

ms zhang 我预定的车就在停车场。路上我们轮流开。
wǒ yùdìng de chē jiù zài tíngchēchǎng lùshang wǒmen lúnliú kāi · The car I booked is in the car park. We'll take turns driving on the way.

anna 我看看路况……前面有一辆货车和一辆摩托车发生了碰撞。
wǒ kàn kan lùkuàng qiánmiàn yǒu yí liàng huòchē hé yí liàng mótuōchē fāshēng le pèngzhuàng · Let me check the traffic… a lorry and a motorbike have collided up ahead.

xiaoming 难怪这么拥挤。那条路封闭了，机动车都过不去。
nánguài zhème yōngjǐ nà tiáo lù fēngbì le jīdòngchē dōu guò bu qù · No wonder it's so crowded. That road is closed: no vehicles can get through.

ms zhang 那我们在前面路口拐弯，走另一条路。安娜，你帮我看看方位。
nà wǒmen zài qiánmiàn lùkǒu guǎiwān zǒu lìng yì tiáo lù Ānnà nǐ bāng wǒ kàn kan fāngwèi · Then we'll turn at the next junction and take another road. Anna, help me keep track of where we are.

dr li 刚才一场雨把路面弄湿了，慢点开。
gāngcái yì chǎng yǔ bǎ lùmiàn nòng shī le màn diǎn kāi · That shower just now has made the road wet: drive a bit slower.

little sister 前面那辆客车老是刹车，我有点晕车。
qiánmiàn nà liàng kèchē lǎoshì shāchē wǒ yǒudiǎn yùnchē · The coach in front keeps braking: I feel a bit carsick.

anna 拐过去路就畅通了，还没到高峰呢。你们看，郊外遍地都是花！
guǎi guoqu lù jiù chàngtōng le hái méi dào gāofēng ne nǐmen kàn jiāowài biàndì dōu shì huā · Once we're round the corner the road is clear: it isn't rush hour yet. Look, there are flowers everywhere out here!

ms zhang 路程不远，穿过两个小镇就到港口了。
lùchéng bù yuǎn chuānguò liǎng gè xiǎo zhèn jiù dào gǎngkǒu le · It's not far: through two little towns and we're at the port.

chapter 3 the ferry

anna 哇，码头上停着这么多船只！
wā mǎtóu shàng tíng zhe zhème duō chuánzhī · Wow, look at all the boats at the pier!

xiaoming 我们坐的是那艘白色的轮船，每隔半个小时开一班。
wǒmen zuò de shì nà sōu báisè de lúnchuán měi gé bàn gè xiǎoshí kāi yì bān · Ours is that white ship. One leaves every half hour.

xiaoming 我们的车也能开上去。这艘船常年来回渡海，一次能运送一百多辆车。
wǒmen de chē yě néng kāi shangqu zhè sōu chuán chángnián láihuí dù hǎi yí cì néng yùnsòng yìbǎi duō liàng chē · Our car can go on too. The ship crosses back and forth all year round and carries over a hundred cars each time.

ms zhang 上船要出示船票，大家跟着我。
shàng chuán yào chūshì chuán piào dàjiā gēn zhe wǒ · You have to show your ticket to board. Follow me, everyone.

anna 牌子上写着：“乘客请有序上船，车辆一律停在下层。”
páizi shàng xiě zhe chéngkè qǐng yǒuxù shàng chuán chēliàng yílǜ tíng zài xiàcéng · The sign says: “Passengers please board in an orderly way. All vehicles park on the lower deck.”

dr li 往年这个时候游人很多，今年人少一点，正好。
wǎngnián zhège shíhou yóurén hěn duō jīnnián rén shǎo yìdiǎn zhènghǎo · Other years it’s crowded at this time; this year it’s quieter. Just right.

little sister 你们看，大海一直延伸到远方，风光真迷人！
nǐmen kàn dà hǎi yìzhí yánshēn dào yuǎnfāng fēngguāng zhēn mírén · Look, the sea stretches all the way to the horizon. It’s gorgeous!

anna 一只鸟飞到我跟前来了，它都不怕人！
yì zhī niǎo fēi dào wǒ gēnqián lái le tā dōu bú pà rén · A bird has flown right up to me: it isn’t even afraid of people!

xiaoming 听说以后两边会由一座大桥相连。
tīngshuō yǐhòu liǎng biān huì yóu yí zuò dà qiáo xiānglián · I hear the two sides will be linked by a big bridge one day.

dr li 近来接连下了好几场雨，今天终于晴了。
jìnlái jiēlián xià le hǎojǐ chǎng yǔ jīntiān zhōngyú qíng le · It’s rained several times in a row lately: today it’s finally sunny.

little sister 明天早上我们一道去海边观赏日出吧！
míngtiān zǎoshang wǒmen yídào qù hǎi biān guānshǎng rìchū ba · Let’s all go to the beach together tomorrow morning and watch the sunrise!

chapter 4 the guesthouse

dr li 我姐姐在这儿开了一家民宿，我们这几天都住她这儿。
wǒ jiějie zài zhèr kāi le yì jiā mínsù wǒmen zhè jǐ tiān dōu zhù tā zhèr · My sister runs a guesthouse here: we're staying with her for a few days.

xiaoming 姑姑的民宿布置得真漂亮，房间又明亮又通风。
gūgu de mínsù bùzhì de zhēn piàoliang fángjiān yòu míngliàng yòu tōngfēng · Auntie's guesthouse is beautifully done: the rooms are bright and airy.

anna 透过窗户就能看到大海！角落里摆放的老家具也很有特色。
tòuguò chuānghu jiù néng kàn dào dà hǎi jiǎoluò lǐ bǎifàng de lǎo jiājù yě hěn yǒu tèsè · You can see the sea through the window! And the old furniture in the corner has real character.

little sister 这栋房子是姑姑自己改造的，墙壁都是用老砖建的，特别坚固。
zhè dòng fángzi shì gūgu zìjǐ gǎizào de qiángbì dōu shì yòng lǎo zhuān jiàn de tèbié jiāngù · Auntie renovated this house herself. The walls are all old brick: really solid.

ms zhang 姑姑留了一张卡片：“浴室在走廊右边，自来水不能直接喝。”
gūgu liú le yì zhāng kǎpiàn yùshì zài zǒuláng yòubian zìláishuǐ bù néng zhíjiē hē · Auntie has left a card: “The bathroom is on the right of the corridor. Don't drink the tap water.”

anna 还有：“插座在床边，照明开关在门口，电饭锅可以随便用。”
hái yǒu chāzuò zài chuáng biān zhàomíng kāiguān zài ménkǒu diànfànguō kěyǐ suíbiàn yòng · And: “The sockets are by the bed, the light switch is by the door, and you're welcome to use the rice cooker.”

little sister 床都铺好了，房间也清扫得很干净，连灰尘都没有。
chuáng dōu pū hǎo le fángjiān yě qīngsǎo de hěn gānjìng lián huīchén dōu méiyǒu · The beds are all made, and the rooms are swept spotless: not even any dust.

anna 隔壁房间好像有个小娃娃，不时能听见他在笑。
gébì fángjiān hǎoxiàng yǒu gè xiǎo wáwa bùshí néng tīngjiàn tā zài xiào · There seems to be a little one in the room next door: you can hear him laughing now and then.

dr li 对了，我外甥上个月订婚了，明天他要来见见长辈。
duì le wǒ wàisheng shàng gè yuè dìnghūn le míngtiān tā yào lái jiàn jian zhǎngbèi · Oh, by the way, my nephew got engaged last month. He's coming tomorrow to see the older generation.

ms zhang 就是在塔下求婚的那个吧？听说众人都给他们鼓掌了。
jiùshì zài tǎ xià qiúhūn de nàge ba tīngshuō zhòngrén dōu gěi tāmen gǔzhǎng le · The one who proposed under the pagoda? I heard everyone there clapped for them.

xiaoming 妹妹，你什么时候嫁人啊？
mèimei nǐ shénme shíhou jià rén a · So, little sister, when are you getting married?

little sister 人家还在上大学呢！你自己先娶个媳妇吧。
rénjia hái zài shàng dàxué ne nǐ zìjǐ xiān qǔ gè xífu ba · I'm still at university! You go and find yourself a wife first.

chapter 5 dad's hometown

dr li 这就是我的老家。二十年过去了，这条老街依旧那么热闹。
zhè jiùshì wǒ de lǎojiā èrshí nián guòqù le zhè tiáo lǎo jiē yījiù nàme rènao · This is my hometown. Twenty years on, this old street is as lively as ever.

anna 街头处处是卖小吃的，人行道上也挤满了人。
jiētóu chùchù shì mài xiǎochī de rénxíngdào shàng yě jǐ mǎn le rén · There are snack stalls all along the street, and the pavements are packed with people.

dr li 我就在这一带长大，亲属大都还住在周边的村庄里。
wǒ jiù zài zhè yídài zhǎng dà qīnshǔ dàdū hái zhù zài zhōubiān de cūnzhuāng lǐ · I grew up around here. Most of my relatives still live in the villages nearby.

xiaoming 你们看，那口老井仍旧有人在用！
nǐmen kàn nà kǒu lǎo jǐng réngjiù yǒu rén zài yòng · Look, people are still using that old well!

dr li 以前没有自来水，家家户户都来这儿打水。
yǐqián méiyǒu zìláishuǐ jiājiāhùhù dōu lái zhèr dǎ shuǐ · Before there was tap water, every household came here to fetch water.

anna 那座塔就是这里最有名的名胜吧？
nà zuò tǎ jiùshì zhèlǐ zuì yǒumíng de míngshèng ba · That pagoda must be the most famous sight here?

dr li 对，这座古塔闻名全国，每年有成千上万的游人来观光。
duì zhè zuò gǔ tǎ wénmíng quán guó měi nián yǒu chéngqiān shàngwàn de yóurén lái guānguāng · Yes, the old pagoda is famous all over China. Thousands and thousands of visitors come to see it every year.

xiaoming 今天真是人山人海！我一时都找不到妹妹了。
jīntiān zhēn shì rénshān rénhǎi wǒ yìshí dōu zhǎo bu dào mèimei le · It's packed today! For a moment I couldn't even find my sister.

little sister 我在塔上！这里的景观太美了，整个城镇都看得见。
wǒ zài tǎ shàng zhèlǐ de jǐngguān tài měi le zhěnggè chéngzhèn dōu kàn de jiàn · I'm up the pagoda! The view is amazing: you can see the whole town.

dr li 那边的老房子都拆除了，空地上要建新的住宅。
nàbiān de lǎo fángzi dōu chāichú le kòngdì shàng yào jiàn xīn de zhùzhái · The old houses over there have all been pulled down, and new homes are going to be built on the empty land.

anna 这里的房价比大都市便宜多了吧？
zhèlǐ de fángjià bǐ dà dūshì piányi duō le ba · Housing must be much cheaper here than in the big cities?

dr li 那当然。我退休以后，也想回这儿养老，这里才是我的家园。
nà dāngrán wǒ tuìxiū yǐhòu yě xiǎng huí zhèr yǎnglǎo zhèlǐ cái shì wǒ de jiāyuán · Of course. When I retire I'd like to come back here to live out my days: this is where home really is.

ms zhang 一家人一同出游，真好。
yì jiā rén yìtóng chūyóu zhēn hǎo · It's so nice to travel together as a family.

dr li 对。这样的日子，我想过一辈子。
duì zhèyàng de rìzi wǒ xiǎng guò yíbèizi · Yes. I could live like this for the rest of my life.

Unit 3 is done: family, home, town, road and border. You can now take the whole family on holiday in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 25 how do you feel?

Say how you really feel, from anxious and gloomy to relieved, with the little adverbs that carry the mood.

Feelings are where small words do big work: 明明, 总算 and 干脆 tell people how you feel about what happened.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
恰好	qiàhǎo	just, as it happens	你来得恰好，我们正要吃饭。 You've come at just the right time: we're about to eat.
倒是	dàoshì	actually, though	这家{=(measure word)}店不大，菜倒是挺好吃的。 The place isn't big, but the food is actually pretty good.
干脆	gāncuì	just, simply; clear-cut	太晚了，我们干脆打车回家吧。 It's too late. Let's just take a taxi home.
明明	míngmíng	clearly, obviously (but…)	他明明很难过，却说自己没事。 He's clearly upset, but he says he's fine.
总算	zǒngsuàn	at long last, finally	下了一个星期的雨，今天总算晴了。 After a week of rain, it's finally sunny today.
悲伤	bēishāng	sad, grief-stricken	听到这个消息，她非常悲伤。 She was heartbroken when she heard the news.
悲观	bēiguān	pessimistic	别太悲观，事情没有你想的那么糟糕。 Don't be so pessimistic: things aren't as bad as you think.
欢乐	huānlè	joyful, happy	节日里到处都是欢乐的笑声。 During the holiday there's happy laughter everywhere.
痛快	tòngkuài	to your heart's content; frank	考完试，我们痛快地玩了一天。 After the exam we had a whole day of fun.
惊讶	jīngyà	surprised, amazed	听说他辞职了，大家都很惊讶。 Everyone was surprised to hear he'd quit.
大吃一惊	dàchīyījīng	to be taken aback	看到房间里那么多人，她大吃一惊。 She was taken aback to see so many people in the room.
吓	xià	to scare, frighten	你突然站{zhan4-3}在我后面，吓了我一跳！ You suddenly standing behind me made me jump!
恐惧	kǒngjù	fear, dread	他从小就对水有一种恐惧。 He's been afraid of water since he was little.
愤怒	fènnù	angry, furious	听到这样的回答，顾客非常愤怒。 The customer was furious at an answer like that.
焦虑	jiāolǜ	anxious	考试前，很多学生都会感到焦虑。 Lots of students feel anxious before exams.

不安	bùān	uneasy, worried	他一直没回消息，我心里|有点{==a bit, rather}不安。 He still hasn't replied, and I feel a bit uneasy.
担忧	dānyōu	to worry, be concerned	父母总是担忧孩子的健康。 Parents always worry about their children's health.
发愁	fāchóu	to fret, worry	他正在为房租发愁。 He's worrying about the rent.
愁	chóu	to worry	别愁了，办法总会有的。 Stop worrying: there's always a way.
灰心	huīxīn	discouraged, disheartened	失败一次没关系，别灰心。 One failure doesn't matter. Don't lose heart.
绝望	juéwàng	to despair	就算遇到再大的困难，也不要绝望。 However hard things get, don't give up hope.
沉重	chénzhòng	heavy (heart, burden)	听医生说完以后，他的心情很沉重。 His heart was heavy after the doctor had spoken.
单调	dāndiào	monotonous, dull	每天都做同样的事，生活|有点{==a bit, rather}单调。 Doing the same thing every day makes life a bit dull.
极为	jíwéi	extremely (written)	这个问题极为重要。 This issue is extremely important.

pattern mood adverbs: 明明, 总算, 干脆, 恰好, 倒是

who | 明明 / 总算 / 干脆 | what happens

These adverbs go before the verb and show how you feel about the facts. 明明 "clearly (but…)" complains that reality doesn't match; 总算 "at last" sighs with relief; 干脆 "just" makes a quick decision; 恰好 "as it happens" marks good timing; 倒是 "actually" turns against what you expected.

我明明把钥匙放在桌子上了，怎么不见了？ **wǒ míngmíng bǎ yàoshi fàng zài zhuōzi shàng le zěnme bújiàn le** I definitely put my keys on the table, so where have they gone?

你来得恰好，我正想给你打电话。 **nǐ lái de qiàhǎo wǒ zhèng xiǎng gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà** Perfect timing: I was just about to ring you.

这部电影很欢乐，最后倒是有点悲伤。 **zhè bù diànyǐng hěn huānlè zuìhòu dàoshì yǒudiǎn bēishāng** The film is mostly joyful, but the end is actually rather sad.

下雨了，干脆在家看电影吧。 **xià yǔ le gāncuì zài jiā kàn diànyǐng ba** It's raining. Let's just watch a film at home.

dialogue anna can't sleep

anna 小明，我这几天特别焦虑，晚上一直睡不着。
Xiǎomíng wǒ zhè jǐ tiān tèbié jiāolǜ wǎnshang yìzhí shuì bu zháo · Xiaoming, I've been so anxious these last few days. I can't sleep at night.

xiaoming 怎么了？你一向很乐观，看到你这么发愁，我有点惊讶。
zěnme le nǐ yíxiàng hěn lèguān kàn dào nǐ zhème fāchóu wǒ yǒudiǎn jīngyà · What's up? You're always so positive. I'm surprised to see you this worried.

anna 下周要跟客户开会，我总担忧自己准备得不够好。
xià zhōu yào gēn kèhù kāihuì wǒ zǒng dānyōu zìjǐ zhǔnbèi de búgòu hǎo · I've got a client meeting next week, and I keep worrying I'm not prepared enough.

xiaoming 你明明准备了一个月，还担心什么？
nǐ míngmíng zhǔnbèi le yí gè yuè hái dānxīn shénme · You've been preparing for a whole month. What are you worried about?

anna 我也知道，可心里就是不安。一想到要用中文讲，我就有点恐惧。
wǒ yě zhīdào kě xīnlǐ jiùshì bùān yì xiǎng dào yào yòng Zhōngwén jiǎng wǒ jiù yǒudiǎn kǒngjù · I know, but I still feel uneasy. Just thinking about presenting in Chinese scares me a bit.

xiaoming 别说得这么沉重，又不是什么让人绝望的事。
bié shuō de zhème chénzhòng yòu bú shì shénme ràng rén juéwàng de shì · Don't make it sound so heavy. It's hardly the end of the world.

xiaoming 除非你自己放弃，否则谁也拦不住你。
chúfēi nǐ zìjǐ fàngqì fǒuzé shéi yě lán bu zhù nǐ · Unless you give up yourself, nobody can stop you.

anna 被你这么一说，我心里倒是轻松多了。
bèi nǐ zhème yì shuō wǒ xīnlǐ dàoshì qīngsōng duō le · Now that you put it like that, I actually feel a lot better.

xiaoming 那干脆今天别想工作了，我们痛快地吃一顿！
nà gāncuì jīntiān bié xiǎng gōngzuò le wǒmen tòngkuài de chī yí dùn · Then let's forget about work tonight and have a proper feast!

anna 好啊，我恰好也饿了。
hǎo a wǒ qiàhǎo yě è le · Sounds good. As it happens, I'm starving.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

悲
bēi
grief

讶
yà
surprised

吓
xià
to scare, frighten



忧
yōu
worry

good to know · 明明 almost always comes with a “but”: 他明明知道，却不说. If there’s no contrast, use 当然 or 很明显 instead. 干脆 also describes people: 他说话很干脆 “he gets straight to the point”. 倒 dào on its own is also an adverb of contrast: 你说得倒容易 “easy for you to say”, 东西不贵，味道倒不错 “it’s cheap, but actually tasty”.

Now you can tell a friend exactly how you feel, and hear the relief in 总算 when it’s over.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 26 missing someone

Talk about missing people and places, the years gone by and the wishes you carry.

Homesickness, nostalgia and hope come up in every real friendship, and in every Chinese song and film.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
孤独	gūdú	lonely, solitary	刚到国外的时候，我常常觉得很孤独。 When I first moved abroad, I often felt lonely.
寂寞	jìmò	lonely, lonesome	孩子们都搬走以后，老人觉得{==有点{==a bit, rather}寂寞。 After the children all moved out, the old man felt a bit lonely.
思念	sīniàn	to miss, long for	每到过节，她就特别思念家人。 Every holiday she misses her family terribly.
怀念	huáiniàn	to look back fondly on	我很怀念上大学的那几年。 I really miss my university years.
怀	huái	arms, bosom; to keep in mind	孩子在妈妈怀里睡着{zhao2}了。 The child fell asleep in his mother's arms.
心爱	xīnài	beloved, treasured	这是我最心爱的一本书。 This is my most treasured book.
心疼	xīnténg	to feel for; to hate to see	看到孩子这么累，妈妈很心疼。 It hurt Mum to see her child so tired.
心底	xīndǐ	the bottom of one's heart	我从心底感谢你。 I thank you from the bottom of my heart.
心灵	xīnlíng	soul, inner self	音乐能给人的心灵带来安慰。 Music can bring comfort to the soul.
心目	xīnmù	mind, view (in 心目中)	在我心目中，她是最好的老师。 In my eyes, she's the best teacher there is.
心愿	xīnyuàn	wish, dream	带父母去旅行是我多年的心愿。 Taking my parents on a trip has been my wish for years.
向往	xiàngwǎng	to yearn for	很多年轻人向往大城市的生活。 Many young people dream of life in a big city.
渴望	kěwàng	to long for, crave	他渴望得到大家的理解。 He longs to be understood.
盼望	pànwàng	to look forward to	孩子们盼望着放暑假。 The children can't wait for the summer holidays.
期望	qīwàng	to expect; expectation	父母对他的期望很高。 His parents have high expectations of him.
欲望	yùwàng	desire	广告总是想让人产生购买的欲望。 Adverts always try to make you want to buy.
幻想	huànxiǎng	to dream, fantasise; fantasy	小时候，我常常幻想自己能飞。 As a child, I often dreamed I could fly.

时光	shíguāng	time, days (of one's life)	在北京的那段时光，我永远不会忘记。 I'll never forget that time in Beijing.
岁月	suìyuè	the years (passing)	岁月过得真快，孩子都上大学了。 The years fly by: the kids are already at university.
青春	qīngchūn	youth	青春只有一次，要好好珍惜。 You're only young once, so make the most of it.
委屈	wěiqu	wronged, hurt; to put upon	被老师误会了，他觉得很委屈。 He felt wronged when the teacher misunderstood him.
可怜	kělián	pitiful; to pity	这只小狗又冷又饿，真可怜。 This little dog is cold and hungry, poor thing.
白白	báibái	in vain, for nothing	他没来，我白白等了一个小时。 He didn't come: I waited an hour for nothing.
默默	mòmò	silently, quietly	她一直在背后默默地支持我。 She's always quietly supported me behind the scenes.

pattern 那倒（也）是: "that's true, i suppose"

someone's point | 那倒（也）是 | ，不过...

那倒是 or 那倒也是 agrees with someone, a little reluctantly: "fair point". It often comes before a 不过 or 可是 that keeps your own view. Spoken only.

"一个人住挺寂寞的吧？""那倒也是，不过很自由。" **yí gè rén zhù tǐng jìmò de ba nà dào yě shì búguò hěn zìyóu** "Living on your own must get lonely." "I suppose so, but it's very free."

"现在的广告总让人有购买的欲望。""那倒是，所以我很少看。" **xiànzài de guǎnggào zǒng ràng rén yǒu gòumǎi de yùwàng nà dàoshì suǒyǐ wǒ hěn shǎo kàn** "Ads always make you want to buy things." "True, which is why I hardly watch them."

"这么贵，买了也是白白浪费钱。""那倒也是，算了，不买了。" **zhème guì mǎi le yě shì báibái làngfèi qián nà dào yě shì suànle bù mǎi le** "It's so pricey, it'd just be wasted money." "Fair enough. Forget it, I won't buy it."

dialogue a birthday far from home

teacher wang 安娜，你怎么一个人默默地坐在这儿?
Ānnà nǐ zěnme yí gè rén mòmò de zuò zài zhèr · Anna, why are you sitting here all alone without a word?

anna 今天是我妈妈的生日，我特别思念家人。
jīntiān shì wǒ māma de shēngrì wǒ tèbié sīniàn jiārén · It's my mum's birthday today. I miss my family so much.

teacher wang 原来是这样。一个人在国外，难免会觉得寂寞。
yuánlái shì zhèyàng yí gè rén zài guó wài nánmiǎn huì juéde jìmò · I see. On your own abroad, it's natural to feel lonely.

anna 我本来盼望年底回英国，可公司早不忙晚不忙，就在年底最忙。
wǒ běnlái pànwàng niándǐ huí Yīngguó kě gōngsī zǎo bù máng wǎn bù máng jiù zài niándǐ zuì máng · I was hoping to go back to the UK at the end of the year, but of all times, that's when work is busiest.

teacher wang 那就跟家人视频吧。看到你，他们也会放心一些。
nà jiù gēn jiārén shìpín ba kàn dào nǐ tāmen yě huì fàngxīn yìxiē · Then video-call your family. Seeing you will put their minds at ease.

anna 我们刚视频完。我妈妈总是心疼我，说我太瘦了。
wǒmen gāng shìpín wán wǒ māma zǒngshì xīnténg wǒ shuō wǒ tài shòu le · We just did. Mum always fusses over me and says I'm too thin.

teacher wang 所有的父母都一样。在他们心目中，你永远是个孩子。
suǒyǒu de fùmǔ dōu yíyàng zài tāmen xīnmù zhōng nǐ yǒngyuǎn shì gè háizi · Parents are the same everywhere. In their eyes you'll always be a child.

anna 那倒也是。小时候我总渴望长大，现在倒是怀念那时候了。
nà dào yě shì xiǎoshíhou wǒ zǒng kěwàng zhǎng dà xiànzài dàoshì huáiniàn nà shíhou le · That's true. As a kid I longed to grow up, and now I miss those days.

anna 您看，这是我最心爱的一张照片，是我十岁生日拍的。
nín kàn zhè shì wǒ zuì xīnài de yì zhāng zhàopiàn shì wǒ shí suì shēngrì pāi de · Look, this is my favourite photo. It was taken on my tenth birthday.

teacher wang 照片里的你笑得真甜。你的心愿一定会实现的。走，我请你喝杯咖啡!
zhàopiàn lǐ de nǐ xiào de zhēn tián nǐ de xīnyuàn yídìng huì shíxiàn de zǒu wǒ qǐng nǐ hē bēi kāfēi · What a sweet smile. Your wish will come true one day. Come on, coffee's on me!

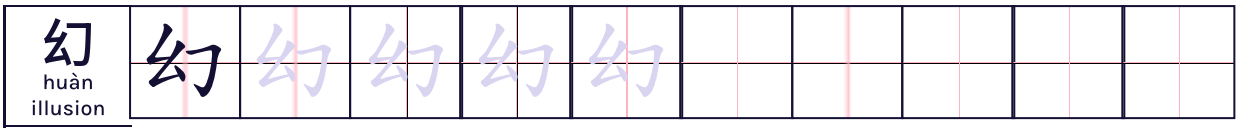
write it trace the grey, then write your own

愁
chóu
to worry

孤
gū
alone

盼
pàn
to long for





good to know · 想 is the everyday “miss”: 我想你. 思念 and 怀念 are deeper and more written: 思念 a person far away, 怀念 a time that has gone. 心目中 always comes as 在…心目中, “in someone’s eyes”. 宽 “wide” is also a verb, “to ease”: 宽心 or 宽宽心 “set your mind at ease”: 你宽宽心，别想太多了.

Now you can tell a friend that you miss home, and understand them when they miss theirs.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 27 what are they like?

Describe what people are like, inside and out, and tease a friend about how they're acting.

Describing people is half of all gossip, and the best way to show you really see someone.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
瞧	qiáo	to look, see (spoken)	你瞧，外面下雪了！ Look, it's snowing outside!
大方	dàfang	generous; natural, poised	他对朋友很大方，经常请大家吃饭。 He's generous with friends and often treats everyone to dinner.
小气	xiǎoqi	stingy; petty	别这么小气，借我用一下嘛。 Don't be so stingy. Let me borrow it for a bit!
老实	lǎoshi	honest; well-behaved	他是个老实人，从来不骗人。 He's an honest man who never lies to anyone.
谦虚	qiānxū	modest	她成绩那么好，还总是很谦虚。 Her grades are so good, and she's still always modest.
高尚	gāoshàng	noble	帮助别人是一种高尚的行为。 Helping others is a noble thing to do.
朴素	pǔsù	plain, simple	她穿得很朴素，但很有气质。 She dresses simply, but she has real presence.
平凡	píngfán	ordinary	他只是一个平凡的人，却做了不平凡的事。 He's just an ordinary man, but he did something extraordinary.
天真	tiānzhēn	innocent, naive	孩子天真的问题让大家都笑了。 The child's innocent question made everyone laugh.
单纯	dānchún	simple, pure; naive	她的想法很单纯，容易相信别人。 She sees things simply and trusts people easily.
淘气	táoqì	naughty, mischievous	我小时候特别淘气，常常让妈妈生气。 I was really naughty as a kid and often made my mum cross.
温和	wēnhé	mild, gentle	王老师说话总是很温和。 Teacher Wang always speaks gently.
温柔	wēnróu	gentle, tender	她对孩子说话特别温柔。 She speaks very tenderly to children.
气质	qìzhì	presence, bearing	这位老人很有气质。 This old gentleman has real presence.
外表	wàibiǎo	appearance, looks	不要只{zhi3}看一个|人的外表。 Don't judge people by their looks alone.
模样	múyàng	look, appearance	他长{zhang3}大了，模样越来越像他爸爸。 He's grown up and looks more and more like his dad.
头脑	tóunǎo	brains, mind	她很有头脑，什么问题都能解决。 She's got real brains: she can solve any problem.

眼光	yǎnguāng	eye, taste, judgement	这件衣服真好看，你眼光不错！ This top looks great: you've got good taste!
活跃	huóyuè	active, lively	他在课堂上很活跃，经常回答问题。 He's very active in class and often answers questions.
活力	huólì	energy, vitality	年轻人总是充满活力。 Young people are always full of energy.
有劲	yǒujìn	strong, energetic; fun	他七十岁了，走路还很有劲。 He's seventy and still walks with a spring in his step.
呆	dāi	blank, stunned; dull	听到这个消息，他一下子呆住了。 When he heard the news, he froze on the spot.
崇拜	chóngbài	to idolise, look up to	他从小就崇拜那位科学家。 He's looked up to that scientist since he was a boy.
听话	tīnghuà	obedient, well-behaved	大白很听话，叫它坐它就坐。 Dabai is very obedient: tell him to sit and he sits.

pattern 瞧你急的: "look how worked up you are!"

看 / 瞧 **你 / 他** **state (急, 高兴, 累)** **的**

看 or 瞧, then a person, then how they look, then 的: 瞧他急的, "look how worried he is". It comments on a state you can see, teasing or caring, between people who are close. Often a second clause says what to do about it.

瞧你急的，先喝口水。 **qiáo nǐ jí de xiān hē kǒu shuǐ** Look at you, all in a state. Have some water first.

看他高兴的，嘴都合不上了。 **kàn tā gāoxìng de zuǐ dōu hé bu shàng le** Look how happy he is: he can't stop grinning.

看你呆的，叫你半天都没听见。 **kàn nǐ dāi de jiào nǐ bàntiān dōu méi tīngjiàn** Look at you, miles away! I've been calling you for ages.

dialogue photos from campus

little sister 安娜，你瞧，这是我们班的照片！
Ānnà nǐ qiáo zhè shì wǒmen bān de zhàopiàn · Anna, look, this is a photo of my class!

anna 哇，这张照片把大家的活力都拍出来了！笑得最开心的是谁？
wā zhè zhāng zhàopiàn bǎ dàjiā de huólì dōu pāi chulai le xiào de zuì kāixīn de shì shéi · Wow, this photo really captures everyone's energy! Who's the one laughing the most?

little sister 那是我的好朋友。她特别活跃，也很大方，买了零食总分给大家。
nà shì wǒ de hǎo péngyou tā tèbié huóyuè yě hěn dàfang mǎi le língshí zǒng fēn gěi dàjiā · That's my best friend. She's really lively and generous: whenever she buys snacks, she shares them.

anna 旁边这个男生呢？看起来很老实。
pángbiān zhège nánshēng ne kàn qǐlai hěn lǎoshi · And the boy next to her? He looks very well-behaved.

little sister 他啊，看起来又老实又天真，其实特别淘气，经常跟老师开玩笑。
tā a kàn qǐlai yòu lǎoshi yòu tiānzhēn qíshí tèbié táoqì jīngcháng gēn lǎoshī kāi wánxiào · Him? He looks so good and innocent, but he's really cheeky. He's always joking with the teachers.

anna 那你们的教授呢？
nà nǐmen de jiàoshòu ne · And your professor?

little sister 她很温和，也很谦虚，是一个特别高尚的人，我很崇拜她。
tā hěn wēnhé yě hěn qiānxū shì yí gè tèbié gāoshàng de rén wǒ hěn chóngbài tā · She's gentle and modest, a truly good person. I really look up to her.

anna 瞧你激动的！你是不是也想当教授？
qiáo nǐ jīdòng de nǐ shì bu shì yě xiǎng dāng jiàoshòu · Look how excited you are! Do you want to be a professor too?

little sister 得了吧，我可没那个头脑。我还是做个平凡的人吧。
déle ba wǒ kě méi nàge tóunǎo wǒ háishi zuò gè píngfán de rén ba · Come off it, I haven't got the brains. I'll stick to being ordinary.

anna 平凡也很好啊。不过你眼光不错，交的朋友都挺好的。
píngfán yě hěn hǎo a búguò nǐ yǎnguāng búcuò jiāo de péngyou dōu tǐng hǎo de · Ordinary is fine! But you've got good judgement: your friends are all lovely.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

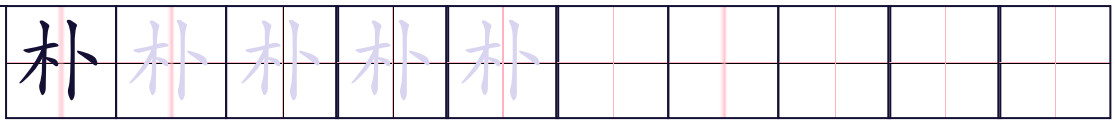
委
wěi
to bend

瞧
qiáo
to look, see (spoken)

尚
shàng
to esteem



朴
pǔ
simple



good to know · 老实 is praise for honesty, but 太老实 can mean “too easily fooled”. Context decides. 小气 is a common, gentle tease among friends: 别这么小气！ “don’t be so stingy!” 土 “earth, soil” also means “unfashionable, a bit rustic”: 这件衣服太土了. It’s a tease, so keep it for friends.

Next time a friend is flustered, try 瞧你急的 with a smile: it says “I see you, calm down” in three words.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 28 getting along

Talk about manners, visits and trust, and catch a friend out with a playful 好你个....

Knowing how to visit, address people and keep face is what makes you a welcome guest in China.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
交际	jiāojì	to socialise	她很会交际，到哪儿都能交到朋友。 She's good at socialising and makes friends wherever she goes.
打交道	dǎjiāodao	to deal with (people)	做销售每天都要跟不同的人打交道。 In sales you deal with different people every day.
来往	láiwǎng	to keep in touch, have dealings	毕业以后，我们还一直有来往。 We've stayed in touch since we graduated.
拜访	bàifǎng	to pay a visit	过年的时候，我们去拜访了王老师。 At New Year we paid Teacher Wang a visit.
好客	hàokè	hospitable	这里的人非常好客，一定要请我们吃饭。 People here are really hospitable and insisted on treating us to a meal.
周到	zhōudào	thoughtful, considerate	你想得真周到，连雨伞都准备好了。 You think of everything: you've even brought umbrellas.
称呼	chēnghu	to address; form of address	我应该怎么称呼您? How should I address you?
场合	chǎnghé	occasion, situation	在正式场合，最好穿得正式一点。 On formal occasions it's best to dress smartly.
面子	miànzi	face, pride	他很要面子，从来不承认自己错了。 He cares a lot about face and never admits he's wrong.
规矩	guīju	rules, manners	每个家庭都有自己的规矩。 Every family has its own rules.
气氛	qìfēn	atmosphere	晚会的气氛特别热闹。 The atmosphere at the party was really lively.
氛围	fēnwéi	atmosphere, ambience	这家{=(measure word)}书店的氛围很轻松。 This bookshop has a relaxed feel.
好感	hǎogǎn	good impression, liking	第一次见面，我就对他很有好感。 I liked him from the moment we first met.
亲密	qīnmì	close, intimate	她们是从小一起长{zhang3}大的亲密朋友。 They're close friends who grew up together.
同伴	tóngbàn	companion	出去爬山最好有同伴。 It's best to go hiking with a companion.
大伙儿	dàhuǒr	everyone, all of us (spoken)	大伙儿一起来帮忙吧! Come on, everyone, let's all help out!
信赖	xìnlài	to trust	他是一个值得信赖的朋友。 He's a friend you can trust.

依赖	yīlài	to depend on	现在很多人太依赖手机了。 These days lots of people depend too much on their phones.
赖	lài	to blame; to rely on; to stay on	这件事不能全赖他。 You can't blame it all on him.
承诺	chéngnuò	to promise; commitment	他承诺一定会按时完成。 He promised he'd finish on time.
诚信	chéngxìn	honesty, integrity	做生意最重要的是诚信。 In business, integrity matters most.
回报	huíbào	to repay; return	父母为我们付出了很多，我们应该好好回报他们。 Our parents gave us so much; we should repay them.
感激	gǎnjī	grateful	我非常感激你那时候帮了我。 I'm so grateful you helped me back then.
待	dài	to treat (people)	她待{dai4-6}人很热情。 She treats people warmly.

pattern 好你个…！ "why, you…!"

好 | 你个 | person | ，what they did

好你个 + name catches someone out, half scolding, half laughing: 好你个小明！ "Why, you rascal, Xiaoming!" Then say what they did. Use it only with people you know well, or with pets.

好你个大白，又把我的鞋咬坏了！ **hǎo nǐ gè Dàbái yòu bǎ wǒ de xié yǎo huài le** Dabai, you rascal, you've chewed my shoe again!

好你个小明，你承诺过的事又忘了！ **hǎo nǐ gè Xiǎomíng nǐ chéngnuò guo de shì yòu wàng le** Xiaoming, you! You've forgotten what you promised again!

好你个妹妹，偷偷把账单付了！ **hǎo nǐ gè mèimei tōutōu bǎ zhàngdān fù le** You sneaky thing, you secretly paid the bill!

dialogue a visit to teacher wang

anna 第一次来王老师家拜访，我有点紧张。
dì yī cì lái Wánglǎoshī jiā bàifǎng wǒ yǒudiǎn jǐnzhāng · It's my first visit to Teacher Wang's home. I'm a bit nervous.

xiaoming 别担心，王老师特别好客。我们来往这么多年了，我最了解她。
bié dānxīn Wánglǎoshī tèbié hàokè wǒmen láiwǎng zhème duō nián le wǒ zuì liǎojiě tā · Don't worry, she's very hospitable. We've known each other for years.

teacher wang 欢迎欢迎！快进来，大伙儿都在等你们呢。
huānyíng huānyíng kuài jinlai dàhuǒr dōu zài děng nǐmen ne · Welcome! Come in, everyone's waiting for you.

anna 王老师，您准备得真周到！您家的氛围真温暖。
Wánglǎoshī nín zhǔnbèi de zhēn zhōudào nín jiā de fēnwéi zhēn wēnnuǎn · Teacher Wang, you've thought of everything! Your home feels so warm.

teacher wang 今天不是正式场合，没那么多规矩，大家随便坐，气氛轻松一点。
jīntiān bú shì zhèngshì chǎnghé méi nàme duō guīju dàjiā suíbiàn zuò qìfēn qīngsōng yìdiǎn · It's not a formal occasion. No rules: sit anywhere and relax.

anna 我刚来北京的时候，什么都依赖您。我一直很感激您。
wǒ gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou shénme dōu yīlài nín wǒ yìzhí hěn gǎnjī nín · When I first came to Beijing, I relied on you for everything. I've always been grateful.

teacher wang 你学得这么认真，就是对我最好的回报。
nǐ xué de zhème rènzhēn jiùshì duì wǒ zuìhǎo de huíbào · The way you've studied is the best thanks I could have.

teacher wang 哎，好你个小明，还没开饭，你就先吃了三个饺子！
āi hǎo nǐ gè Xiǎomíng hái méi kāi fàn nǐ jiù xiān chī le sān gè jiǎozi · Hey! Why, Xiaoming, we haven't even started and you've already had three dumplings!

xiaoming 这可不能赖我，您做的饺子太香了！
zhè kě bù néng lài wǒ nín zuò de jiǎozi tài xiāng le · You can't blame me, your dumplings smell too good!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

凡
fán
ordinary

呆
dāi
blank, stunned; dull

氛
fēn
atmosphere

good to know · When you visit a Chinese home, bring a small gift such as fruit or tea, and expect your host to insist you eat more. 面子 is face: your standing in others' eyes. 给面子 is showing someone respect; 没面子 is losing face.

You can now be a guest who says the right things, and tease your friends like a local.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 29 arguing and making up

Chinese HSK 6 in 90 days
unit 4 · people & feelings

Describe a quarrel, say how it made people feel, and make up.

Every friendship and family has rows. Being able to explain and apologise in Chinese is a real-life skill.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
吵架	chǎojià	to quarrel, have a row	他们昨天吵架了，今天谁也不跟谁说话。 They had a row yesterday, and today they're not speaking.
争吵	zhēngchǎo	to argue, quarrel	为了一点小事争吵，真不值得。 It's really not worth arguing over little things.
打架	dǎjià	to fight, come to blows	两个孩子为了一个玩具打架了。 The two kids fought over a toy.
嘲笑	cháoxiào	to laugh at, mock	不要嘲笑别人的缺点。 Don't make fun of other people's flaws.
指责	zhǐzé	to blame, criticise	出了问题，不要只{zhi3}会指责别人。 When something goes wrong, don't just blame others.
嫌	xián	to dislike, mind	他嫌这家{=(measure word)}饭馆太贵。 He thinks this restaurant is too expensive.
恨	hèn	to hate; to regret	我恨自己当时太冲动了。 I hate myself for being so rash back then.
狠	hěn	harsh, ruthless; firmly	这次老师狠狠地批评了他。 This time the teacher gave him a real telling-off.
逼	bī	to force, press	父母不应该逼孩子学自己不喜欢的东西。 Parents shouldn't force children to learn things they don't like.
强迫	qiǎngpò	to force, compel	你不想去就算了，没人强迫你。 If you don't want to go, fine. Nobody's forcing you.
妨碍	fángài	to get in the way of	对不起，妨碍你工作了。 Sorry to interrupt your work.
干扰	gānrǎo	to disturb, interfere	手机的声音会干扰别人学习。 Phone noise can disturb other people studying.
困扰	kùnrǎo	to trouble, bother	这个问题困扰了我很久。 This problem has been bothering me for ages.
误解	wùjiě	to misunderstand	你误解我的意思了。 You've misunderstood what I meant.
认错	rèncuò	to admit a mistake, apologise	他终于向妈妈认错了。 He finally said sorry to his mum.

为难	wéinán	awkward; to make things hard	你别为难他了，他也没办法。 Don't give him a hard time: there's nothing he can do.
尴尬	gāngà	awkward, embarrassing	叫错了别人的名字，真尴尬。 Calling someone by the wrong name is so embarrassing.
不耐烦	bùnàifán	impatient	等了半天，他开始{==有点 a bit, rather}不耐烦了。 After waiting so long, he started getting impatient.
冲动	chōngdòng	impulsive; impulse	生气的时候不要冲动。 Don't act on impulse when you're angry.
疑惑	yíhuò	puzzled; doubt	她疑惑地看着我，不知道我在说什么。 She looked at me, puzzled, not knowing what I meant.
看不起	kànbuqǐ	to look down on	不要看不起任何一种工作。 Never look down on any kind of job.
看得起	kàndeqǐ	to think highly of	谢谢你看得起我，把这么重要的事交给我。 Thank you for trusting me with something so important.
当面	dāngmiàn	face to face	有问题我们当面说清楚吧。 If there's a problem, let's talk it through face to face.
顿时	dùnshí	at once, suddenly	听到大家的笑声，他的脸顿时红了。 When he heard everyone laugh, his face instantly went red.

pattern 这件事把他急坏了: 把 + the person affected

event / thing | 把 | person | feeling + result

Here the subject is an event or thing, and the person after 把 is the one it affects: 这件事把他急坏了, "this business drove him frantic". After the person comes a feeling verb plus a result: 气坏了, 吓了一跳, 累坏了.

这个消息把大家吓了一跳。 zhège xiāoxi bǎ dàjiā xià le yí tiào The news gave everyone a fright.

这么多作业把孩子累坏了。 zhème duō zuòyè bǎ háizi lèi huài le All that homework wore the kids out.

一场误会把两个好朋友弄得很尴尬。 yì chǎng wùhuì bǎ liǎng gè hǎo péngyou nòng de hěn gāngà A misunderstanding made things awkward between two good friends.

dialogue too loud!

xiaoming 妹妹，你能不能把那扇门关上？你的音乐一直干扰我工作！
mèimei nǐ néng bu néng bǎ nà shàn mén guān shàng nǐ de yīnyuè yìzhí gānrǎo wǒ gōngzuò · Can you shut that door? Your music keeps disturbing my work!

little sister 你嫌吵就去别的房间啊，干吗逼我关音乐？
nǐ xián chǎo jiù qù biéde fángjiān a gàn ma bī wǒ guān yīnyuè · If it's too loud for you, go to another room. Why force me to turn it off?

xiaoming 你总是这样！上次我当面说你，你还嘲笑我像个老人。
nǐ zǒngshì zhèyàng shàng cì wǒ dāngmiàn shuō nǐ nǐ hái cháoxiào wǒ xiàng gè lǎorén · You're always like this! Last time I told you to your face, you laughed and said I was like an old man.

little sister 是你先指责我的！你根本看不起我的爱好。
shì nǐ xiān zhǐzé wǒ de nǐ gēnběn kànbuqǐ wǒ de àihào · You started blaming me first! You look down on everything I like.

ms zhang 你们俩又在吵架？声音那么大，把大白都吓跑了。
nǐmen liǎ yòu zài chǎojià shēngyīn nàme dà bǎ Dàbái dōu xià pǎo le · Are you two rowing again? You're so loud you've scared Dabai away.

xiaoming 妈妈，她的音乐太吵了，这个问题困扰我好几天了。
māma tā de yīnyuè tài chǎo le zhège wèntí kùnrǎo wǒ hǎo jǐ tiān le · Mum, her music is too loud. It's been bothering me for days.

ms zhang 小明，妹妹在家学习也不容易，你别为难她。妹妹，你也别冲动。
Xiǎomíng mèimei zài jiā xuéxí yě bù róngyì nǐ bié wéinán tā mèimei nǐ yě bié chōngdòng · Xiaoming, it's not easy for her studying at home either, so don't give her a hard time. And you, calm down.

xiaoming 好吧，是我态度不好。妹妹，我向你认错。
hǎo ba shì wǒ tàidù bù hǎo mèimei wǒ xiàng nǐ rèncuò · All right, I was out of line. Sorry, sis.

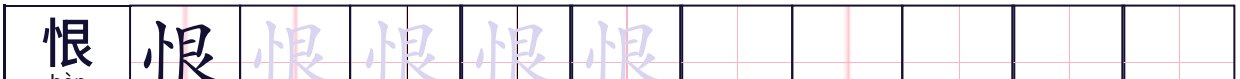
little sister 听你这么说，我的气顿时就没了。以后我戴耳机，不妨碍你工作。
tīng nǐ zhème shuō wǒ de qì dùnshí jiù méi le yǐhòu wǒ dài ěrjī bù fángài nǐ gōngzuò · Hearing that, I'm not cross any more. I'll wear headphones from now on, so I won't get in your way.

ms zhang 这就对了。一家人有什么误解，说开了就好，别再争吵了。
zhè jiù duì le yì jiā rén yǒu shénme wùjiě shuō kāi le jiù hǎo bié zài zhēngchǎo le · That's more like it. If family members misunderstand each other, talk it out. No more arguing.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



恨
hèn
to hate; to regret



迫
pò
to press



妨
fáng
to hinder

good to know · 吵架 is a row with words; 打架 is a fight with fists. 争吵 is the more written word for arguing. To make up, say 是我不对 “it was my fault” or 我向你道歉 “I apologise to you”.

Rows happen. Now you can explain what went wrong, and say sorry in a way that actually lands.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 30 keep going

Talk about setbacks and determination, praise someone, and say “what’s done is done”.

Encouraging a friend after a failure is one of the kindest things you can do in any language.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
挫折	cuòzhé	setback	人生中谁都会遇到挫折。 Everyone hits setbacks in life.
艰难	jiānnán	hard, difficult	那几年，他们的生活非常艰难。 Life was very hard for them in those years.
艰辛	jiānxīn	hardship; hard	创业的路很艰辛。 Starting a business is a hard road.
考验	kǎoyàn	to test; a trial	这次比赛对他是一个很大的考验。 This match is a big test for him.
忍受	rěnshòu	to bear, endure	这里吵得让人无法忍受。 It’s unbearably noisy here.
顽强	wánqiáng	tenacious	她顽强地坚持到了最后。 She stuck it out to the very end.
坚定	jiāndìng	firm, steadfast	他的态度很坚定，谁也说服不了{liao3-4}他。 His mind is made up: nobody can talk him round.
坚决	jiānjué	resolute, firmly	我坚决反对这个计划。 I’m firmly against this plan.
勇于	yǒngyú	to dare to, be brave in	我们要勇于承认自己的错误。 We should have the courage to admit our mistakes.
冒险	màoxiǎn	to take a risk; adventure	这样做太冒险了，再想想吧。 That’s too risky. Think it over again.
冒	mào	to risk, brave; to give off	他冒着大雨去车站接我。 He braved the heavy rain to meet me at the station.
闯	chuǎng	to venture out; to rush	他二十岁就一个|人去大城市闯了。 At twenty he went off on his own to make it in the big city.
摆脱	bǎituō	to break free of	运动帮助她摆脱了焦虑。 Exercise helped her shake off her anxiety.
脆弱	cuìruò	fragile, vulnerable	人在生病的时候，心理会比较脆弱。 When you’re ill, you feel more vulnerable.
勉强	miǎnqiǎng	reluctantly; barely; to force	不想吃就别勉强了。 If you don’t want to eat it, don’t force yourself.
一帆风顺	yīfānfēngshùn	plain sailing	人生不可能一帆风顺。 Life is never plain sailing.
鼓舞	gǔwǔ	to inspire, encourage	她的故事鼓舞了很多人。 Her story inspired many people.

佩服	pèifú	to admire	我真佩服你，每天早上六点起床跑步。 I really admire you, getting up at six every morning to run.
赞赏	zànshǎng	to appreciate, praise	经理很赞赏他的工作态度。 The manager really values his attitude to work.
夸	kuā	to praise; to boast	老师夸她中文说得好。 The teacher praised her Chinese.
夸奖	kuājiǎng	to praise	被大家夸奖，他有点{==a bit, rather}不好意思。 He was a bit embarrassed when everyone praised him.
夸张	kuāzhāng	exaggerated	你说得太夸张了吧！ You're exaggerating!
自豪	zìháo	proud	我为我的家乡感到自豪。 I'm proud of my hometown.
信念	xìnniàn	belief, conviction	正是这个信念让他坚持了下来。 It was this belief that kept him going.

pattern 输了就输了: what's done is done

X了 就 X了 ，没什么 / 有什么...

Say the same verb with 了 on both sides of 就: 输了就输了, "we lost, so we lost". It accepts what has happened and moves on. A second part usually says it doesn't matter, or what to do next.

错过了就错过了，我们冒着雨走过去吧。 **cuòguò le jiù cuòguò le wǒmen mào zhe yǔ zǒu guoqu ba** We've missed it, so what. Let's walk there in the rain.

失败了就失败了，冒险总比什么都不做好。 **shībài le jiù shībài le màoxiǎn zǒng bǐ shénme dōu bú zuò hǎo** If it fails, it fails. Taking a risk beats doing nothing.

说了就说了，我不后悔。 **shuō le jiù shuō le wǒ bú hòuhuǐ** I said it and that's that. I don't regret it.

dialogue fifth place

anna 妹妹，演讲比赛的结果出来了吗？
mèimei yǎnjiǎng bǐsài de jiéguǒ chūlái le ma · So, are the speech contest results out?

little sister 出来了，我只得了第五名。准备了三个月，我真是累透了。
chūlái le wǒ zhǐ dé le dì wǔ míng zhǔnbèi le sān gè yuè wǒ zhēn shì lèi tòu le · Yes. I only came fifth. Three months of preparation, and I'm worn out.

xiaoming 输了就输了，有什么大不了的？你敢参加比赛，就说明你勇于挑战自己。
shū le jiù shū le yǒu shénme dà bu liǎo de nǐ gǎn cānjiā bǐsài jiù shuōmíng nǐ yǒngyú tiǎozhàn zìjǐ · So you lost. Big deal! Entering at all shows you dare to push yourself.

little sister 哥哥，你别勉强安慰我了。我知道自己太脆弱，就是无法忍受失败。
gēge nǐ bié miǎnqiǎng ānwèi wǒ le wǒ zhīdào zìjǐ tài cuìruò jiùshì wúfǎ rěnshòu shībài · Don't force yourself to comfort me. I know I'm too fragile: I just can't stand failing.

anna 谁的人生都不是一帆风顺的。我刚来中国的时候，也遇到过很多挫折。
shéi de rénshēng dōu bú shì yìfān fēngshùn de wǒ gāng lái Zhōngguó de shíhou yě yùdào guo hěn duō cuòzhé · Nobody's life is plain sailing. When I first came to China, I had lots of setbacks too.

little sister 真的吗？大家都夸你很顽强。
zhēn de ma dàjiā dōu kuā nǐ hěn wánqiáng · Really? Everyone says you're so tough.

anna 是一个信念让我摆脱了那段艰难的日子：每一次失败都是一次考验。
shì yí gè xìnniàn ràng wǒ bǎituō le nà duàn jiānnán de rìzi měi yí cì shībài dōu shì yí cì kǎoyàn · One belief got me through those hard days: every failure is a test.

xiaoming 而且老师们明明很赞赏你，还夸奖你很有勇气。
érqiě lǎoshīmen míngmíng hěn zànshǎng nǐ hái kuājiǎng nǐ hěn yǒu yǒngqì · And the teachers clearly thought highly of you. They praised you for being brave.

little sister 那倒是……好吧，我不能就这样放弃。明年我还要再闯一次！
nà dàoshì hǎo ba wǒ bù néng jiù zhèyàng fàngqì míngnián wǒ hái yào zài chuǎng yí cì · That's true... All right, I won't give up. Next year I'll have another go!

xiaoming 这才是我妹妹！我真佩服你，也为你感到自豪。
zhè cái shì wǒ mèimei wǒ zhēn pèifú nǐ yě wèi nǐ gǎndào zìháo · That's my sister! I really admire you, and I'm proud of you.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

闯
chuǎng
to venture out; to rush

帆
fān
sail

佩
pèi
to wear, admire



夸 kuā to praise; to boast										

good to know · 夸 is everyday “praise”: 老师夸我. 夸奖 is a little more formal, and 赞赏 is what a boss or critic does. 一帆风顺 makes a lovely wish for a journey or a new job: 祝你一帆风顺!

When a friend stumbles, you now have the words to pick them up, and the shrug to help them move on.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 31 talking and listening

Talk about conversations and listening, share your thoughts, and say “look how happy it’s made you!”.

Good listeners make good friends and good colleagues, and they learn languages faster too.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
交谈	jiāotán	to talk, converse	我们用中文交谈了半个小时。 We talked in Chinese for half an hour.
谈论	tánlùn	to talk about, discuss	大家都在谈论昨天的比赛。 Everyone’s talking about yesterday’s game.
议论	yìlùn	to comment, gossip about	别在背后议论别人。 Don’t talk about people behind their backs.
倾听	qīngtīng	to listen closely	好朋友会耐心地倾听你的烦恼。 A good friend listens patiently to your worries.
暗示	ànshì	to hint	她看了看手表，暗示我们该走了。 She glanced at her watch, hinting it was time to go.
手势	shǒushì	gesture	他用手势告诉我等一下。 He gestured to me to wait a moment.
笑容	xiàoróng	smile	她的脸上总是带着笑容。 She always has a smile on her face.
实话	shíhuà	the truth	说实话，我不太喜欢这部电影。 To be honest, I don’t really like this film.
自言自语	zìyánzìyǔ	to talk to oneself	他一边找钥匙，一边自言自语。 He talked to himself while he looked for his keys.
自我	zìwǒ	self, oneself	面试的时候，先做一个简单的自我介绍。 At an interview, start with a short introduction of yourself.
在意	zàiyì	to mind, care about	别太在意别人怎么说。 Don’t worry too much about what others say.
无所谓	wúsuǒwèi	to not mind, not matter	吃什么都行，我无所谓。 I’m happy to eat anything. I don’t mind.
乐于	lèyú	to be happy to	他总是乐于帮助别人。 He’s always happy to help others.
关爱	guānài	to care for	社会应该多关爱老人。 Society should take better care of the elderly.
关怀	guānhuái	care, concern	谢谢大家对我的关怀。 Thank you all for your kindness and care.
打动	dǎdòng	to move, touch (feelings)	他的真诚打动了每一个人。 His sincerity touched everyone.
感想	gǎnxiǎng	thoughts, impressions	看完这本书，你有什么感想? What did you make of the book?

充实	chōngshí	full, rich; to enrich	这个周末过得很充实。 It was a full, rewarding weekend.
激情	jīqíng	passion	他对工作充满了激情。 He's full of passion for his work.
急切	jíqiè	eager, anxious	她急切地想知道考试结果。 She was dying to know her exam results.
匆忙	cōngmáng	hasty, in a rush	早上起晚了，他匆忙出了门。 He overslept and rushed out of the door.
逗	dòu	to tease, amuse; funny	他讲的笑话把大家都逗笑了。 His jokes had everyone laughing.
妙	miào	wonderful, clever	这个主意太妙了！ What a brilliant idea!
举动	jǔdòng	act, move	他这个小小的举动让我很感动。 That small gesture of his really touched me.
恰恰	qiàqià	exactly, precisely	事实恰恰相反。 In fact, it's exactly the opposite.

pattern 瞧把他高兴得: "look how happy it's made him!"

看 / 瞧 | 把 | someone | feeling | 得

看 or 瞧, then 把 + a person, then a feeling, then 得: 瞧把他高兴得, "look how happy it's made him". It's stronger than 瞧他高兴的 from day 27, and the sentence can stop right after 得: the listener fills in the rest.

瞧把你急得，慢慢说。 **qiáo bǎ nǐ jí de màn màn shuō** Look at you, all worked up. Take it slowly.

看把大白高兴得，尾巴摇个不停。 **kàn bǎ Dàbái gāoxìng de wěiba yáo gè bù tíng** Look how happy Dabai is: his tail won't stop wagging.

瞧把他得意得，好像拿了第一名一样。 **qiáo bǎ tā déyì de hǎoxiàng ná le dì yī míng yíyàng** Look how pleased with himself he is, as if he'd come first.

dialogue the meeting went well

xiaoming 瞧把你高兴得！你刚才匆忙跑进来，我还以为出事了。
qiáo bǎ nǐ gāoxìng de nǐ gāngcái cōngmáng pǎo jinlai wǒ hái yǐwéi chū shì le · Look how happy you are! You rushed in so fast, I thought something had happened.

anna 会议好不容易才结束，可是结果特别好！客户当场就说要跟我们合作。
huìyì hǎobù róngyì cái jiéshù kěshì jiéguǒ tèbié hǎo kèhù dāngchǎng jiù shuō yào gēn wǒmen hézuò · The meeting took forever, but it went brilliantly! The client said on the spot they want to work with us.

xiaoming 太妙了！上周你还急切地找我帮你练习呢。
tài miào le shàng zhōu nǐ hái jíqiè de zhǎo wǒ bāng nǐ liànxí ne · Fantastic! Last week you were desperate for me to help you practise.

anna 说实话，我那天讲得不算多。我发现，倾听恰恰比说更重要。
shuō shíhuà wǒ nà tiān jiǎng de bú suàn duō wǒ fāxiàn qīngtīng qiàqià bǐ shuō gèng zhòngyào · Honestly, I didn't say much. I found that listening matters even more than talking.

xiaoming 什么意思？
shénme yìsi · What do you mean?

anna 客户谈论他们的问题时，我一直带着笑容认真听。最后是我们的真诚打动了他们。
kèhù tánlùn tāmen de wèntí shí wǒ yìzhí dài zhe xiàoróng rènzhēn tīng zuìhòu shì wǒmen de zhēnchéng dǎdòng le tāmen · While the client talked about their problems, I listened carefully with a smile. In the end it was our sincerity that won them over.

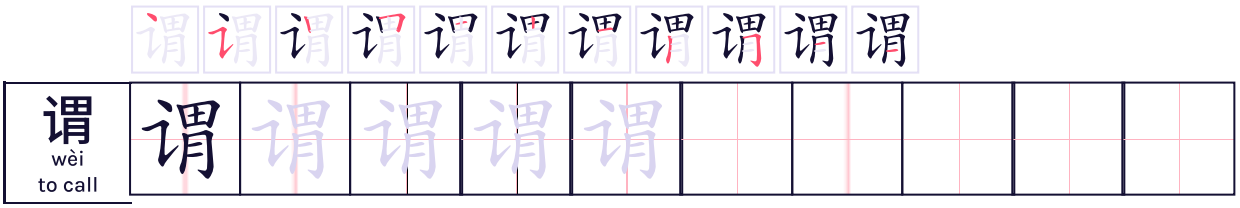
xiaoming 那倒是。很多人跟别人交谈的时候，只想着说自己的。
nà dàoshì hěn duō rén gēn biérén jiāotán de shíhou zhǐ xiǎng zhe shuō zìjǐ de · That's true. Lots of people only talk about themselves in a conversation.

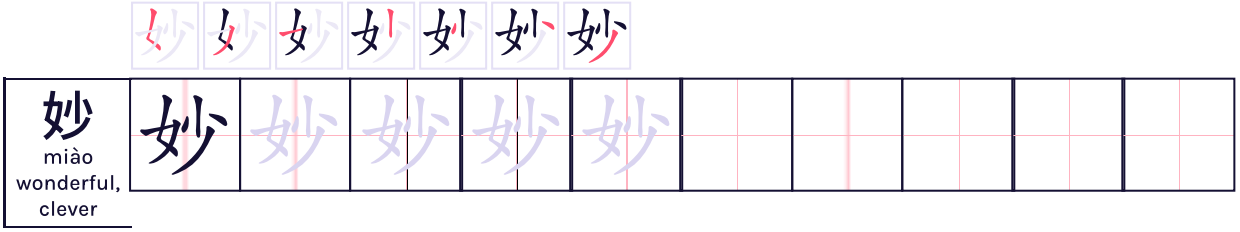
anna 而且刘经理用手势暗示我，先别急着介绍产品。
érqiě Liújīnglǐ yòng shǒushì ànshì wǒ xiān bié jí zhe jièshào chǎnpǐn · And Manager Liu signalled to me not to rush into presenting the product.

xiaoming 你们经理这个举动真聪明。那你现在有什么感想？
nǐmen jīnglǐ zhège jǔdòng zhēn cōngmíng nà nǐ xiànzài yǒu shénme gǎnxiǎng · Smart move by your manager. So how do you feel about it now?

anna 这个月过得特别充实，我对这份工作越来越有激情了！
zhège yuè guò de tèbié chōngshí wǒ duì zhè fèn gōngzuò yuè lái yuè yǒu jīqíng le · This month has been so full. I'm more and more passionate about this job!

write it trace the grey, then write your own





good to know · 无所谓 is handy but can sound careless. To be polite, say 我都可以 "anything is fine with me". 议论 often means talking about someone behind their back; 谈论 is neutral "talk about". 恰恰 points at exactly this, often against expectation: 恰恰相反 "quite the opposite", 问题恰恰在这里. 恰好 is "as it happens, just right": 我恰好有空.

You can now listen like a pro, and react with real warmth when a friend's news makes them glow.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 32 mission: the surprise party

Follow a five-part family story that reviews the feelings, character and getting-along words of unit 4, and say a heartfelt thank-you in Chinese.

A surprise party needs everything from this unit: plans, secrets, a quarrel, a making-up and a lot of feelings.

chapter 1 the plan

little sister 下周六是妈妈的五十岁生日，我们给她办一个惊喜聚会吧！
xià zhōu liù shì māma de wǔshí suì shēngrì wǒmen gěi tā bàn yí gè jīngxǐ jùhuì ba · Next Saturday is Mum's fiftieth birthday. Let's throw her a surprise party!

xiaoming 这个主意妙！妈妈一向不喜欢麻烦别人，我们干脆什么都不告诉她。
zhège zhǔyi miào māma yíxiàng bù xǐhuan máfan biérén wǒmen gāncuì shénme dōu bú gàosu tā · Brilliant idea! Mum never wants to put anyone out, so let's just not tell her anything.

anna 我也来帮忙！第一次拜访你们家，你们妈妈就待我像家人一样，我一直想回报她。
wǒ yě lái bāngmáng dì yī cì bàifǎng nǐmen jiā nǐmen māma jiù dài wǒ xiàng jiārén yíyàng wǒ yìzhí xiǎng huíbào tā · I'll help too! The first time I visited your home, your mum treated me like family. I've always wanted to pay her back.

little sister 妈妈的心愿是全家人一起去她最喜欢的那家饭店吃饭。
māma de xīnyuàn shì quán jiārén yìqǐ qù tā zuì xǐhuan de nà jiā fàndiàn chī fàn · Mum's wish is to have a meal with the whole family at her favourite restaurant.

xiaoming 那家饭店氛围很轻松，恰好有个大包间。
nà jiā fàndiàn fēnwéi hěn qīngsōng qiàhǎo yǒu gè dà bāojiān · That restaurant has a relaxed feel, and as it happens it has a big private room.

little sister 妈妈很好客，又会交际，朋友特别多，请谁不请谁真为难。
māma hěn hàokè yòu huì jiāojì péngyou tèbié duō qǐng shéi bù qǐng shéi zhēn wéinán · Mum's so hospitable and sociable, she has loads of friends. Deciding who to invite is tricky.

xiaoming 就请跟她来往了二十年的老朋友吧。不过谁都不能在她面前议论这件事。
jiù qǐng gēn tā láiwǎng le èrshí nián de lǎo péngyou ba búguò shéi dōu bù néng zài tā miànqián yìlùn zhè jiàn shì · Let's just invite the old friends she's kept in touch with for twenty years. But nobody can talk about it in front of her.

little sister 说实话，我最发愁的是爸爸。他太老实了，什么事都写在脸上。
shuō shíhuà wǒ zuì fāchóu de shì bàba tā tài lǎoshi le shénme shì dōu xiě zài liǎn shàng · To be honest, it's Dad I'm most worried about. He's so honest, everything shows on his face.

xiaoming 别愁，我当面跟他说清楚，让他承诺不说出去。
bié chóu wǒ dāngmiàn gēn tā shuō qīngchu ràng tā chéngnuò bù shuō chuqu · Don't worry. I'll talk to him face to face and make him promise not to tell.

little sister 你说得倒容易！爸爸最不会演戏了。
nǐ shuō de dào róngyì bàba zuì bú huì yǎn xì le · That's easier said than done! Dad's the worst actor ever.

anna 布置就交给我吧，我的眼光你们放心。你们家过生日有什么规矩吗？
bùzhì jiù jiāo gěi wǒ ba wǒ de yǎnguāng nǐmen fàngxīn nǐmen jiā guò shēngrì yǒu shénme guīju ma · Leave the decorating to me; you can trust my taste. Does your family have any birthday customs?

little sister 有一个：长辈过生日要吃长寿面。别弄得太夸张，妈妈喜欢朴素一点的。
yǒu yí gè zhǎngbèi guò shēngrì yào chī chángshòu miàn bié nòng de tài kuāzhāng māma xǐhuan pǔsù yìdiǎn de · Just one: older people eat long-life noodles on their birthday. And don't overdo it; Mum likes things simple.

chapter 2 a row over balloons

anna 只挂红色的气球太单调了，加点黄色的吧。
zhǐ guà hóngsè de qìqiú tài dāndiào le jiā diǎn huángsè de ba · Only red balloons is a bit dull. Let's add some yellow.

little sister 哥哥，红色的应该挂在门口，你明明知道妈妈最喜欢红色！
gēge hóngsè de yīnggāi guà zài ménkǒu nǐ míngmíng zhīdào māma zuì xǐhuan hóngsè · The red ones should go by the door, brother. You know perfectly well Mum loves red!

xiaoming 你别指责我，我已经忙了一下午了！
nǐ bié zhǐzé wǒ wǒ yǐjīng máng le yí xiàwǔ le · Don't blame me, I've been at it all afternoon!

little sister 你总是这样，一忙就不耐烦。
nǐ zǒngshì zhèyàng yì máng jiù bú nàifán · You're always like this: the moment you're busy, you get impatient.

xiaoming 你呢？当着安娜的面嘲笑我挑的气球太土，一点面子都不给我！
nǐ ne dāng zhe Ānnà de miàn cháoxiào wǒ tiāo de qìqiú tài tǔ yìdiǎn miànzi dōu bù gěi wǒ · And you? Mocking the balloons I picked as tacky, right in front of Anna. You don't spare my pride at all!

little sister 这事不能全赖我！我又没强迫你挂，你委屈什么？
zhè shì bù néng quán lài wǒ wǒ yòu méi qiǎngpò nǐ guà nǐ wěiqu shénme · You can't pin this all on me! I didn't force you to hang them, so why act so hard done by?

anna 瞧你们俩急的！再吵下去，聚会就办不了了，我们就白白忙了一下午。
qiáo nǐmen liǎ jí de zài chǎo xiaqu jùhuì jiù bàn bu liǎo le wǒmen jiù báibái máng le yí xiàwǔ · Look at the pair of you! If you keep arguing, there won't be a party, and we'll have wasted the whole afternoon.

anna 你们这么一争吵，气氛顿时变得好尴尬，还妨碍服务员工作。
nǐmen zhème yì zhēngchǎo qìfēn dùnshí biàn de hǎo gāngà hái fángài fúwù yuán gōngzuò · The moment you two started arguing, the mood turned really awkward, and you're getting in the waiters' way.

xiaoming 那倒也是。妹妹，刚才是我太冲动了，我向你认错。
nàdàoyěshì mèimei gāngcái shì wǒ tài chōngdòng le wǒ xiàng nǐ rèncuò · Fair point. Sorry, sis, I lost my temper just now. My fault.

little sister 我也不对，刚才说得太狠了。挂错了就挂错了，没什么大不了的。
wǒ yě bú duì gāngcái shuō de tài hěn le guà cuò le jiù guà cuò le méi shénme dà bu liǎo de · My fault too, I was too harsh just now. If they're in the wrong place, so what? It's no big deal.

xiaoming 我们俩从小就这样，小时候为了一块糖都能打架。
wǒmen liǎ cóngxiǎo jiù zhèyàng xiǎoshíhou wèile yí kuài táng dōu néng dǎjià · We've been like this since we were small. As kids we'd come to blows over one sweet.

little sister 不过我们吵架从来不过夜，也从来不恨对方。
búguò wǒmen chǎojià cónglái bú guò yè yě cónglái bú hèn duìfāng · But our rows never last overnight, and we never hold a grudge.

chapter 3 almost found out

ms zhang 老李，你今天怎么一直看手机？还对着手机自言自语。
lǎo Lǐ nǐ jīntiān zěnme yìzhí kàn shǒujī hái duì zhe shǒujī zìyán zìyǔ · Lao Li, why do you keep looking at your phone today? And talking to yourself at it.

dr li 没什么，一个同事给我讲了个笑话，太逗了。
méi shénme yí gè tóngshì gěi wǒ jiǎng le gè xiàohua tài dòu le · It's nothing. A colleague told me a joke, it's hilarious.

ms zhang 你脸上的笑容也太奇怪了。孩子们都不在家，家里好寂寞，大白也真可怜。
nǐ liǎn shàng de xiàoróng yě tài qíguài le háizimen dōu bú zài jiā jiā lǐ hǎo jìmò Dàbái yě zhēn kělián · That smile on your face is very odd. And the kids are both out: the place feels so empty, and poor Dabai too.

ms zhang 昨天妹妹打电话，说了一半就匆忙挂了。我心里有点不安。
zuótiān mèimei dǎ diànhuà shuō le yíbàn jiù cōngmáng guà le wǒ xīnlǐ yǒudiǎn bùān · Yesterday our daughter called and hung up in a rush halfway through. I feel a bit uneasy.

dr li 你误解了，能有什么事？你别太在意。
nǐ wùjiě le néng yǒu shénme shì nǐ bié tài zàiyì · You've got it wrong. What could be going on? Don't worry about it so much.

dr li 你最近工作太累了，我看着都心疼。晚上我们干脆出去吃吧。
nǐ zuìjìn gōngzuò tài lèi le wǒ kàn zhe dōu xīnténg wǎnshang wǒmen gāncuì chuqu chī ba · You've been working so hard lately, I hate to see it. Let's just eat out tonight.

ms zhang 你不是一直嫌那家饭店贵吗？你平时那么小气，今天倒是大方了。
nǐ bú shì yìzhí xián nà jiā fàndiàn guì ma nǐ píngshí nàme xiǎoqi jīntiān dàoshì dàfang le · Don't you always say that restaurant is too expensive? You're usually so tight-fisted, and today you're suddenly generous.

dr li 好你个老张，我什么时候小气过？今天我坚决不让你做饭。
hǎo nǐ gè lǎo zhāng wǒ shénme shíhou xiǎoqi guo jīntiān wǒ jiānjué bú ràng nǐ zuòfàn · Why, you! When have I ever been stingy? Today I absolutely won't let you cook.

dr li 你宽宽心，换件衣服，我们六点出门。
nǐ kuān kuān xīn huàn jiàn yīfu wǒmen liù diǎn chūmén · Put your mind at rest. Get changed; we leave at six.

ms zhang 出去吃个饭而已，穿什么我无所谓。
chūqù chī gè fàn éryǐ chuān shénme wǒ wúsuǒwèi · We're only going out for a meal. I don't mind what I wear.

dr li 那可不行，今天这种场合……哦，我是说，穿你心爱的那条红裙子吧，你穿红色最有气质。
nà kě bùxíng jīntiān zhè zhǒng chǎnghé ò wǒ shì shuō chuān nǐ xīnài de nà tiáo hóng qúnzi ba nǐ chuān hóngsè zuì yǒu qìzhì · No, that won't do, an occasion like today… I mean, wear that red dress you love. You look your most elegant in red.

ms zhang 又请客又夸我……你明明有事！算了，你不说，我也不逼你。
yòu qǐngkè yòu kuā wǒ nǐ míngmíng yǒu shì suànle nǐ bù shuō wǒ yě bù bī nǐ · Treating me and paying me compliments… you're clearly up to something! Fine, if you won't say, I won't push you.

chapter 4 surprise!

anna 李医生刚发消息暗示我们，他们已经到门口了！
Lǐyīshēng gāng fā xiāoxi ànshì wǒmen tāmen yǐjīng dào ménkǒu le · Dr Li has just texted us a hint: they're at the door!

xiaoming 大家安静！我一打手势，你们就一起喊。……妈妈，生日快乐！
dàjiā ānjìng wǒ yì dǎ shǒushì nǐmen jiù yìqǐ hǎn māma shēngrì kuàilè · Quiet, everyone! When I give the signal, all shout together. … Happy birthday, Mum!

ms zhang 天啊！你们……我真是大吃一惊，整个人都呆住了！
tiān a nǐmen wǒ zhēn shì dàchī yìjīng zhěnggè rén dōu dāi zhù le · Oh my goodness! You… I'm completely taken aback, I'm just standing here stunned!

little sister 妈妈，没吓到您吧？这是我们给您的惊喜！
māma méi xià dào nín ba zhè shì wǒmen gěi nín de jīngxǐ · Mum, we didn't scare you, did we? This is our surprise for you!

teacher wang 看你惊讶的！我们早就到了。
kàn nǐ jīngyà de wǒmen zǎo jiù dào le · Look how surprised you are! We got here ages ago.

ms zhang 我总算明白了，难怪老李今天的举动那么奇怪！
wǒ zǒngsuàn míngbai le nánguài lǎo Lǐ jīntiān de jǔdòng nàme qíguài · Now at last I understand: no wonder Lao Li's been acting so strangely today!

dr li 这件事把我急坏了，一整天都怕说漏嘴，真是个考验。
zhè jiàn shì bǎ wǒ jí huài le yì zhěng tiān dōu pà shuō lòu zuǐ zhēn shì gè kǎoyàn · This whole thing had me in a real state. All day I was afraid I'd let it slip; what a test.

teacher wang 看到大家这么欢乐，我真怀念我们的青春时光。你那时候最活跃了。
kàn dào dàjiā zhème huānlè wǒ zhēn huáiniàn wǒmen de qīngchūn shíguāng nǐ nà shíhou zuì huóyuè le · Seeing everyone so happy, I really miss the days of our youth. You were always the liveliest one.

ms zhang 是啊，岁月过得真快。年轻时我向往大城市，现在最渴望的就是全家人在一起。
shì a suìyuè guò de zhēn kuài niánqīng shí wǒ xiàngwǎng dà chéngshì xiànzài zuì kěwàng de jiùshì quán jiārén zài yìqǐ · Yes, the years fly by. When I was young I dreamed of the big city; now what I long for most is the whole family together.

teacher wang 你还是年轻时的模样，对工作还是那么有激情。
nǐ háishi niánqīng shí de múyàng duì gōngzuò háishi nàme yǒu jīqíng · You still look just like you did when you were young, and you're still so passionate about your work.

ms zhang 谢谢夸奖！这些年工作再艰难，有你们在，我就觉得很充实。
xièxie kuājiǎng zhèxiē nián gōngzuò zài jiānnán yǒu nǐmen zài wǒ jiù juéde hěn chōngshí · Thank you for saying so! However hard work has been these years, having you all makes life feel full.

xiaoming 瞧把妈妈高兴得，眼泪都流出来了。
qiáo bǎ māma gāoxìng de yǎnlèi dōu liú chulai le · Look how happy it's made Mum: she's in tears.

chapter 5 a letter for mum

little sister “亲爱的妈妈：小时候我们特别淘气，一点也不听话，可您总是温柔地跟我们讲道理。

qīnài de māma xiǎoshíhou wǒmen tèbié táoqì yìdiǎn yě bù tīnghuà kě nín zǒngshì wēnróu de gēn wǒmen jiǎng dàolǐ · “Dear Mum: when we were little we were really naughty and didn’t listen at all, but you always reasoned with us gently.

little sister 我怕水，是您把我抱在怀里，帮我摆脱了恐惧。有一次下大雨，您冒着雨来学校接我。

wǒ pà shuǐ shì nín bǎ wǒ bào zài huái lǐ bāng wǒ bǎituō le kǒngjù yǒu yí cì xià dà yǔ nín mào zhe yǔ lái xuéxiào jiē wǒ · I was afraid of water, and you held me in your arms and helped me get over my fear. Once, in a downpour, you braved the rain to pick me up from school.

little sister 那些年您在外面闯，经历了不少挫折，心情沉重的时候也从来没有灰心过。

nàxiē nián nín zài wàimiàn chuǎng jīnglì le bù shǎo cuòzhé xīnqíng chénzhòng de shíhou yě cónglái méiyǒu huīxīn guo · In those years you made your way out in the world and had plenty of setbacks, but even when your heart was heavy you never lost heart.

little sister 您常说：“遇到困难不要绝望，也不要悲观，要勇于面对。”这个信念一直鼓舞着我们。

nín cháng shuō yùdào kùnnan búyào juéwàng yě búyào bēiguān yào yǒngyú miànduì zhège xìnniàn yìzhí gǔwǔ zhe wǒmen · You always said: “When things get hard, don’t despair and don’t be pessimistic. Have the courage to face it.” That belief has always inspired us.

little sister 您每天跟那么多人打交道，待人温和，讲诚信，所以朋友们都信赖您。

nín měi tiān gēn nàme duō rén dǎ jiāodao dài rén wēnhé jiǎng chéngxìn suǒyǐ péngyoumen dōu xìnlài nín · Every day you deal with so many people; you treat them kindly and keep your word, so your friends all trust you.

little sister 我第一次离开家上大学，觉得很孤独，才知道自己多依赖您。最脆弱的时候，总是您在倾听。

wǒ dì yī cì líkāi jiā shàng dàxué juéde hěn gūdú cái zhīdào zìjǐ duō yīlài nín zuì cuìruò de shíhou zǒngshì nín zài qīngtīng · When I first left home for university, I felt very alone and realised how much I depend on you. At my lowest, you were always the one listening.

little sister 您说自己只是一个平凡的妈妈，可在我们心目中，您是最顽强、最让人佩服的人，我们从小就崇拜您。

nín shuō zìjǐ zhǐ shì yí gè píngfán de māma kě zài wǒmen xīnmù zhōng nín shì zuì wánqiáng zuì ràng rén pèifú de rén wǒmen cóngxiǎo jiù chóngbài nín · You say you’re just an ordinary mum, but in our eyes you’re the most tenacious, most admirable person there is. We’ve looked up to you since we were small.

little sister 您对我们没有很高的期望，只希望我们快乐。您总是默默地付出，从来不说有多艰辛。

nín duì wǒmen méiyǒu hěn gāo de qīwàng zhǐ xīwàng wǒmen kuàilè nín zǒngshì mòmò de fùchū cónglái bù shuō yǒu duō jiānxīn · You never expected great things of us; you only wanted us to be happy. You always gave quietly and never said how hard it was.

little sister 现在我们长大了，盼望您少一点焦虑，多一点自己的时间。谢谢您的关爱，我们爱您！”

xiànzài wǒmen zhǎng dà le pànwàng nín shǎo yìdiǎn jiāolǜ duō yìdiǎn zìjǐ de shíjiān xièxie nín de guānài wǒmen ài nín · Now that we’ve grown up, we hope you’ll worry a little less and have a little more time for yourself. Thank you for all your love and care. We love you!”

ms zhang 你们这封信真打动我了。我从心底里感激你们，也谢谢大家的关怀。

nǐmen zhè fēng xìn zhēn dǎdòng wǒ le wǒ cóng xīndǐ lǐ gǎnjī nǐmen yě xièxie dàjiā de guānhuái · This letter has really touched me. I’m grateful to you from the bottom of my heart, and thank you all for your kindness.

anna 祝您身体健康，一切一帆风顺！

zhù nín shēntǐ jiànkāng yíqiè yìfān fēngshùn · Wishing you good health and plain sailing in everything!

ms zhang 我为我的家人感到自豪！好了，长寿面来了，大家今天痛快地吃吧！

wǒ wèi wǒ de jiārén gǎndào zìháo hǎo le chángshòu miàn lái le dàjiā jīntiān tòngkuài de chī ba · I’m so proud

of my family! Right, here come the long-life noodles. Let’s all eat to our hearts’ content today!

You’ve just followed a whole family drama in HSK 6 Chinese: plans, secrets, a row, happy tears and a letter from the heart.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 33 courses and subjects

Talk about subjects, courses and exams, and say that something happened again and again.

Students, parents and colleagues all talk about what they studied: subjects, electives and the dreaded exams.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
一再	yīzài	again and again, repeatedly	老师一再提醒我们别迟到。 The teacher reminded us again and again not to be late.
再三	zàisān	over and over, repeatedly	他再三考虑以后，决定选文科。 After thinking it over and over, he chose the humanities.
科	kē	subject; branch, department	你最喜欢哪一科? Which subject do you like best?
科目	kēmù	(exam) subject	高考要考好几个科目。 The university entrance exam covers several subjects.
必修	bìxiū	compulsory (course)	这门课是必修课，每个学生都要上。 This course is compulsory: every student has to take it.
选修	xuǎnxiū	to take as an elective	我这学期选修了一门中国历史课。 This term I've taken an elective in Chinese history.
文科	wénkē	humanities, arts	她对文学感兴趣，所以选了文科。 She loves literature, so she chose the humanities.
理科	lǐkē	sciences	他理科成绩很好，数学和物理都不错。 He's good at science: maths and physics are both strong.
专科	zhuānkē	vocational college; specialty	他高中毕业以后上了一所专科学校。 After secondary school he went to a vocational college.
初等	chūděng	elementary	这本书只{zhi3}讲初等数学。 This book only covers elementary maths.
高等	gāoděng	higher, advanced	越来越多的人有机会接受高等教育。 More and more people get the chance of higher education.
开设	kāishè	to offer (a course), set up	我们学校开设了很多选修课。 Our school offers lots of electives.
入门	rùmén	to get started; introduction	这本书很适合入门。 This book is great for beginners.
难点	nándiǎn	difficult point	汉字是学中文的一个难点。 Characters are one of the hard parts of learning Chinese.

枯燥	kūzào	dry, dull	他讲得太枯燥了，大家都想睡觉。 His talk was so dry that everyone wanted to sleep.
讲解	jiǎngjiě	to explain	老师讲解得很清楚，我一下子就懂了。 The teacher explained it so clearly that I got it at once.
示范	shìfàn	to demonstrate	老师先给我们示范了一遍。 The teacher showed us how to do it first.
解答	jiědá	to answer (questions)	老师耐心地解答了每一个问题。 The teacher patiently answered every question.
朗读	lǎngdú	to read aloud	每天早上，她都会朗读半个小时课文。 Every morning she reads her textbook aloud for half an hour.
口头	kǒutóu	oral, spoken	这门课除了笔试，还有口头考试。 Besides the written test, this course has an oral exam.
书面	shūmiàn	written, in writing	请用书面形式回答。 Please answer in writing.
抄	chāo	to copy	作业要自己做，不能抄别人的。 Do your own homework; don't copy anyone else's.
本身	běnshēn	itself, oneself	问题本身并不难，难的是时间太短。 The question itself isn't hard; the hard part is the short time.
特定	tèdìng	specific, particular	这种药只{zhi3}在特定的情况下才|能用。 This medicine is only for particular situations.

pattern 一再 and 再三: again and again

who | 一再 / 再三 | verb

Both mean "again and again". 一再 goes before the verb, often with 提醒, 强调, 要求 or 道歉. 再三 can go before the verb or after it: 再三考虑 or 考虑再三, "after much thought".

王老师一再强调，朗读对学发音很有帮助。 **Wánglǎoshī yízài qiángdiào lǎngdú duì xué fāyīn hěn yǒu bāngzhù** Teacher Wang keeps stressing that reading aloud helps your pronunciation.

我考虑再三，还是决定选文科。 **wǒ kǎolǜ zàisān háishi juédìng xuǎn wénkē** After a lot of thought, I've decided on the humanities.

老师一再说，初等数学是一切的基础。 **lǎoshī yízài shuō chūděng shùxué shì yíqiè de jīchǔ** The teacher kept saying that elementary maths is the basis of everything.

dialogue choosing an elective

little sister 陈教授，下学期我想选修您的课，可是不知道该选哪一门。
Chénjiàoshòu xià xuéqī wǒ xiǎng xuǎnxiū nín de kè kěshì bù zhīdào gāi xuǎn nǎ yì mén · Professor Chen, I'd like to take one of your electives next term, but I don't know which.

professor chen 你是学理科的吧？历史系开设了一门入门课，很适合你。
nǐ shì xué lǐkē de ba lìshǐ xì kāishè le yì mén rùmén kè hěn shìhé nǐ · You're a science student, aren't you? The history department runs an introductory course that would suit you.

little sister 听说历史课很枯燥，要背很多年代。
tīngshuō lìshǐ kè hěn kūzào yào bèi hěn duō niándài · I've heard history is dry, with lots of dates to learn by heart.

professor chen 历史本身一点都不枯燥，关键看老师怎么讲解。
lìshǐ běnshēn yìdiǎn dōu bù kūzào guānjiàn kàn lǎoshī zěnme jiǎngjiě · History itself isn't dry at all. It depends on how the teacher explains it.

little sister 那这门课的难点是什么？
nà zhè mén kè de nándiǎn shì shénme · So what's the hard part of the course?

professor chen 难点是写文章。期末要交一篇书面报告，还要做一次口头报告。
nándiǎn shì xiě wénzhāng qīmò yào jiāo yì piān shūmiàn bàogào hái yào zuò yí cì kǒutóu bàogào · The writing. At the end of term you hand in a written report and give an oral presentation.

little sister 我再三考虑过了，还是想试一试。不过我写文章一向不太好。
wǒ zàisān kǎolǜ guo le háishi xiǎng shì yi shi búguò wǒ xiě wénzhāng yíxiàng bú tài hǎo · I've thought about it a lot and I still want to try. But my writing has never been great.

professor chen 别担心，我会先给大家示范。我每周还特意留两个小时，给学生解答问题。
bié dānxīn wǒ huì xiān gěi dàjiā shìfàn wǒ měi zhōu hái tèyì liú liǎng gè xiǎoshí gěi xuéshēng jiědá wèntí · Don't worry, I'll show everyone how first. And every week I set aside two hours to answer students' questions.

little sister 太好了！我一定认真听课，也不会抄别人的。
tài hǎo le wǒ yídìng rènzhēn tīng kè yě bú huì chāo biérén de · Great! I'll listen properly, and I won't copy anyone.

professor chen 瞧你紧张的，我又没说你会抄！
qiáo nǐ jǐnzhāng de wǒ yòu méi shuō nǐ huì chāo · Look at you, so nervous! I never said you would!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

抄
chāo
to copy

枯
kū
withered

good to know · In Chinese secondary schools, students used to choose 文科 (humanities) or 理科 (sciences); many provinces now let them mix subjects instead. 必修课 is compulsory, 选修课 is an elective. 门 is the measure word for courses: 一门课.

You can now talk about what you study, what you'd like to study, and what your teacher keeps telling you.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 34 study habits

Talk about study habits and good students, and push back gently with 未必 “not necessarily”.

Everyone has opinions on how to study. 未必 lets you disagree without starting a fight.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
未必	wèibì	not necessarily	贵的东西未必好。 Expensive things aren’t necessarily good.
好学	hàoxué	eager to learn	她是个好学的孩子，什么都想知道。 She’s a curious child who wants to know everything.
用功	yònggōng	hard-working (at study)	他学习很用功，每天都去图书馆。 He studies hard and goes to the library every day.
下功夫	xiàgōngfu	to put in the effort	要学好汉字，就得{dei3}下功夫。 To learn characters well, you have to put the work in.
专注	zhuānzhù	focused	他做事的时候非常专注。 He’s very focused when he works.
巩固	gǒnggù	to consolidate	每天复习可以巩固学过{guo}的知识。 Daily review locks in what you’ve learned.
纠正	jiūzhèng	to correct	老师纠正了我的发音。 The teacher corrected my pronunciation.
补课	bǔkè	to make up a missed lesson	他病了一个星期，现在要补课。 He was ill for a week and now has lessons to catch up on.
补习	bǔxí	to take extra tutoring	很多孩子周末都要去补习班。 Many children go to cram classes at the weekend.
辅导	fǔdǎo	to tutor, coach	哥哥每天晚上辅导我做数学作业。 My brother helps me with my maths homework every evening.
导师	dǎoshī	supervisor, tutor	我的导师对我的论文很满意。 My supervisor is very happy with my thesis.
智力	zhìlì	intelligence	这个游戏可以开发孩子的智力。 This game helps develop children’s intelligence.
素质	sùzhì	quality, calibre	学校不但要教知识，还要提高学生的素质。 Schools should build students’ all-round qualities, not just teach facts.
优异	yōuyì	outstanding	她以优异的成绩毕业了。 She graduated with outstanding results.
上进	shàngjìn	eager to improve	他是一个很上进的年轻人。 He’s a young man who always wants to better himself.
勤劳	qínláo	hard-working	我奶奶是个勤劳的人，一辈子都没闲过{guo}。 My grandma is a hard worker who never sat idle in her life.

用心	yòngxīn	attentive, with care	只要你用心学，就一定能学好。 If you put your heart into it, you'll learn it well.
自律	zìlǜ	self-disciplined	在家工作的人一定要自律。 People who work from home must be self-disciplined.
马虎	mǎhu	careless, sloppy	考试的时候千万别马虎。 Whatever you do, don't be careless in the exam.
榜样	bǎngyàng	role model	姐姐一直是我的榜样。 My older sister has always been my role model.
严厉	yánlì	strict, stern	我们的数学老师很严厉。 Our maths teacher is very strict.
教训	jiàoxùn	to lecture; lesson	这次失败给了我一个教训。 This failure taught me a lesson.
精心	jīngxīn	meticulous, with great care	这是她精心准备的礼物。 This is a gift she prepared with great care.
细致	xìzhì	careful, meticulous	他工作很细致，从来不出错。 He's meticulous and never makes mistakes.

pattern 未必: not necessarily

A 未必 B

未必 "not necessarily" disagrees softly: 贵的东西未必好, "expensive things aren't necessarily good". It doesn't say "no"; it says "don't be so sure". It's a little more formal than 不一定.

补习班上得多，成绩未必就好。 **bǔxí bān shàng de duō chéngjì wèibì jiù hǎo** Going to lots of cram classes doesn't necessarily mean better grades.

严厉的老师未必不受欢迎。 **yánlì de lǎoshī wèibì bú shòu huānyíng** Strict teachers aren't necessarily unpopular.

智力高的孩子未必学习好，还要看是否用心。 **zhìlì gāo de háizi wèibì xuéxí hǎo hái yào kàn shìfǒu yòngxīn** Bright children don't always do well at school; it depends whether they put their heart into it.

dialogue too much midnight oil

teacher wang 安娜，你最近脸色不太好，是不是又熬夜了？
Ānnà nǐ zuìjìn liǎnsè bú tài hǎo shì bu shì yòu áoyè le · Anna, you look pale lately. Have you been up late again?

anna 是的，六级考试快到了，我每天学到半夜。
shì de liù jí kǎoshì kuài dào le wǒ měi tiān xué dào bànyè · Yes. The level 6 exam is coming up, so I study till midnight every day.

teacher wang 好你个安娜，我一再说要早点睡！学得久未必学得好。
hǎo nǐ gè Ānnà wǒ yízài shuō yào zǎo diǎn shuì xué de jiǔ wèibì xué de hǎo · Anna, really! I keep telling you to go to bed early. Studying longer doesn't mean studying better.

anna 可是我总担心自己不够用功。
kěshì wǒ zǒng dānxīn zìjǐ búgòu yònggōng · But I always worry I'm not working hard enough.

teacher wang 你是我见过最好学、最自律的学生。问题是，累的时候你根本没法专注。
nǐ shì wǒ jiàn guo zuì hàoxué zuì zìlǜ de xuéshēng wèntí shì lèi de shíhou nǐ gēnběn méifǎ zhuānzhù · You're the keenest, most disciplined student I've ever had. The problem is that when you're tired, you can't focus.

anna 那倒是。昨天晚上我连“马虎”和“细致”都写错了。
nà dàoshì zuótiān wǎnshang wǒ lián mǎhu hé xìzhì dōu xiě cuò le · That's true. Last night I even wrote “careless” and “careful” wrong.

teacher wang 学习要用心，不要只看时间。每天精心安排一个小时，把学过的巩固好就够了。
xuéxí yào yòngxīn búyào zhǐ kàn shíjiān měi tiān jīngxīn ānpái yí gè xiǎoshí bǎ xué guo de gǒnggù hǎo jiù gòu le · Study with care, not by the clock. One well-planned hour a day to lock in what you've learned is enough.

anna 您说得对。我就是怕考不好，给您丢面子。
nín shuō de duì wǒ jiùshì pà kǎo bu hǎo gěi nín diū miànzi · You're right. I'm just afraid of doing badly and letting you down.

teacher wang 傻孩子，你一直是其他学生的榜样。这次就当是一个教训：要么早点睡，要么明天别来见我！
shǎ háizi nǐ yìzhí shì qítā xuéshēng de bǎngyàng zhè cì jiù dàng shì yí gè jiàoxùn yàome zǎo diǎn shuì yàome míngtiān bié lái jiàn wǒ · Silly girl, you're a role model for the other students. Let this be a lesson: either you go to bed early, or don't come and see me tomorrow!

anna 好好好，我今天十点就睡！
hǎo hǎohǎo wǒ jīntiān shí diǎn jiù shuì · All right, all right, I'll be asleep by ten tonight!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

巩
gǒng
to secure

纠
jiū
to correct

辅
fǔ
to assist

good to know · 马虎 “careless” is made of horse 马 and tiger 虎: a well-known folk tale tells of a painter whose picture was half horse, half tiger. 补课 is catching up on missed lessons; 补习 is extra tutoring, usually paid, in a 补习班.

Next time someone says studying all night is the only way, you can smile and say: 未必.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 35 campus life

Talk about university life, ceremonies and rules, and say “that’s fine too” or “whether … or …” with 也好.

Campus life has its own words: degrees, places, ceremonies and rules. And 也好 is how you shrug off a change of plan.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
也好	yěhǎo	that’s fine too; whether…or…	不去也好，在家休息一下。 Not going is fine too: have a rest at home.
就读	jiùdú	to attend (a school)	她现在在北京一所大学就读。 She’s currently studying at a university in Beijing.
念书	niànshū	to study, go to school	我弟弟还在念书。 My little brother is still at school.
升学	shēngxué	to go on to the next school	很多学生为了升学压力很大。 Lots of students are under pressure to get into the next school.
招生	zhāoshēng	to recruit students	这所大学今年招生人数增加了。 This university is taking more students this year.
名额	míngé	places, quota	夏令营的名额只有三十个。 The summer camp has only thirty places.
学位	xuéwèi	academic degree	他在英国拿到了硕士学位。 He got his master’s degree in the UK.
学员	xuéyuán	student (of a course), trainee	这个培训班有二十名学员。 This training course has twenty participants.
学会	xuéhuì	society (academic)	陈教授是中国历史学会的会员。 Professor Chen is a member of a Chinese history society.
学问	xuéwen	knowledge, learning	陈教授是一位很有学问的人。 Professor Chen is a very learned man.
少儿	shàoér	children	这家{=(measure word)}书店有很多少儿图书。 This bookshop has lots of children’s books.
夏令营	xiàlìngyíng	summer camp	孩子们暑假参加了一个夏令营。 The kids went to a summer camp in the holidays.
典礼	diǎnlǐ	ceremony	毕业典礼那天，父母都来了。 Both my parents came on graduation day.
纪律	jìlǜ	discipline	上课要遵守纪律。 You have to keep to the rules in class.
文具	wénjù	stationery	开学前，妈妈给我买了新文具。 Before term started, Mum bought me new stationery.
钢笔	gāngbǐ	fountain pen	爷爷送给我一支钢笔。 Grandpa gave me a fountain pen.

书籍	shūjí	books	图书馆里有各种书籍。 The library has all kinds of books.
文献	wénxiàn	literature, documents	写论文之前要先看很多文献。 Before writing a thesis, you have to read a lot of literature.
目录	mùlù	table of contents, catalogue	你可以先看看这本书的目录。 Have a look at the contents page first.
研讨	yántǎo	to discuss (in depth)	下{=next}周有一个关于教育的研讨会{hui4-3}。 There's a seminar on education next week.
传授	chuánshòu	to pass on (knowledge)	王老师把自己的经验传授给了年轻老师。 Teacher Wang passed her experience on to the young teachers.
精通	jīngtōng	to master, be fluent in	他精通三种语言。 He's fluent in three languages.
不得	bùdé	must not, may not	考试时不得使用手机。 Phones may not be used during the exam.
不许	bùxǔ	not allowed	妈妈不许我晚上十点以后玩游戏。 Mum won't let me play games after ten at night.

pattern 也好: that's fine too; whether ... or ...

A 也好 ，B 也好 ，都 / 反正...

On its own, 也好 makes the best of a change: 不去也好, "not going is fine too". Doubled, A也好， B也好 means "whether A or B", and 都 or 反正 then gives the part that stays the same.

你来也好，不来也好，我们都等你。 **nǐ lái yěhǎo bù lái yěhǎo wǒmen dōu děng nǐ** Whether you come or not, we'll wait for you.

文科也好，理科也好，关键是要用心学。 **wénkē yěhǎo lǐkē yěhǎo guānjiàn shì yào yòngxīn xué** Arts or sciences, the key is to study with care.

没买到票也好，在家休息一下嘛。 **méi mǎi dào piào yěhǎo zài jiā xiūxi yíxià ma** It's fine that we didn't get tickets: let's just rest at home.

dialogue back on campus

xiaoming 毕业这么多年了，学校的变化真大啦！
bìyè zhème duō nián le xuéxiào de biànhuà zhēn dà la · So many years since I graduated, and the place has changed so much!

little sister 哥哥，你念书的时候有这个新图书馆吗？里面的书籍和文献特别多。
gēge nǐ niànshū de shíhou yǒu zhège xīn túshūguǎn ma lǐmiàn de shūjí hé wénxiàn tèbié duō · Did this new library exist when you studied here? It's full of books and research papers.

xiaoming 没有。那时候找一篇文献，要先在目录里找半天。
méiyǒu nà shíhou zhǎo yì piān wénxiàn yào xiān zài mùlù lǐ zhǎo bàntiān · No. Back then, finding one article meant ages searching the catalogue.

professor chen 小明？好久不见！你妹妹也在我们学校就读，真巧。
Xiǎomíng hǎojiǔ bújiàn nǐ mèimei yě zài wǒmen xuéxiào jiùdú zhēn qiǎo · Xiaoming? Long time no see! And your sister studies here too, what a coincidence.

xiaoming 陈教授好！您还是那么有学问。最近在忙什么？
Chénjiàoshòu hǎo nín háishi nàme yǒu xuéwen zuìjìn zài máng shénme · Hello, Professor Chen! As learned as ever. What are you busy with these days?

professor chen 下个月我们历史学会要办一个研讨会，暑假还要给孩子们办一个少儿夏令营。
xià gè yuè wǒmen lìshǐ xuéhuì yào bàn yí gè yántǎo huì shǔjià hái yào gěi háizimen bàn yí gè shàoér xiàlìngyíng · Next month our history society is holding a seminar, and in the summer we're running a camp for children.

little sister 我能去夏令营当老师吗？我想把学到的东西传授给孩子们。
wǒ néng qù xiàlìngyíng dāng lǎoshī ma wǒ xiǎng bǎ xué dào de dōngxi chuánshòu gěi háizimen · Could I teach at the camp? I'd love to pass on what I've learned to kids.

professor chen 好啊！不过名额不多，而且夏令营纪律很严格，晚上十点以后不得出门。
hǎo a búguò míngé bù duō érqiě xiàlìngyíng jìlǜ hěn yángé wǎnshang shí diǎn yǐhòu bùdé chūmén · Great! But places are limited, and the camp is strict: nobody goes out after ten.

little sister 没问题！不让出门也好，我正好早点睡。
méi wèntí bú ràng chūmén yěhǎo wǒ zhènghǎo zǎo diǎn shuì · No problem! Staying in is fine by me, I'll get an early night.

xiaoming 这个好消息把她高兴坏了。陈教授，以后就麻烦您啦！
zhège hǎo xiāoxi bǎ tā gāoxìng huài le Chénjiàoshòu yǐhòu jiù máfan nín la · This news has made her day. Professor Chen, thanks in advance for looking after her!

good to know · 不得 is the word of rules and signs: 不得吸烟 "no smoking". In speech, say 不许 or 不能. 念书 is a homely word for being at school or studying; 就读 is the formal one you see in profiles.

Plans change. With 也好 you can now shrug, smile and make the best of it, in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 36 job hunting

Talk about looking for a job: posts, skills, pay and benefits, and say you thought about it over and over.

Job hunting has its own vocabulary, and you'll need it for adverts, interviews and chats with friends.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
求职	qiúzhí	to look for a job	毕业生求职的压力越来越大。 Graduates face more and more pressure finding jobs.
招	zhāo	to recruit; to beckon	我们公司正在招新员工。 Our company is hiring new staff.
招收	zhāoshōu	to recruit, take on	这家{=(measure word)}公司每年招收一百名大学生。 The company takes on a hundred graduates every year.
录用	lùyòng	to hire	恭喜你，你被录用了！ Congratulations, you've got the job!
用人	yòngrén	to employ people	这家{=(measure word)}公司用人最重视能力。 This company values ability above all when hiring.
人事	rénshì	personnel, HR	有问题可以去找人事部门。 If you have a problem, go to HR.
简介	jiǎnjiè	brief introduction, profile	网上有这家{=(measure word)}公司的简介。 There's a profile of the company online.
特长	tècháng	special skill, strength	你有什么特长? What are your special skills?
才能	cáinéng	talent, ability	他在音乐方面很有才能。 He has a real gift for music.
潜力	qiánlì	potential	这个年轻人很有潜力。 This young man has a lot of potential.
杰出	jiéchū	outstanding	她是一位杰出的科学家。 She's an outstanding scientist.
时机	shíjī	the right moment, timing	现在还不是辞职的好时机。 Now isn't the right time to quit.
机遇	jīyù	opportunity	大城市有更多的机遇。 Big cities offer more opportunities.
兼职	jiānzhí	part-time job; to moonlight	上大学的时候，我做过{guo}很多兼职。 At university I did lots of part-time jobs.
白领	báilǐng	white-collar worker	很多白领每天在办公室工作十个小时。 Many office workers spend ten hours a day at their desks.
职位	zhíwèi	post, position	他申请了一个经理的职位。 He applied for a manager's position.
职务	zhíwù	post, duties	他在公司担任什么职务? What's his role at the company?

职员	zhíyuán	office worker, staff member	银行职员很耐心地帮我开了账户。 The bank clerk patiently helped me open an account.
岗位	gǎngwèi	post, job	每个|人都应该做好自己岗位上的工作。 Everyone should do their own job well.
薪水	xīnshui	salary	这份工作薪水不高，但很有意思。 This job doesn't pay much, but it's interesting.
福利	fúlì	benefits, welfare	这家{=(measure word)}公司的福利很好，每年有二十天假。 The benefits are great: twenty days off a year.
从业	cóngyè	to work in (a trade)	他从业十年，经验很丰富。 He's been in the trade ten years and has plenty of experience.
同行	tóngháng	people in the same trade	同行之间也可以互相学习。 People in the same line of work can learn from each other.
算是	suànshì	to count as, more or less	这份工作算是不错了。 This job is pretty decent, all things considered.

pattern 左想右想: over and over, every which way

左 verb A 右 verb B

左A右B puts two verbs after 左 "left" and 右 "right": 左想右想 (in writing 左思右想) "think it over and over", 左看右看 "look from every angle", 左等右等 "wait and wait". A second clause, often with 还是 or 就是, says how it ended.

我左等右等，他就是不来。 **wǒ zuǒ děng yòu děng tā jiùshì bù lái** I waited and waited, but he just didn't show up.

她左挑右选，最后买了最便宜的。 **tā zuǒ tiāo yòu xuǎn zuìhòu mǎi le zuì piányi de** She picked and chose for ages, then bought the cheapest one.

我左想右想，还是觉得现在不是好时机。 **wǒ zuǒ xiǎng yòu xiǎng háishi juéde xiànzài bú shì hǎo shíjī** I've gone over it again and again, and I still think now isn't the right time.

dialogue an internship?

little sister 安娜，我想找一个暑假实习，可是左想右想，不知道该申请哪儿。
Ānnà wǒ xiǎng zhǎo yí gè shǔjià shíxí kěshì zuǒ xiǎng yòu xiǎng bù zhīdào gāi shēnqǐng nǎr · Anna, I want a summer internship, but I've been going round in circles about where to apply.

anna 恰好我们公司正在招实习生！人事部门昨天刚在网上发了消息。
qiàhǎo wǒmen gōngsī zhèngzài zhāo shíxí shēng rénshì bùmén zuótiān gāng zài wǎngshang fā le xiāoxi · As it happens, my company is hiring interns! HR posted it online yesterday.

little sister 真的吗？你们公司用人要求高不高？人家只是个大学生。
zhēn de ma nǐmen gōngsī yòngrén yāoqiú gāo bu gāo rénjia zhǐshì gè dàxuéshēng · Really? Are they very demanding? I'm just a student, you know.

anna 我们刘经理最重视潜力和才能，不太在意经验。
wǒmen Liújīnglǐ zuì zhòngshì qiánlì hé cáinéng bú tài zàiyì jīngyàn · Manager Liu cares most about potential and talent, not so much experience.

little sister 我会写东西，也会做视频，这算是特长吗？
wǒ huì xiě dōngxi yě huì zuò shìpín zhè suànshì tècháng ma · I can write and make videos. Do those count as strengths?

anna 当然算！你先看看公司的简介，再写一份简历。
dāngrán suàn nǐ xiān kàn kan gōngsī de jiǎnjiè zài xiě yí fèn jiǎnlì · Of course! Read the company profile first, then write your CV.

little sister 那薪水和福利怎么样？我同学做兼职，一个小时才二十块。
nà xīnshui hé fúlì zěnmeyàng wǒ tóngxué zuò jiānzhí yí gè xiǎoshí cái èrshí kuài · And the pay and benefits? My classmate's part-time job pays only twenty yuan an hour.

anna 实习生的薪水不高，但这是一个很好的机遇。很多杰出的同行都是从实习开始的。
shíxí shēng de xīnshui bù gāo dàn zhè shì yí gè hěn hǎo de jīyù hěn duō jiéchū de tóngháng dōu shì cóng shíxí kāishǐ de · Interns aren't paid much, but it's a great opportunity. Lots of the best people in our field started as interns.

little sister 要是没被录用呢？
yàoshi méi bèi lùyòng ne · What if I don't get it?

anna 被拒绝了就被拒绝了，你还年轻，机会多的是！
bèi jùjué le jiù bèi jùjué le nǐ hái niánqīng jīhuì duō de shì · If they say no, they say no. You're young; there are plenty more chances!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

杰
jié
outstanding

岗
gǎng
post (guard post)

good to know · 人家 here is the playful "me": 人家只是个大学生, "I'm only a student, you know!" You met it on day 17. Job adverts use 招: 招聘 "recruit", 招人 "hiring", 招实习生 "interns wanted".

You can now read a job advert, talk about pay and perks, and help a friend stop going round in circles.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 37 at the office

Handle office life: reports, replies, deadlines and feedback, and complain about someone fussing over this and that.

Most of a working day is emails, deadlines and reporting back. These are the words you'll hear at any Chinese office.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
打卡	dǎkǎ	to clock in	我们公司早上九点前要打卡。 At our company you have to clock in before nine.
值班	zhíbān	to be on duty	今天晚上我值班，不能回家吃饭。 I'm on duty tonight, so I can't come home for dinner.
繁忙	fánmáng	busy	年底是工作最繁忙的时候。 The end of the year is the busiest time at work.
事务	shìwù	affairs, business	她负责公司的日常事务。 She handles the company's day-to-day business.
事项	shìxiàng	item, matter	请注意以下几个事项。 Please note the following points.
附件	fùjiàn	attachment	我把报告放在邮件的附件里了。 I've put the report in the email attachment.
传真	chuánzhēn	fax	现在很少有人用传真了。 Hardly anyone uses fax any more.
档案	dàngàn	file, records	公司的档案都放在这个房间里。 All the company records are kept in this room.
图表	túbiǎo	chart	用图表说明问题，大家一看就懂。 Explain it with a chart and everyone gets it at a glance.
汇报	huìbào	to report (to a superior)	下午我要向经理汇报工作。 This afternoon I'm reporting to my manager.
答复	dáfù	to reply	我们会在三天内给您答复。 We'll give you an answer within three days.
反馈	fǎnkuì	feedback; to give feedback	谢谢你的反馈，我们会马上改。 Thanks for the feedback; we'll fix it right away.
听取	tīngqǔ	to listen to (views)	经理很愿意听取大家的意见。 The manager is happy to hear everyone's views.
征求	zhēngqiú	to ask for (opinions)	做决定之前，他征求了大家的意见。 Before deciding, he asked for everyone's opinion.
采纳	cǎinà	to adopt (a suggestion)	公司采纳了她的建议。 The company took up her suggestion.

传达	chuándá	to pass on (a message)	请把这个消息传达给每一位同事。 Please pass this on to every colleague.
指示	zhǐshì	instructions; to instruct	我们按照经理的指示去做。 We're doing it the way the manager said.
指定	zhǐdìng	to appoint, designate	请在指定的时间到会议室。 Please come to the meeting room at the set time.
截止	jiézhǐ	to close (deadline)	报名明天下午五点截止。 Registration closes at five tomorrow afternoon.
期限	qīxiàn	deadline, time limit	这个项目|的期限是月底。 The deadline for this project is the end of the month.
拖延	tuōyán	to put off, delay	事情不要拖延，今天能做的就今天做。 Don't put things off: do today what you can do today.
延期	yánqī	to postpone	因为下雨，比赛延期了。 The match was postponed because of rain.
相应	xiāngyìng	corresponding(ly)	工作多了，工资也应该相应提高。 If there's more work, pay should go up to match.
不止	bùzhǐ	more than, not just	这样的问题不止一次了。 This isn't the first time this has happened.

pattern 说这说那: this and that

verb 这 verb 那

Say one verb twice, with 这 and then 那: 说这说那 "talk about this and that", 想这想那 "worry about everything", 买这买那 "buy all sorts". It usually suggests a bit too much: fussing, fretting or rambling.

妈妈总是担心这担心那。 **māma zǒngshì dānxīn zhè dānxīn nà** Mum is always worrying about something.

一到超市，孩子就要这要那。 **yí dào chāoshì háizi jiù yào zhè yào nà** As soon as they get to the supermarket, the kids want everything.

他净说这说那，正事一件也没做。 **tā jìng shuō zhè shuō nà zhèng shì yí jiàn yě méi zuò** He just talks about this and that and never gets anything done.

dialogue deadline day

manager liu 安娜，客户的答复来了吗？他们说今天下午截止。
Ānnà kèhù de dáfù lái le ma tāmen shuō jīntiān xiàwǔ jiézhǐ · Anna, has the client replied? They said this afternoon was the deadline.

anna 还没有。我上午发了邮件，附件里有报告和图表。
hái méiyǒu wǒ shàngwǔ fā le yóujiàn fùjiàn lǐ yǒu bàogào hé túbiǎo · Not yet. I sent the email this morning, with the report and charts attached.

manager liu 好。他们大都喜欢看图表，这样更清楚。
hǎo tāmen dàdū xǐhuan kàn túbiǎo zhèyàng gèng qīngchu · Good. They mostly like charts: it's clearer that way.

anna 客户问这问那，问题不止一个，有些事项我不太清楚，能当面向您汇报吗？
kèhù wèn zhè wèn nà wèntí bùzhǐ yí gè yǒuxiē shìxiàng wǒ bú tài qīngchu néng dāngmiàn xiàng nín huìbào ma · The client is asking about all sorts of things, and I'm not clear on some points. Can I report to you in person?

manager liu 当然。另外，老板刚传达了一个指示：这个项目不能再延期了。
dāngrán lìngwài lǎobǎn gāng chuándá le yí gè zhǐshì zhège xiàngmù bù néng zài yánqī le · Of course. Also, the boss has just passed down an instruction: this project can't be postponed again.

anna 可是期限只剩三天了，客户的反馈还没来。
kěshì qīxiàn zhǐ shèng sān tiān le kèhù de fǎnkuì hái méi lái · But there are only three days left, and we still don't have the client's feedback.

manager liu 那就主动打电话去征求他们的意见，别拖延。
nà jiù zhǔdòng dǎ diànhuà qù zhēngqiú tāmen de yìjiàn bié tuōyán · Then call them yourself and ask what they think. Don't wait.

anna 好的。我还有一个建议：以后每个项目都指定一个人跟客户联系。
hǎo de wǒ hái yǒu yí gè jiànyì yǐhòu měi gè xiàngmù dōu zhǐdìng yí gè rén gēn kèhù liánxì · OK. And I have a suggestion: from now on, each project names one person to deal with the client.

manager liu 好主意，我采纳了！工作多了，你的奖金也会相应增加。
hǎo zhǔyi wǒ cǎinà le gōngzuò duō le nǐ de jiǎngjīn yě huì xiāngyìng zēngjiā · Good idea, let's do it! And with more work, your bonus will go up to match.

anna 谢谢刘经理！那今天晚上我值班，顺便把档案也整理好。
xièxie Liújīnglǐ nà jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ zhíbān shùnbiàn bǎ dàngàn yě zhěnglǐ hǎo · Thank you! I'm on duty tonight, so I'll sort out the files while I'm at it.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

纳
nà
to accept

馈
kuì
to give

good to know · 汇报 is reporting up to a boss; to report news it's 报道. Hearing your boss say 向我汇报一下 means "give me an update". 答复 is a formal reply to a request; for an everyday answer use 回答 or 回复. 另 is also an adverb, "separately, in another way": 另有安排 "has other plans", 另想办法 "find another way", 另行通知 "will be announced separately".

Deadlines, replies, feedback: you can now get through a whole working day in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 38 teamwork

Talk about roles in a team, who leads and who helps, and describe an effort with 一番.

Teamwork talk is everywhere: meetings, project plans, and every job interview question about working with others.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
番	fān	a round, an effort (measure word)	经过一番努力，他终于成功了。 After a real effort, he finally succeeded.
分工	fēngōng	to divide the work	我们分工合作，一个|人写，一个|人画。 We split the work: one writes, one draws.
协调	xiétiáo	to coordinate; in harmony	她负责协调各个部门的工作。 She coordinates the work of all the departments.
协助	xiézhù	to assist	请协助王老师准备这次活动。 Please help Teacher Wang prepare the event.
辅助	fǔzhù	to assist; supporting	机器只能辅助医生，不能代替医生。 Machines can only assist doctors, not replace them.
助理	zhùlǐ	assistant	她是总经理的助理。 She's the general manager's assistant.
助手	zhùshǒu	helper	手机已经变成了我们生活中的好助手。 Phones have become our trusty helpers.
副	fù	deputy, vice-	他是我们公司的副{fu4-6}经理。 He's our company's deputy manager.
主管	zhǔguǎn	supervisor; to be in charge	我的主管人很好，从来不发脾气。 My supervisor is lovely and never loses her temper.
上级	shàngjí	superior, higher-up	这件事要先向上级汇报。 This has to be reported to your superior first.
代理	dàilǐ	to act for; agent	经理不在的时候，由她代理经理的工作。 When the manager is away, she stands in for him.
顾问	gùwèn	adviser, consultant	公司请了一位法律顾问。 The company has hired a legal adviser.
带领	dàilǐng	to lead	刘经理带领我们完成了这个项目。 Manager Liu led us through this project.
引导	yǐndǎo	to guide	好老师会引导学生自己思考。 Good teachers guide students to think for themselves.
激励	jīlì	to motivate	她的成功激励了很多年轻人。 Her success has motivated many young people.
服从	fúcóng	to obey, comply	少数服从多数。 The minority goes along with the majority.

职责	zhízé	duty, responsibility	保护病人的安全是医生的职责。 Keeping patients safe is a doctor's duty.
出力	chūlì	to pitch in, contribute	大家都为这次活动出力了。 Everyone did their bit for the event.
踏实	tāshi	steady, dependable; at ease	他工作很踏实，大家都信赖他。 He's a steady worker and everyone trusts him.
配备	pèibèi	to equip	每个教室都配备了电脑。 Every classroom is equipped with computers.
调动	diàodòng	to transfer (a post)	他下{=next}个月要调动到南方工作。 He's being transferred to the south next month.
巧妙	qiǎomiào	clever, ingenious	他巧妙地解决了这个问题。 He solved the problem cleverly.
恰当	qiàdàng	appropriate, fitting	你这个词用得很恰当。 You chose exactly the right word.
用处	yòngchù	use	这个东西有什么用处? What's this thing for?

pattern 一番: a round of effort

verb | 了 | 一番 | or 经过一番 | effort

番 counts rounds of effort or talk: 一番努力 "a real effort", 讨论了一番 "talked it through", 打扫了一番 "gave it a good clean". It is nearly always 一番, and it suggests the thing took time and care.

经理把我们的方案夸奖了一番。 **jīnglǐ bǎ wǒmen de fāngàn kuājiǎng le yì fān** The manager gave our plan a good bit of praise.

经过一番讨论，大家同意了他的意见。 **jīngguò yì fān tǎolùn dàjiā tóngyì le tā de yìjiàn** After some discussion, everyone agreed with him.

调动以前，他把工作仔细安排了一番。 **diàodòng yǐqián tā bǎ gōngzuò zǐxì ānpái le yì fān** Before his transfer, he carefully sorted out all his work.

dialogue the kick-off meeting

manager liu 今天的会主要是分工。我一再说过，这个项目很重要。周博士是我们的顾问。
jīntiān de huì zhǔyào shì fēngōng wǒ yízài shuō guo zhège xiàngmù hěn zhòngyào Zhōubóshì shì wǒmen de gùwèn · Today's meeting is about dividing the work. As I keep saying, this project matters. Dr Zhou is our adviser.

dr zhou 大家好。我负责辅助你们，把环保方面的知识讲清楚。
dàjiā hǎo wǒ fùzé fǔzhù nǐmen bǎ huánbǎo fāngmiàn de zhīshi jiǎng qīngchu · Hello, everyone. I'm here to support you and explain the environmental science.

manager liu 安娜，这次你代理项目主管，负责协调各个部门。
Ānnà zhè cì nǐ dàilǐ xiàngmù zhǔguǎn fùzé xiétiáo gègè bùmén · Anna, you'll be acting project lead this time, coordinating all the departments.

anna 我以前没当过主管，一时有点紧张。
wǒ yǐqián méi dāng guo zhǔguǎn yìshí yǒudiǎn jǐnzhāng · I've never been a lead before. I'm a bit nervous just now.

manager liu 别担心，我会一步步引导你。公司还会给你配备一个助理。
bié dānxīn wǒ huì yí bù bu yǐndǎo nǐ gōngsī hái huì gěi nǐ pèibèi yí gè zhùlǐ · Don't worry, I'll guide you step by step. And the company will give you an assistant.

dr zhou 我建议先给大家讲讲这个项目有什么用处，这样更能激励大家。
wǒ jiànyì xiān gěi dàjiā jiǎng jiang zhège xiàngmù yǒu shénme yòngchù zhèyàng gèng néng jīlì dàjiā · I suggest we first explain what the project is for. That will motivate people more.

anna 好主意！那谁负责向上级汇报？
hǎo zhǔyi nà shéi fùzé xiàng shàngjí huìbào · Good idea! And who reports to the higher-ups?

manager liu 我来，这是我的职责。大家有不同意见可以提，不用什么都服从我。
wǒ lái zhè shì wǒ de zhízé dàjiā yǒu bù tóng yìjiàn kěyǐ tí búyòng shénme dōu fúcóng wǒ · Me, that's my job. If you disagree, say so: you don't have to just obey me.

dr zhou 这个安排很巧妙，也很恰当，每个人都能出力。
zhège ānpái hěn qiǎomiào yě hěn qiàdàng měi gè rén dōu néng chūlì · That's a clever, sensible set-up: everyone gets to contribute.

anna 经过这一番讨论，我心里踏实多了。
jīngguò zhè yì fān tǎolùn wǒ xīnlǐ tāshi duō le · After this discussion, I feel much more settled.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

踏
tā
to step

good to know · 助理 is a job title (an assistant); 助手 is anyone or anything that helps you, even an app. Job titles with 副 are deputies: 副经理, 副教授 associate professor, 副校长 deputy head.

You can now talk about who does what in a team, and give credit for a real effort with **一番**.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 39 plans and reviews

Talk about plans, progress and performance reviews, and grumble about bad timing.

Plans, progress reports and the year-end review are part of every job, and of every catch-up with working friends.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
策划	cèhuà	to plan (an event or campaign)	这次活动是由她策划的。 This event was planned by her.
规划	guīhuà	plan, planning	你对未来有什么规划? What are your plans for the future?
筹备	chóubèi	to prepare, organise	我们正在筹备一个大型展览。 We're organising a big exhibition.
定位	dìngwèi	positioning; to locate	这个产品的定位是年轻人。 This product is aimed at young people.
流程	liúchéng	process, procedure	新员工要先了解公司的工作流程。 New staff first need to learn how things work at the company.
进度	jìndù	progress, schedule	项目|的进度比计划慢了一点。 The project is a little behind schedule.
进展	jìnzhǎn	progress; to make headway	双方的合作有了新的进展。 There's been new progress in the partnership.
成效	chéngxiào	results, effect	新方法很快就有了成效。 The new method soon got results.
评估	pínggū	to assess, evaluate	我们需要评估这个计划的风险。 We need to assess the risks of this plan.
考核	kǎohé	to appraise (performance)	每个员工年底都要接受考核。 Every employee has an appraisal at the end of the year.
年度	niándù	year (annual)	这是我们公司的年度报告。 This is our company's annual report.
年终	niánzhōng	year-end	公司年终会给大家发奖金。 The company pays everyone a year-end bonus.
工地	gōngdì	building site	工地上的工人每天都很辛苦。 The workers on the building site work hard every day.
高层	gāocéng	senior management; high-rise	这个决定是公司高层做的。 This decision was made by senior management.
会计	kuàijì	accountant, accounting	她在一家{=(measure word)}公司当会计。 She's an accountant at a company.
首要	shǒuyào	first, chief	安全是首要的问题。 Safety comes first.

优先	yōuxiān	to have priority	老人和孩子可以优先上车。 Older people and children can board first.
正规	zhèngguī	proper, regular	一定要去正规的医院看病。 Always see a doctor at a proper hospital.
中等	zhōngděng	medium, average	他个子中等，不胖不瘦。 He's of medium height, neither fat nor thin.
一流	yīliú	first-class	这家{=(measure word)}酒店的服务是一流的。 The service at this hotel is first-class.
预料	yùliào	to predict; expectation	结果跟我们预料的一样。 The result was just what we expected.
料	liào	to expect, guess	我早就料{liao4-2}到他会迟到。 I knew he'd be late.
加以	jiāyǐ	to deal with (formal)	这些问题需要加以解决。 These problems need to be dealt with.
益处	yìchù	benefit	每天运动对身体有很多益处。 Daily exercise does your body a lot of good.
易于	yìyú	easy to	这种方法简单，易于操作。 This method is simple and easy to use.

pattern 早不…晚不…: of all the times!

早不 X，晚不 X，就 + the worst moment

早不X，晚不X complains about bad timing: "it didn't X earlier, it didn't X later…". Then 就 (or 正好) names the awkward moment it chose. Use the same verb in both halves. You met it on day 20.

他早不来晚不来，就在我们要走的时候来了。 **tā zǎo bu lái wǎn bù lái jiù zài wǒmen yào zǒu de shíhou lái le** Of all times, he turned up just as we were leaving.

手机早不响晚不响，就在开会的时候响了。 **shǒujī zǎo bù xiǎng wǎn bù xiǎng jiù zài kāihuì de shíhou xiǎng le** My phone had to ring right in the middle of the meeting.

工地上的机器早不停晚不停，就在最忙的时候停了。 **gōngdì shàng de jīqì zǎo bù tíng wǎn bù tíng jiù zài zuì máng de shíhou tíng le** The machines on the site broke down at the busiest moment.

dialogue the year-end review

manager liu 安娜，今天是你的年度考核。先说说你今年负责的项目吧。
Ānnà jīntiān shì nǐ de niándù kǎohé xiān shuō shuo nǐ jīnnián fùzé de xiàngmù ba · Anna, it's your annual review today. Start with the projects you ran this year.

anna 好的。今年我主要策划了两个项目。第一个进展很顺利，第二个的进度慢了一点。
hǎo de jīnnián wǒ zhǔyào cèhuà le liǎng gè xiàngmù dì yī gè jìnzhǎn hěn shùnlì dì èr gè de jìndù màn le yìdiǎn · OK. I planned two main projects this year. The first went smoothly; the second is a little behind.

manager liu 为什么慢了？
wèi shénme màn le · Why is it behind?

anna 客户的要求一直在变，这是我们没有预料到的。
kèhù de yāoqiú yìzhí zài biàn zhè shì wǒmen méiyǒu yùliào dào de · The client kept changing what they wanted, which we hadn't foreseen.

manager liu 我早就料到会这样。不过你处理得很好，项目的成效大家都看到了。
wǒ zǎo jiù liào dào huì zhèyàng búguò nǐ chǔlǐ de hěn hǎo xiàngmù de chéngxiào dàjiā dōu kàn dào le · I expected as much. But you handled it well: everyone has seen the results.

anna 谢谢！明年我想让工作流程更正规一点，先评估风险，再加以安排。
xièxie míngnián wǒ xiǎng ràng gōngzuò liúchéng gèng zhèngguī yìdiǎn xiān pínggū fēngxiǎn zài jiāyǐ ānpái · Thank you! Next year I'd like our process to be more structured: assess the risks first, then plan.

manager liu 这个想法不错。公司高层也说，明年要把客户放在首要位置。
zhège xiǎngfǎ búcuò gōngsī gāocéng yě shuō míngnián yào bǎ kèhù fàng zài shǒuyào wèizhì · Good thinking. Senior management also says clients come first next year.

anna 那我们产品的定位要不要改？
nà wǒmen chǎnpǐn de dìngwèi yào búyào gǎi · So should we change who our product is aimed at?

manager liu 未必要改。先筹备一个小测试，有了数据再说。
wèibì yào gǎi xiān chóubèi yí gè xiǎo cèshì yǒu le shùjù zàishuō · Not necessarily. Let's set up a small test first and decide when we have data.

anna 明白了。这样做易于发现问题，对公司也有益处。
míngbai le zhèyàng zuò yìyú fāxiàn wèntí duì gōngsī yě yǒu yìchù · Understood. That makes problems easier to spot, and it's good for the company.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

策
cè
scheme

筹
chóu
to plan, raise

good to know · In 会计 kuàijì, 会 is read kuài. It's one of the few words where 会 isn't huì. Many Chinese companies pay a 年终奖 year-end bonus before Spring Festival, so people can go home with gifts.

You can now sit a performance review in Chinese, and make it sound like you planned it all along.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 40 mission: the job interview

Chinese HSK 6 in 90 days
unit 5 · school & work

Follow a five-part story about applying for an internship, using the school and work words of unit 5.

An interview pulls together everything from this unit: studies, strengths, teamwork, plans and deadlines.

chapter 1 the job notice

little sister 安娜，听说你们公司在招实习生？
Ānnà tīngshuō nǐmen gōngsī zài zhāo shíxíshēng · Anna, I hear your company is recruiting interns?

anna 对，人事部门刚发了招聘通知，我念给你听。
duì rénshì bùmén gāng fā le zhāopìn tōngzhī wǒ niàn gěi nǐ tīng · Yes, HR has just put out a job notice. I'll read it to you.

anna 本公司是一家正规的环保公司，现在招收暑假实习生三名。
běn gōngsī shì yì jiā zhèngguī de huánbǎo gōngsī xiànzài zhāoshōu shǔjià shíxíshēng sān míng · (reading) "We are a properly established environmental company, now taking on three summer interns."

anna 实习岗位：项目助理。主要职责是协助项目主管处理日常事务。
shíxí gǎngwèi xiàngmù zhùlǐ zhǔyào zhízé shì xiézhù xiàngmù zhǔguǎn chǔlǐ rìcháng shìwù · "Post: project assistant. Main duties: assisting the project supervisor with day-to-day business."

little sister 这个职位要求特定的专业吗？
zhège zhíwèi yāoqiú tèdìng de zhuānyè ma · Does the position require a particular major?

anna 不要求。你听：高等学校在读学生都可以申请，本科、专科、文科、理科都可以。
bù yāoqiú nǐ tīng gāoděng xuéxiào zài dú xuéshēng dōu kěyǐ shēnqǐng běnkē zhuānkē wénkē lǐkē dōu kěyǐ · No. Listen: "Open to all students now at institutions of higher education: degree or vocational college, arts or sciences."

anna 面试分书面和口头两部分，有相关经验者优先。
miànshì fēn shūmiàn hé kǒutóu liǎng bùfen yǒu xiāngguān jīngyàn zhě yōuxiān · "The interview has a written part and an oral part. Applicants with relevant experience will be given priority."

anna 实习结束时对表现加以考核，福利和正式职员一样。
shíxí jiéshù shí duì biǎoxiàn jiāyǐ kǎohé fúlì hé zhèngshì zhíyuán yíyàng · "At the end of the internship, performance will be appraised. Benefits are the same as for regular staff."

anna 报名期限：本周五，不得延期。
bàomíng qīxiàn běn zhōu wǔ bùdé yánqī · "Deadline for applications: this Friday. No extensions."

little sister 才三个名额？求职的人肯定不止一百个。
cái sān gè míngé qiúzhí de rén kěndìng bùzhǐ yìbǎi gè · Only three places? There must be more than a hundred people applying.

anna 人多也好，人少也好，机遇来了就要抓住。
rén duō yěhǎo rén shǎo yěhǎo jīyù lái le jiù yào zhuāzhù · Lots of people or only a few, when an opportunity comes along, you grab it.

anna 而且下半年还要做年度评估，项目进展得快，我们正缺人手。
érqiě xiàbànnián hái yào zuò niándù pínggū xiàngmù jìnzhǎn de kuài wǒmen zhèng quē rénshǒu · Besides, there's the annual review in the second half of the year, and the project is moving fast. We're short of hands.

chapter 2 the cv

little sister 我把简历写好了，可是左看右看，总觉得不够好。
wǒ bǎ jiǎnlì xiě hǎo le kěshì zuǒ kàn yòu kàn zǒng juéde búgòu hǎo · I've written my CV, but I keep looking it over and it never seems good enough.

anna 我看看……你的必修科目成绩都很优异，可是特长写得太少了。
wǒ kàn kan nǐ de bìxiū kēmù chéngjì dōu hěn yōuyì kěshì tècháng xiě de tài shǎo le · Let me see… your grades in the compulsory subjects are all excellent, but you've written very little about your strengths.

little sister 我是理科生，不过还选修了陈教授开设的历史课。这个也要写吗？
wǒ shì lǐkē shēng búguò hái xuǎnxiū le Chénjiàoshòu kāishè de lìshǐ kè zhège yě yào xiě ma · I'm a science student, but I also took Professor Chen's history course as an elective. Should I put that in too?

anna 要写。课程本身不重要，重要的是说明你好学。
yào xiě kèchéng běnshēn bú zhòngyào zhòngyào de shì shuōmíng nǐ hàoxué · Yes. The course itself doesn't matter; what matters is that it shows you're eager to learn.

little sister 陈教授很有学问。我还帮他整理过书籍，做了一份目录。
Chénjiàoshòu hěn yǒu xuéwen wǒ hái bāng tā zhěnglǐ guo shūjí zuò le yí fèn mùlù · Professor Chen is very learned. I also helped him sort out his books and made a catalogue.

little sister 我周末给中学生做补习辅导，这也算是兼职经验吗？
wǒ zhōumò gěi zhōngxuéshēng zuò bǔxí fǔdǎo zhè yě suànshì jiānzhí jīngyàn ma · At weekends I tutor secondary-school students. Does that count as part-time work experience?

anna 当然算！带孩子要有耐心，还要讲纪律。
dāngrán suàn dài háizi yào yǒu nàixīn hái yào jiǎng jìlǜ · Of course it does! Working with kids takes patience, and discipline too.

little sister 我还在少儿夏令营给学员讲解过初等数学。
wǒ hái zài shàoér xiàlìngyíng gěi xuéyuán jiǎngjiě guo chūděng shùxué · I also taught elementary maths to the campers at a children's summer camp.

anna 那你要写清楚：你怎么把枯燥的难点讲得有意思。
nà nǐ yào xiě qīngchu nǐ zěnme bǎ kūzào de nándiǎn jiǎng de yǒu yìsi · Then spell it out: how you make dry, difficult points interesting.

little sister 我一般先示范一遍，再耐心解答他们的问题。
wǒ yìbān xiān shìfàn yí biàn zài nàixīn jiědá tāmen de wèntí · I usually demonstrate once first, then patiently answer their questions.

anna 这个办法很巧妙，这就是你的才能！
zhège bànfǎ hěn qiǎomiào zhè jiùshì nǐ de cáinéng · That's a clever method, and that's exactly your talent!

anna 简历要短，易于阅读。截止日期是周五，别拖延。
jiǎnlì yào duǎn yìyú yuèdú jiézhǐ rìqī shì zhōu wǔ bié tuōyán · Keep the CV short and easy to read. The deadline is Friday, so don't put it off.

chapter 3 the practice interview

xiaoming 我来演刘经理！请先做一个简单的自我介绍。
wǒ lái yǎn Liújīnglǐ qǐng xiān zuò yí gè jiǎndān de zìwǒ jièshào · I'll play Manager Liu! Please start with a short introduction.

little sister 大家好，我叫……哥哥，不许笑！
dàjiā hǎo wǒ jiào gēge bùxǔ xiào · Hello everyone, my name is... Don't you dare laugh!

xiaoming 瞧你紧张的！面试的人未必都很严厉，放松点。
qiáo nǐ jǐnzhāng de miànshì de rén wèibì dōu hěn yánlì fàngsōng diǎn · Look how nervous you are! Interviewers aren't necessarily strict. Relax a bit.

little sister 好吧。我在北京一所大学念书，学的是理科。
hǎo ba wǒ zài Běijīng yì suǒ dàxué niànshū xué de shì lǐkē · OK. I study science at a university in Beijing.

little sister 我做事踏实、细致，学习用功，也很自律。
wǒ zuò shì tāshi xìzhì xuéxí yònggōng yě hěn zìlǜ · I'm dependable and careful in what I do, I work hard at my studies, and I'm self-disciplined.

xiaoming 你毕业以后打算升学还是工作?
nǐ bìyè yǐhòu dǎsuàn shēngxué háishi gōngzuò · After you graduate, do you plan to go on studying or to work?

little sister 先工作两年，积累经验，以后再读一个更高的学位。
xiān gōngzuò liǎng nián jīlěi jīngyàn yǐhòu zài dú yí gè gèng gāo de xuéwèi · Work for two years first and build up experience, then study for a higher degree later.

xiaoming 如果上级的决定不对，你会怎么办?
rúguǒ shàngjí de juédìng bú duì nǐ huì zěnme bàn · What would you do if your superior made the wrong decision?

little sister 上级说的未必都对。我会先讲我的想法，定了以后就服从。
shàngjí shuō de wèibì dōu duì wǒ huì xiān jiǎng wǒ de xiǎngfǎ dìng le yǐhòu jiù fúcóng · What a superior says isn't necessarily always right. I'd give my view first, and once it's decided, I'd go along with it.

xiaoming 回答得很恰当，可是你说这说那的，太长了！
huídá de hěn qiàdàng kěshì nǐ shuō zhè shuō nà de tài cháng le · A fitting answer, but you go on about this and that. It's too long!

little sister 哥哥，你别教训我了！我已经精心准备了一个星期。
gēge nǐ bié jiàoxùn wǒ le wǒ yǐjīng jīngxīn zhǔnbèi le yí gè xīngqī · Stop lecturing me! I've been preparing carefully for a whole week.

xiaoming 好好好。我再三提醒你：到时候千万别马虎。
Hǎohǎohǎo wǒ zàisān tíxǐng nǐ dào shíhou qiānwàn bié mǎhu · OK, OK. I'll say it one more time: don't get careless on the day.

chapter 4 the real thing

manager liu 欢迎！你的导师推荐了你。说说，为什么想来我们公司实习？
huānyíng nǐ de dǎoshī tuījiàn le nǐ shuō shuo wèi shénme xiǎng lái wǒmen gōngsī shíxí · Welcome! Your tutor recommended you. So tell me: why do you want to intern with us?

little sister 你们的定位很清楚：做一流的环保公司。在这里实习，对我很有益处。
nǐmen de dìngwèi hěn qīngchu zuò yìliú de huánbǎo gōngsī zài zhèlǐ shíxí duì wǒ hěn yǒu yìchù · Your positioning is very clear: to be a first-class environmental company. Interning here would do me a lot of good.

manager liu 我从业十几年了，同行都说我们要求高。你怕不怕？
wǒ cóngyè shí jǐ nián le tónghán dōu shuō wǒmen yāoqiú gāo nǐ pà bu pà · I've worked in this business for over ten years, and people in the trade all say we're demanding. Does that scare you?

little sister 不怕。我现在只是中等水平，但是我愿意下功夫，也想为团队出力。
bú pà wǒ xiànzài zhǐ shì zhōngděng shuǐpíng dànshì wǒ yuànyì xià gōngfu yě xiǎng wèi tuánduì chūlì · No. I'm only average right now, but I'm willing to put in the effort, and I want to do my part for the team.

manager liu 好。我们用人，首要的是看潜力。你对未来有什么规划？
hǎo wǒmen yòngrén shǒuyào de shì kàn qiánlì nǐ duì wèilái yǒu shénme guīhuà · Good. When we hire, the first thing we look at is potential. What are your plans for the future?

little sister 先打好基础，抓住时机，以后做一个对社会有用的人。
xiān dǎ hǎo jīchǔ zhuāzhù shíjī yǐhòu zuò yí gè duì shèhuì yǒuyòng de rén · Build a solid foundation first, seize the right moment, and later be someone useful to society.

manager liu 安娜是这个项目的代理主管，你主要协助她。
Ānnà shì zhège xiàngmù de dàilǐ zhǔguǎn nǐ zhǔyào xiézhù tā · Anna is the acting supervisor on this project, and you'd mainly assist her.

dr zhou 我是项目的顾问。我们分工很明确，你主要做辅助工作。
wǒ shì xiàngmù de gùwèn wǒmen fēngōng hěn míngquè nǐ zhǔyào zuò fǔzhù gōngzuò · I'm the project's adviser. The work is clearly divided, and you'd mainly do support work.

dr zhou 比如整理档案、做图表，有时候还要跟我去工地。
bǐrú zhěnglǐ dàngàn zuò túbiǎo yǒu shíhou hái yào gēn wǒ qù gōngdì · Things like keeping the files in order and making charts, and sometimes coming with me to the building site.

little sister 我会做图表！以前帮陈教授筹备研讨会，做过很多。
wǒ huì zuò túbiǎo yǐqián bāng Chénjiàoshòu chóubèi yántǎo huì zuò guo hěn duō · I can do charts! I made lots of them when I helped Professor Chen organise a seminar.

manager liu 很好。我们很重视听取年轻人的意见，好的建议一定采纳。
hěn hǎo wǒmen hěn zhòngshì tīngqǔ niánqīng rén de yìjiàn hǎo de jiànyì yídìng cǎinà · Very good. We make a point of listening to young people's views, and we always adopt good suggestions.

manager liu 实习的薪水不高，但是你会学到很多。一个星期内给你答复。
shíxí de xīnshui bù gāo dànshì nǐ huì xué dào hěn duō yí gè xīngqī nèi gěi nǐ dáfù · The pay isn't high, but you'll learn a lot. We'll give you an answer within a week.

chapter 5 good news

little sister 一个星期了，怎么还没有消息？我左等右等，急死了。
yí gè xīngqī le zěnme hái méiyǒu xiāoxi wǒ zuǒ děng yòu děng jí sǐ le · It's been a week, and still no news. I've waited and waited, I'm going crazy.

ms zhang 没录用也好，暑假在家好好休息。
méi lùyòng yěhǎo shǔjià zài jiā hǎohǎo xiūxi · If you don't get it, that's fine too. You can have a proper rest this summer.

little sister 电话！是人事部门……我被录用了！下个月一号上班！
diànhuà shì rénshì bùmén wǒ bèi lùyòng le xià gè yuè yī hào shàngbān · The phone! It's HR... I got it! I start on the first of next month!

xiaoming 我早就预料到了！经过一番努力，总算成功了！
wǒ zǎo jiù yùliào dào le jīngguò yì fān nǔlì zǒngsuàn chénggōng le · I saw it coming! All that effort, and you finally did it!

ms zhang 你哥哥一再说你能行，果然没错。
nǐ gēge yízài shuō nǐ néng xíng guǒrán méi cuò · Your brother kept saying you could do it, and he was right.

ms zhang 我的女儿真上进！这支钢笔是我毕业典礼上收到的，送给你。
wǒ de nǚér zhēn shàngjìn zhè zhī gāngbǐ shì wǒ bìyè diǎnlǐ shàng shōudào de sòng gěi nǐ · My daughter, always going places! I was given this fountain pen at my graduation ceremony. It's yours now.

little sister 谢谢妈妈！人事部门还发来了一封邮件，我念给你们听。
xièxie māma rénshì bùmén hái fā lái le yì fēng yóujiàn wǒ niàn gěi nǐmen tīng · Thank you, Mum! HR has sent an email too. I'll read it to you.

little sister 欢迎加入！公司会为你配备电脑和文具，请看附件里的注意事项。
huānyíng jiārù gōngsī huì wèi nǐ pèibèi diànnǎo hé wénjù qǐng kàn fùjiàn lǐ de zhùyì shìxiàng · (reading) "Welcome aboard! The company will provide you with a computer and stationery. Please see the points to note in the attachment."

little sister 每天上午九点前打卡，周末不用值班。每周五向主管汇报工作进度。
měi tiān shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn qián dǎkǎ zhōumò búyòng zhíbān měi zhōu wǔ xiàng zhǔguǎn huìbào gōngzuò jìndù · "Clock in before nine every morning; no weekend duty. Every Friday, report on your progress to your supervisor."

little sister 公司已为你指定一位导师，带领你熟悉工作流程。
gōngsī yǐ wèi nǐ zhǐdìng yí wèi dǎoshī dàilǐng nǐ shúxi gōngzuò liúchéng · "The company has assigned you a mentor, who will guide you through how things work."

little sister 上班第一天，刘经理另有安排，由周博士接待你。
shàngbān dì yī tiān Liújīnglǐ lìng yǒu ānpái yóu Zhōubóshì jiēdài nǐ · "On your first day, Manager Liu has other commitments, so Dr Zhou will welcome you."

little sister 谢谢大家！特别是安娜和哥哥，你们是我的榜样。
xièxie dàjiā tèbié shì Ānnà hé gēge nǐmen shì wǒ de bǎngyàng · Thank you, everyone! Especially Anna and you: you're my role models.

Interviews are hard in any language. You've just followed one, start to finish, in HSK 6 Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 41 taking sides

State your position, agree and disagree, and change the subject neatly with 至于 “as for”.

Debates, meetings and dinner-table arguments all need words for taking a side, and for steering the talk.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
至于	zhìyú	as for; to go so far as	我只{zhi3}负责写报告，至于数据，你去问小明吧。 I’m only writing the report. As for the data, ask Xiaoming.
立场	lìchǎng	position, standpoint	每个|人看问题的立场不一样。 Everyone sees things from a different standpoint.
主张	zhǔzhāng	to advocate; position	他主张大家多骑自行车。 He argues that people should cycle more.
赞同	zàntóng	to approve of	我很赞同你的看法。 I fully agree with you.
认同	rèntóng	to identify with, accept	越来越多的人认同这种生活方式。 More and more people identify with this way of life.
认可	rènkě	to approve, recognise	他的能力得到了大家的认可。 His ability has won everyone’s recognition.
认定	rèndìng	to be convinced; to determine	他认定自己是对的，不愿意听别人的意见。 He’s convinced he’s right and won’t listen to anyone.
争论	zhēnglùn	to argue, debate	他们为这个问题争论了一个下午。 They argued about it all afternoon.
争议	zhēngyì	controversy	这个决定引起了很大的争议。 The decision caused a lot of controversy.
质疑	zhìyí	to question, challenge	有人质疑这个数据是否准确。 Some people question whether the data is accurate.
对立	duìlì	to be opposed	两种观点并不是完全对立的。 The two views aren’t completely opposed.
片面	piànmiàn	one-sided	只{zhi3}听一个|人的意见，难免会片面。 If you only listen to one person, you’re bound to be one-sided.
极端	jíduān	extreme	他的看法太极端了。 His views are too extreme.
正面	zhèngmiàn	positive; front	这件事也有正面的影响。 This also has a positive side.
负面	fùmiàn	negative	网上的负面消息太多了。 There’s too much negative news online.
看待	kàndài	to regard, view	你怎么看待这个问题? How do you see this issue?

看重	kànzhòng	to value, set store by	年轻人找工作，越来越看重工作环境。 Young job-seekers care more and more about the working environment.
前者	qiánzhě	the former	一个是钱，一个是时间，我更看重前者。 Money or time? I value the former more.
后者	hòuzhě	the latter	城市和农村，她更喜欢后者。 City or countryside? She prefers the latter.
证实	zhèngshí	to confirm	这个消息已经被证实了。 The news has been confirmed.
无疑	wúyí	undoubtedly	这无疑是一个好消息。 This is undoubtedly good news.
毫无	háowú	not the slightest	他对这件事毫无兴趣。 He hasn't the slightest interest in it.
毫不	háobù	not in the least	她毫不犹豫地答应了。 She said yes without the slightest hesitation.
即便	jíbiàn	even if	即便下雨，比赛也不会取消。 Even if it rains, the match won't be cancelled.

pattern 至于: as for...

point A **，至于** **point B** **，comment**

至于 "as for" turns to a related point, often one you want to set aside or hand over: 价格没问题，至于时间，再商量. It starts a clause. The point after it is the new topic.

我负责做饭，至于洗碗，就交给你了。 **wǒ fùzé zuòfàn zhìyú xǐ wǎn jiù jiāo gěi nǐ le** I'll do the cooking. As for the washing-up, that's your job.

他说要来，至于什么时候来，他没说。 **tā shuō yào lái zhìyú shénme shíhou lái tā méi shuō** He says he's coming. As for when, he didn't say.

前者我同意，至于后者，我还要想想。 **qiánzhě wǒ tóngyì zhìyú hòuzhě wǒ hái yào xiǎng xiang** I agree with the first point. As for the second, I need to think.

dialogue choosing sides

professor chen 下个月讨论会的题目是“小学生应该不应该有手机”。大家先说说自己的立场。
xià gè yuè tǎolùn huì de tímù shì xiǎoxuéshēng yīnggāi bù yīnggāi yǒu shǒujī dàjiā xiān shuō shuo zìjǐ de lìchǎng · Next month’s topic is “Should primary-school children have phones?”. First, tell us where you stand.

little sister 我主张应该有。手机能帮孩子学习，也方便联系父母。
wǒ zhǔzhāng yīnggāi yǒu shǒujī néng bāng háizi xuéxí yě fāngbiàn liánxì fùmǔ · I say yes. Phones help children learn, and they make it easy to reach their parents.

xiaoming 我不赞同。孩子用手机，负面影响无疑比正面影响大。
wǒ bú zàntóng háizi yòng shǒujī fùmiàn yǐngxiǎng wúyí bǐ zhèngmiàn yǐngxiǎng dà · I disagree. For children, the downsides of phones clearly outweigh the upsides.

little sister 哥哥，你这个看法太片面了！你有什么证据?
gēge nǐ zhège kànfǎ tài piànmiàn le nǐ yǒu shénme zhèngjù · That’s so one-sided! What’s your evidence?

xiaoming 很多研究都证实了，用手机太多会影响睡眠。
hěn duō yánjiū dōu zhèngshí le yòng shǒujī tài duō huì yǐngxiǎng shuìmián · Plenty of studies have confirmed that too much phone use hurts sleep.

professor chen 你们俩的观点并不是完全对立的。至于谁对谁错，要看我们怎么看待“用手机”。
nǐmen liǎ de guāndiǎn bìng bú shì wánquán duìlì de zhìyú shéi duì shéi cuò yào kàn wǒmen zěnme kàndài yòng shǒujī · Your views aren’t completely opposed. As for who’s right, it depends how we look at “using a phone”.

anna 我认同陈教授的看法。关键不是有没有手机，而是怎么用。
wǒ rèntóng Chénjiàoshòu de kànfǎ guānjiàn bú shì yǒu méiyǒu shǒujī ér shì zěnme yòng · I agree with Professor Chen. The key isn’t having a phone, it’s how you use it.

little sister 那倒是。我看重的是学习，哥哥看重的是健康，前者和后者都很重要。
nà dàoshì wǒ kànzhòng de shì xuéxí gēge kànzhòng de shì jiànkāng qiánzhě hé hòuzhě dōu hěn zhòngyào · True. I care about learning, he cares about health, and both matter.

xiaoming 好吧。即便观点不同，我们也可以好好讨论，不用争论得这么极端。
hǎo ba jíbiàn guāndiǎn bù tóng wǒmen yě kěyǐ hǎohǎo tǎolùn búyòng zhēnglùn de zhème jíduān · All right. Even if we disagree, we can discuss it calmly, without getting so extreme.

professor chen 说得好！毫无争议的题目才没意思呢。
shuō de hǎo háo wú zhēngyì de tímù cái méi yìsi ne · Well said! A topic with no controversy would be boring.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

毫

háo
a tiny bit (a hair)

good to know · 赞同, 认同 and 认可 all mean agreeing: 赞同 a view, 认同 a value or identity you share, 认可 approval or recognition of someone’s work. 前者 “the former” and 后者 “the latter” keep a comparison tidy, just like in English essays.

You can now take a side, push back politely and steer a discussion. That’s the heart of every debate. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 42 cause and effect

Explain causes and effects, make guesses and suppositions, and read the written 因 “because of”.

News, science and every good argument are built on “why”. Today you get the words to say it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
因	yīn	because of (written)	比赛因下雨推迟了。 The match was postponed because of rain.
动机	dòngjī	motive	你学中文的动机是什么? What made you want to learn Chinese?
动力	dònglì	motivation, driving force	家人的支持是我最大的动力。 My family’s support is what drives me most.
引发	yǐnfā	to trigger, set off	这篇文章引发了很多讨论。 The article set off a lot of discussion.
激发	jīfā	to spark, arouse	好老师能激发学生的兴趣。 Good teachers spark students’ interest.
加剧	jiājù	to worsen, intensify	天气变化加剧了缺水的问题。 Changes in the weather have made the water shortage worse.
减弱	jiǎnruò	to weaken	到了晚上，风慢慢减弱了。 By evening the wind had slowly died down.
伴随	bànsuí	to go along with	城市的发展伴随着很多新问题。 A city’s growth brings many new problems with it.
涉及	shèjí	to involve, touch on	这个问题涉及很多方面。 This issue touches on many areas.
关联	guānlián	to be connected	这两件事之间没有关联。 There’s no link between the two.
联想	liánxiǎng	to be reminded of, associate	看到这张照片，我联想到了自己的童年。 This photo reminds me of my own childhood.
前提	qiántí	precondition	健康是一切的前提。 Health comes before everything else.
假设	jiǎshè	to suppose; hypothesis	假设你有一百万，你会做什么? Suppose you had a million: what would you do?
设想	shèxiǎng	to imagine; idea, plan	这只{zhi3}是我的一个设想，还需要讨论。 It’s only an idea of mine; we still need to discuss it.
推测	tuīcè	to infer, deduce	我推测他明天不会来。 My guess is he won’t come tomorrow.
猜测	cāicè	to guess, speculate	这只{zhi3}是大家的猜测，不一定是真的。 That’s just speculation; it may not be true.
代价	dàijià	price, cost (of doing sth)	为了成功，他付出了很大的代价。 He paid a high price for his success.

被动	bèidòng	passive	别总是等别人安排，太被动了。 Don't always wait for others to arrange things: it's too passive.
被迫	bèipò	to be forced to	他被迫放弃了这个计划。 He was forced to give up the plan.
本能	běnnéng	instinct; instinctively	保护孩子是父母的本能。 Protecting their children is a parent's instinct.
间接	jiànjiē	indirect	这件事间接影响了我们的生活。 This indirectly affected our lives.
之所以	zhīsuǒyǐ	the reason why … is	我之所以学中文，是因为喜欢中国菜。 The reason I'm learning Chinese is that I love Chinese food.
为此	wèicǐ	for this reason, to this end	他想去中国留学，为此每天学两个小时中文。 He wants to study in China, so he studies Chinese two hours a day.
出于	chūyú	out of, stemming from	我这样说完全是出于关心。 I only said it because I care.

pattern 因: because of (written)

what happened + 因 + cause + result

因 is the written "because of". It goes inside the sentence, right before the cause: 比赛因雨推迟, "the match was put off because of rain". With 而 it links a cause to a result: 因工作太忙而生病. In speech, say 因为.

很多人因工作压力太大而失眠。 **hěn duō rén yīn gōngzuò yālì tài dà ér shīmián** Many people can't sleep because of stress at work.

会议因经理生病推迟了。 **huìyì yīn jīnglǐ shēngbìng tuīchí le** The meeting was postponed because the manager was ill.

这条路因下大雨关闭了。 **zhè tiáo lù yīn xià dà yǔ guānbì le** The road was closed because of heavy rain.

dialogue why so hot?

anna 周博士，我左想右想也不明白，今年夏天为什么这么热?
Zhōubóshì wǒ zuǒ xiǎng yòu xiǎng yě bù míngbai jīnnián xiàtiān wèi shénme zhème rè · Dr Zhou, I've thought about it every which way: why was this summer so hot?

dr zhou 原因很复杂，涉及很多方面。不过科学家推测，全球气温升高是最重要的原因。
yuányīn hěn fùzá shèjí hěn duō fāngmiàn búguò kēxué jiā tuīcè quánqiú qìwēn shēng gāo shì zuì zhòngyào de yuányīn · It's complicated and involves many factors. But scientists believe global warming is the main cause.

little sister 天气变热跟下大雨也有关联吗?
tiānqì biàn rè gēn xià dà yǔ yě yǒu guānlián ma · Is warmer weather linked to heavy rain too?

dr zhou 有。气温高了，空气里的水多了，就容易引发大雨，问题也就加剧了。
yǒu qìwēn gāo le kōngqì lǐ de shuǐ duō le jiù róngyì yǐnfā dà yǔ wèntí yě jiù jiājù le · Yes. Higher temperatures mean more water in the air, which easily sets off heavy rain and makes things worse.

anna 那这种变化会减弱吗?
nà zhè zhǒng biànhuà huì jiǎnruò ma · So will these changes ease off?

dr zhou 前提是大家一起少用电、少开车。我们的生活方式一直在间接影响天气。
qiántí shì dàjiā yìqǐ shǎo yòng diàn shǎo kāichē wǒmen de shēnghuó fāngshì yìzhí zài jiànjiē yǐngxiǎng tiānqì · Only if we all use less electricity and drive less. Our way of life is indirectly affecting the weather all the time.

little sister 可是很多人是被迫开车的，因为家离公司太远了。
kěshì hěn duō rén shì bèipò kāichē de yīnwèi jiā lí gōngsī tài yuǎn le · But lots of people have to drive, because they live so far from work.

dr zhou 没错。城市的发展总是伴随着新问题。我的设想是多建地铁，让大家不再被动地开车。
méi cuò chéngshì de fāzhǎn zǒngshì bànsuí zhe xīn wèntí wǒ de shèxiǎng shì duō jiàn dìtiě ràng dàjiā bú zài bèidòng de kāichē · Exactly. Growing cities always bring new problems. My idea is to build more metro lines, so people aren't stuck driving.

anna 我之所以参加这个项目，是出于兴趣，也想做一点有用的事。
wǒ zhīsuǒyǐ cānjiā zhège xiàngmù shì chūyú xìngqù yě xiǎng zuò yìdiǎn yǒuyòng de shì · The reason I joined this project is that I'm interested, and I want to do something useful.

dr zhou 这样的动机最好！为此，我们先把问题讲清楚。
zhèyàng de dòngjī zuìhǎo wèicǐ wǒmen xiān bǎ wèntí jiǎng qīngchu · That's the best motive there is! So let's start by explaining the problem clearly.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

涉 shè to wade

good to know · 之所以...是因为... puts the result first and the reason second: 我之所以迟到，是因为堵车. It sounds thoughtful and is great in essays. 推测 is reasoning from evidence; 猜测 is plain guessing. Scientists 推测, gossips 猜测.

Why, because, so: you can now follow a science explanation in Chinese, and give one.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 43 thinking clearly

Organise your thinking: define, divide into types and levels, compare, and give examples.

Clear thinking is half of a good argument. These are the words for structure: core, points, levels, cases.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
凡是	fánshì	every, all (who/that)	凡是去过{guo}那里的人，都说风景很美。 Everyone who has been there says the scenery is beautiful.
思路	sīlù	train of thought, approach	你的思路很清楚。 Your thinking is very clear.
要点	yàodiǎn	main points	请把会议的要点记下来。 Please note down the main points of the meeting.
要素	yàosù	key element	时间、地点和人物是故事的三个要素。 Time, place and characters are the three elements of a story.
核心	héxīn	core	这个问题的核心是钱。 At the core of this problem is money.
重心	zhòngxīn	focus; centre of gravity	今年工作的重心是提高质量。 This year's focus at work is raising quality.
实质	shízhì	essence, substance	这两个说法实质上是一样的。 The two statements are essentially the same.
定义	dìngyì	definition; to define	每个|人对成功的定义都不一样。 Everyone defines success differently.
类别	lèibié	category	图书馆的书按照类别放好。 Library books are shelved by category.
划分	huàfēn	to divide, mark off	按照年龄，孩子们被划分到三个班。 The children are divided into three classes by age.
区分	qūfēn	to tell apart	他区分不了{liao3-4}这两个字。 He can't tell these two characters apart.
分级	fēnjí	to grade, sort into levels	这些阅读材料按难度分级。 These reading materials are graded by difficulty.
等级	děngjí	grade, rank	这个考试一共有九个等级。 This exam has nine levels in all.
层次	céngcì	level; structure	这篇文章写得很有层次。 This essay is well structured.
层面	céngmiàn	level, aspect	我们要从不同的层面来看这个问题。 We need to look at this from different angles.
方方面面	fāngfāngmiànmiàn	every aspect	这个计划考虑到了方方面面。 This plan has thought of everything.
同类	tónglèi	the same kind	跟同类产品比，这个价格更便宜。 Compared with similar products, this one is cheaper.

差异	chāyì	difference	南方和北方的饮食有很大的差异。 Food in the south and the north is very different.
相差	xiāngchà	to differ (by)	我们俩的年龄相差五岁。 There are five years between us.
对应	duìyìng	to correspond	这两个词的意思并不完全对应。 The meanings of the two words don't match exactly.
典型	diǎnxíng	typical; typical example	这是一个很典型的例子。 This is a very typical example.
案例	ànlì	case (example)	老师给我们讲了几个真实的案例。 The teacher told us about some real cases.
比方	bǐfang	analogy; for example	比方说，你可以每天早上读半个小时。 For example, you could read for half an hour every morning.
犹如	yóurú	just like (written)	读一本好书，犹如交了一个好朋友。 Reading a good book is like making a good friend.

pattern 凡是...都...: every ... without exception

凡是 | a group or kind | ，都 | what is true of all

凡是 + a group, then 都 + what is true of every one of them: 凡是去过的人都说好, "everyone who has been says it's great". It's firmer than 所有的, and sounds like a rule.

凡是新同学，都要先做一个自我介绍。 **fánshì xīn tóngxué dōu yào xiān zuò yí gè zìwǒ jièshào** Every new student introduces themselves first.

凡是跟钱有关的事，都要小心。 **fánshì gēn qián yǒuguān de shì dōu yào xiǎoxīn** Be careful with anything to do with money.

凡是故事，都少不了时间、地点和人物这三个要素。 **fánshì gùshi dōu shǎo bu liǎo shíjiān dìdiǎn hé rénwù zhè sān gè yàosù** Every story needs three elements: time, place and characters.

dialogue getting it straight

little sister 陈教授，我准备讨论会准备了一个星期，可是想这想那，越想越乱。
Chénjiàoshòu wǒ zhǔnbèi tǎolùn huì zhǔnbèi le yí gè xīngqī kěshì xiǎng zhè xiǎng nà yuè xiǎng yuè luàn · Professor Chen, I've been preparing for the debate for a week, but I keep worrying about everything and getting more muddled.

professor chen 别急，先把思路弄清楚。你的核心观点是什么?
bié jí xiān bǎ sīlù nòng qīngchu nǐ de héxīn guāndiǎn shì shénme · Don't panic. First get your thinking straight. What's your core argument?

little sister 我认为网上学习比在教室里学习更好。
wǒ rènwéi wǎngshang xuéxí bǐ zài jiàoshì lǐ xuéxí gèng hǎo · I think learning online is better than learning in a classroom.

professor chen 那你要先给“更好”下一个定义。是学得更快，还是学得更深?
nà nǐ yào xiān gěi gèng hǎo xià yí gè dìngyì shì xué de gèng kuài háishi xué de gèng shēn · Then you first need to define "better". Learning faster, or learning more deeply?

little sister 我觉得要从几个层面来看：时间、费用和效果。
wǒ juéde yào cóng jǐ gè céngmiàn lái kàn shíjiān fèiyong hé xiàoguǒ · I think it should be looked at on several levels: time, cost and results.

professor chen 很好，这就是你的三个要点。凡是重要的观点，都要有案例支持。
hěn hǎo zhè jiùshì nǐ de sān gè yàodiǎn fánshì zhòngyào de guāndiǎn dōu yào yǒu ànlì zhīchí · Good, those are your three main points. Every important point needs a case to back it up.

little sister 比方说，我有一个同学在网上学画画，进步特别快。
bǐfang shuō wǒ yǒu yí gè tóngxué zài wǎngshang xué huà huà jìnbù tèbié kuài · For example, a classmate of mine learned to paint online and improved really fast.

professor chen 可以，但最好再找几个典型的案例。另外，要区分“网上学习”和“看视频”，两者差异很大。
kěyǐ dàn zuìhǎo zài zhǎo jǐ gè diǎnxíng de ànlì lìngwài yào qūfēn wǎngshang xuéxí hé kàn shìpín liǎng zhě chāyì hěn dà · Fine, but find a few more typical cases. And tell "online learning" apart from "watching videos": they're very different.

little sister 明白了！这两个说法并不对应，实质也不一样。
míngbai le zhè liǎng gè shuōfǎ bìng bú duìyìng shízhì yě bù yíyàng · I see! The two don't match up: they're different in substance.

professor chen 对。思路清楚了，文章就犹如一棵树，有根也有枝。
duì sīlù qīngchu le wénzhāng jiù yóurú yì kē shù yǒu gēn yě yǒu zhī · Exactly. Once your thinking is clear, your essay is like a tree, with roots and branches.

good to know · 凡是 needs 都 later in the sentence: leaving out 都 is a common mistake. 比方说 is a friendly spoken "for example"; in writing use 比如 or 例如. 大概 is also a noun, "the gist": 我知道个大概 "I've got the rough idea". As an adverb it is "probably": 他大概不来了.

Define, divide, give a case: you now have the toolkit for a clear argument in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 44 solving problems

Talk through a problem: causes, steps, flaws and workable solutions, and keep two things apart with X归X.

Problems come up at work and at home. Knowing how to talk them through calmly is a superpower in any language.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
归	guī	to belong to; to return	这件事归我管。 This is my responsibility.
途径	tújìng	way, channel	网上学习是一个很好的途径。 Online study is a great way to learn.
步骤	bùzhòu	step (in a process)	请按照下面的步骤操作。 Please follow the steps below.
初步	chūbù	initial, preliminary	我们已经有了一个初步的计划。 We already have an initial plan.
可行	kěxíng	feasible	这个办法可行吗? Will this work?
切实	qièshí	practical, realistic	我们需要切实可行的办法。 We need practical, workable solutions.
排除	páichú	to rule out	医生已经排除|了这种可能。 The doctor has ruled that out.
消除	xiāochú	to remove, get rid of	多沟通可以消除误会。 Talking more clears up misunderstandings.
筛选	shāixuǎn	to screen, shortlist	公司从一百份简历里筛选出了十个|人。 The company shortlisted ten people from a hundred CVs.
弥补	míbǔ	to make up for	他想用努力来弥补经验的不足。 He wants to make up for his lack of experience with hard work.
缺陷	quēxiàn	defect, flaw	这个产品有一个设计上的缺陷。 This product has a design flaw.
弱点	ruòdiǎn	weakness	每个|人都有自己的弱点。 Everyone has their weak points.
薄弱	bóruò	weak (area)	我的听力比较薄弱。 My listening is quite weak.
局限	júxiàn	to limit; limitation	不要把自己局限在一个地方。 Don't limit yourself to one place.
限度	xiàndù	limit	我的耐心是有限度的。 My patience has its limits.
障碍	zhàngài	obstacle	语言不再是我们交流的障碍。 Language is no longer a barrier between us.
阻碍	zǔài	to hinder	害怕失败会阻碍你进步。 Fear of failure holds you back.

阻挡	zǔdǎng	to stop, block	什么也阻挡不了{liao3-4}他。 Nothing can stop him.
陷入	xiànrù	to fall into, get caught in	公司陷入了困难。 The company ran into difficulties.
常规	chángguī	routine, conventional	用常规的方法解决不了{liao3-4}这个问题。 The usual methods won't solve this.
则	zé	while, whereas (written)	南方人爱吃米饭，北方人则更爱吃饺子。 Southerners love rice, whereas northerners prefer dumplings.
与其	yǔqí	rather than	与其在家发愁，不如出去走走。 Rather than fretting at home, go out for a walk.
足以	zúyǐ	enough to	这些钱足以买一辆车。 This money is enough to buy a car.

pattern x归x，y归y: x is one thing, y is another

X | 归 | X | ，Y | 归 | Y

X归X，Y归Y keeps two things apart: 朋友归朋友，生意归生意, "friends are friends, but business is business". Often only the first half is said, X归X, and then a clause says what still holds: 好吃归好吃，也不能吃太多.

说归说，做归做，我们要看行动。 **shuō guī shuō zuò guī zuò wǒmen yào kàn xíngdòng** Talk is one thing, doing is another. We'll judge by actions.

喜欢归喜欢，太贵的东西我还是不买。 **xǐhuan guī xǐhuan tài guì de dōngxi wǒ háishi bù mǎi** Liking it is one thing, but I won't buy anything that pricey.

着急归着急，步骤一个也不能少。 **zháojí guī zháojí bùzhòu yí gè yě bù néng shǎo** Being in a hurry is one thing, but we can't skip a single step.

dialogue a flaw in the design

xiaoming 安娜，我们的新产品出了问题。这几天我总算明白什么叫“压力”了。
Ānnà wǒmen de xīn chǎnpǐn chū le wèntí zhè jǐ tiān wǒ zǒngsuàn míngbai shénme jiào yālì le · Anna, our new product has a problem. These last few days I've finally learned what "stress" means.

anna 怎么了？慢慢说。
zěnme le màn màn shuō · What happened? Take your time.

xiaoming 测试的时候发现了一个缺陷，电池用不了多久，公司一下子陷入了被动。
cèshì de shíhou fāxiàn le yí gè quēxiàn diànchí yòng bu liǎo duō jiǔ gōngsī yíxià zi xiànrù le bèidòng · Testing found a flaw: the battery doesn't last. Suddenly the company is on the back foot.

anna 原因找到了吗？
yuányīn zhǎo dào le ma · Have you found the cause?

xiaoming 我们已经排除了几种可能，现在初步认定是设计的问题。
wǒmen yǐjīng páichú le jǐ zhǒng kěnéng xiànzài chūbù rèndìng shì shèjì de wèntí · We've ruled out a few possibilities. For now we think it's a design problem.

anna 与其自己发愁，不如跟团队一起想办法。别把思路局限在常规的方法上。
yǔqí zìjǐ fāchóu bùrú gēn tuánduì yìqǐ xiǎng bànfǎ bié bǎ sīlù júxiàn zài chángguī de fāngfǎ shàng · Rather than worrying alone, work it out with the team. And don't limit yourselves to the usual methods.

xiaoming 我们打算先找出设计的弱点，再筛选出最可行的方案，找最好的途径解决。
wǒmen dǎsuàn xiān zhǎo chū shèjì de ruòdiǎn zài shāixuǎn chū zuì kěxíng de fāngàn zhǎo zuìhǎo de tújìng jiějué · We plan to find the weak spots in the design first, then shortlist the most workable fixes and find the best way through.

anna 你们经理怎么说？他是你的老同学吧？
nǐmen jīnglǐ zěnme shuō tā shì nǐ de lǎo tóngxué ba · What does your manager say? He's an old classmate of yours, isn't he?

xiaoming 对，可是同学归同学，工作归工作。他说这次的问题归我负责，一定不能拖延。
duì kěshì tóngxué guī tóngxué gōngzuò guī gōngzuò tā shuō zhè cì de wèntí guī wǒ fùzé yídìng bù néng tuōyán · Yes, but a classmate is one thing and work is another. He says this problem is mine to fix, with no delays.

anna 那倒是。经过这一番努力，你们一定能弥补这个缺陷。
nà dàoshì jīngguò zhè yì fān nǔlì nǐmen yídìng néng míbǔ zhège quēxiàn · Fair enough. After all this effort, you're sure to fix the flaw.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

径
jìng
path

驟
zhòu
pace

good to know · 与其A，不如B “rather than A, better B” is the classic way to give advice in a debate or an essay. 则 is a written “whereas, then”: it comes after the subject of the second clause: 口语则比较薄弱. 难 is also a verb, “to stump, put on the spot”: 这下可难住我了 “now you've got me”, 什么也难不倒她 “nothing beats her”.

You can now talk a friend through a problem, step by step, and keep friendship and work in their places.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 45 learning from the past

Look back and learn from the past, talk about change and influence, and grumble about someone who refuses everything.

History, careers and cities all change. Talking about what we learn from the past is a classic essay and debate theme.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
回顾	huígù	to look back on	回顾这一年，我学到了很多。 Looking back on this year, I've learned a lot.
反思	fǎnsī	to reflect on	失败以后，我们要好好反思。 After a failure, we should reflect carefully.
吸取	xīqǔ	to draw (a lesson), absorb	我们要从这次失败中吸取教训。 We should learn from this failure.
借鉴	jièjiàn	to draw on, learn from	我们可以借鉴别的国家的经验。 We can learn from other countries' experience.
启发	qǐfā	to inspire, give ideas	这本书给了我很大的启发。 This book gave me lots of ideas.
启示	qǐshì	lesson, insight	这个故事给我们的启示是什么? What lesson does this story teach us?
理念	lǐniàn	philosophy, idea	这家{=(measure word)}公司的理念是“客户第一”。 The company's philosophy is “customers first”.
树立	shùlì	to set (an example), establish	父母要给孩子树立好榜样。 Parents should set their children a good example.
确立	quèlì	to establish, settle	他很早就确立了自己的目标。 He set his goals early on.
赋予	fùyǔ	to give, endow	这个节日被赋予了新的意义。 The festival has been given a new meaning.
主导	zhǔdǎo	dominant; to lead	在这个市场里，大公司占主导地位。 Big companies dominate this market.
占据	zhànjù	to occupy, take up	手机占据了我们大部分的时间。 Phones take up most of our time.
取代	qǔdài	to replace	电脑能取代老师吗? Can computers replace teachers?
转移	zhuǎnyí	to shift, transfer	他想转移大家的注意力。 He wants to shift everyone's attention.
倾向	qīngxiàng	to tend to; tendency	我更倾向第二个方案。 I lean towards the second option.
形态	xíngtài	form, shape	水有三种形态。 Water takes three forms.

过渡	guòdù	transition	从学生到职员，需要一个过渡的阶段。 Going from student to employee takes a period of transition.
开启	kāiqǐ	to open, start	毕业以后，她开启了新的生活。 After graduating, she started a new life.
引入	yǐnrù	to bring in, introduce	学校引入了新的教学方法。 The school has brought in new teaching methods.
持久	chíjiǔ	lasting	只有兴趣才|能带来持久的动力。 Only real interest brings lasting motivation.
例外	lìwài	exception	大家都要准时，谁也不能例外。 Everyone must be on time, no exceptions.
以往	yǐwǎng	the past, before	今年的游客比以往多得多。 There are far more tourists this year than before.
日益	rìyì	increasingly, day by day	环境问题日益严重。 Environmental problems are getting worse by the day.
不至于	bùzhìyú	not go so far as	他只是|有点{==a bit, rather}感冒，不至于住院吧。 It's only a cold. Surely he won't need hospital.

pattern 这也不x，那也不y: not this, not that

这也不 | X | ，那也不 | Y

这也不X，那也不Y grumbles about someone who turns everything down: 这也不吃，那也不吃, "won't eat this, won't eat that". X and Y can be the same verb or two different ones. The tone is half annoyed, half amused.

孩子这也不玩，那也不玩，就想看手机。 **háizi zhè yě bù wán nà yě bù wán jiù xiǎng kàn shǒujī** The kids won't play with anything: they just want their phones.

他这也不想学，那也不想做，以后怎么办？ **tā zhè yě bù xiǎng xué nà yě bù xiǎng zuò yǐhòu zěnme bàn** He doesn't want to learn anything or do anything. What will become of him?

你这也不敢，那也不敢，怎么开启新生活？ **nǐ zhè yě bù gǎn nà yě bù gǎn zěnme kāiqǐ xīn shēnghuó** You're scared of everything. How will you ever start a new life?

dialogue cities of the past

professor chen 今天我们看的是中国古代的城市。回顾历史，能给我们很多启示。
jīntiān wǒmen kàn de shì Zhōngguó gǔdài de chéngshì huígù lìshǐ néng gěi wǒmen hěn duō qǐshì · Today we're looking at ancient Chinese cities. Looking back at history teaches us a lot.

anna 以往的城市跟现在的城市，最大的差异是什么？
yǐwǎng de chéngshì gēn xiànzài de chéngshì zuì dà de chāyì shì shénme · What's the biggest difference between cities then and now?

professor chen 城市的形态变了。以前是城墙主导，现在是高楼占据了天空。
chéngshì de xíngtài biàn le yǐqián shì chéng qiáng zhǔdǎo xiànzài shì gāo lóu zhànjù le tiānkōng · Their shape has changed. City walls used to dominate; now tower blocks fill the sky.

little sister 古代的人生活一定很无聊吧，没有手机，这也不能做，那也不能做。
gǔdài de rén shēnghuó yídìng hěn wúliáo ba méiyǒu shǒujī zhè yě bù néng zuò nà yě bù néng zuò · Life must have been so boring back then. No phones, you couldn't do this, couldn't do that.

professor chen 那倒不至于！他们有很多有意思的理念，我们今天还在借鉴。
nà dào búzhìyú tāmen yǒu hěn duō yǒu yìsi de lǐniàn wǒmen jīntiān hái zài jièjiàn · It wasn't that bad! They had lots of interesting ideas that we still borrow today.

anna 比如呢？
bǐrú ne · Such as?

professor chen 比如很多古代城市把河水引入城里，人们住得离水很近。现在不少城市又开始倾向这种设计。
bǐrú hěn duō gǔdài chéngshì bǎ hé shuǐ yǐnrù chéng lǐ rénmen zhù de lí shuǐ hěn jìn xiànzài bù shǎo chéngshì yòu kāishǐ qīngxiàng zhè zhǒng shèjì · Many ancient cities brought river water into town, so people lived close to water. Lots of cities today are leaning towards that design again.

little sister 原来历史并没有被取代，只是转移到了新的形式里。
yuánlái lìshǐ bìng méiyǒu bèi qǔdài zhǐshì zhuǎnyí dào le xīn de xíngshì lǐ · So history hasn't been replaced; it's just moved into new forms.

professor chen 说得好！每一次过渡，都会赋予城市新的意义。
shuō de hǎo měi yí cì guòdù dōu huì fùyǔ chéngshì xīn de yìyì · Well put! Every transition gives a city new meaning.

anna 那倒是。我们应该常常反思，从过去吸取经验。
nà dàoshì wǒmen yīnggāi chángcháng fǎnsī cóng guòqù xīqǔ jīngyàn · That's true. We should often reflect, and learn from the past.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

启
qǐ
to open

予
yǔ
to give

good to know · 不至于 "it won't come to that" is a handy way to calm someone down: 不至于吧！ "surely not!" 借鉴 is literally "borrow a mirror": you look at someone else's experience to see yourself better.

You can now talk about how the past shapes the present, and tease a picky friend while you're at it.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 46 a good argument

Build a strong argument with data and fair reading of the other side, and use the formal 所 + verb.

Debates and essays reward clear, formal sentences. 所 and the set phrases of today make you sound like a pro.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
所	suǒ	what (所 + verb)	我所{suo3-6}知道的就这么多。 That's all I know.
探讨	tàntǎo	to explore, discuss	今天我们来探讨一下教育的问题。 Today let's explore the question of education.
解读	jiědú	to interpret	每个人对这首诗的解读都不同。 Everyone reads this poem differently.
解	jiě	to solve; to untie; to understand	这道数学题我解了半天也没解出来。 I spent ages on this maths problem and still couldn't solve it.
理	lǐ	to pay attention to; reason	他生气了，谁也不理。 He's cross and won't talk to anyone.
衡量	héngliáng	to weigh up, measure	不能只{zhi3}用钱来衡量成功。 You can't measure success by money alone.
忽略	hūlüè	to overlook	我们常常忽略身边最重要的人。 We often overlook the people who matter most.
丧失	sàngshī	to lose (ability, confidence)	失败了几次以后，他丧失了信心。 After failing a few times, he lost confidence.
浓厚	nónghòu	strong, deep (interest)	他对历史有浓厚的兴趣。 He has a deep interest in history.
庞大	pángdà	huge, enormous	这是一个庞大的计划。 This is an enormous plan.
密	mì	dense, close together	这里的楼建得太密了。 The buildings here are packed too close together.
分散	fēnsàn	to distract; scattered	手机很容易分散注意力。 Phones easily distract you.
次数	cìshù	number of times	他迟到的次数越来越多。 He's late more and more often.
长短	chángduǎn	length; pros and cons	这条裤子的长短正合适。 These trousers are just the right length.
称作	chēngzuò	to be called	这座城市被称作“花城”。 This city is known as “the City of Flowers”.
呈现	chéngxiàn	to show, present	这张图表呈现了五年的变化。 This chart shows five years of change.

力度	lìdù	intensity, effort	政府加大了保护环境的力度。 The government has stepped up efforts to protect the environment.
认知	rènzhī	understanding, perception	这次旅行改变了我对世界的认知。 This trip changed how I see the world.
众所周知	zhòngsuǒzhōuzhī	as everyone knows	众所周知，吸烟对健康有害。 As everyone knows, smoking is bad for you.
至关重要	zhìguānzhòngyào	vital, crucial	睡眠对健康至关重要。 Sleep is vital for your health.
诸多	zhūduō	many (written)	这个计划还存在诸多问题。 There are still many problems with this plan.
一系列	yīxìliè	a series of	公司推出了一系列新产品。 The company has launched a series of new products.
上述	shàngshù	above-mentioned	上述问题都需要尽快解决。 All the problems above need solving quickly.
该	gāi	this, the said (written)	该{gai1-6}产品已经在全国销售。 The product is already on sale nationwide.

pattern 所 + verb: "what someone ..."

(who) **所** **verb** **的** **(thing)**

所 + verb + 的 turns a verb into "what someone ...": 我所知道的 "what I know", 大家所关心的问题 "the issue everyone cares about". It's formal and tidy, perfect for essays and debates. In speech you can usually drop 所.

你所说的，我都同意。 **nǐ suǒ shuō de wǒ dōu tóngyì** I agree with everything you've said.

这不是我所希望的结果。 **zhè bú shì wǒ suǒ xīwàng de jiéguǒ** This isn't the result I was hoping for.

我们所说的"网上学习"，也被称作"线上学习"。 **wǒmen suǒ shuō de wǎngshang xuéxí yě bèi chēngzuò xiànshàng xuéxí** What we call "online learning" is also known as "learning on the web".

dialogue what makes a good argument

professor chen 今天我们来探讨一下：怎样的观点才有说服力？
jīntiān wǒmen lái tàntǎo yíxià zěnyàng de guāndiǎn cái yǒu shuōfú lì · Today let's explore this: what makes an argument convincing?

little sister 我觉得要有数据。众所周知，数据最有说服力。
wǒ juéde yào yǒu shùjù zhòngsuǒzhōuzhī shùjù zuì yǒu shuōfú lì · I think you need data. Everyone knows data is the most convincing.

professor chen 数据至关重要，但也要会解读。比如，迟到的次数多，未必说明这个人不认真。
shùjù zhìguān zhòngyào dàn yě yào huì jiědú bǐrú chídào de cìshù duō wèibì shuōmíng zhège rén bú rènzhēn · Data is vital, but you have to read it well. For instance, being late a lot doesn't necessarily mean someone doesn't care.

xiaoming 而且不能忽略对方的意见。
érqiě bù néng hūlüè duìfāng de yìjiàn · And you mustn't ignore the other side's views.

professor chen 对，上述两点都很重要。另外，诸多例子不如一个好例子：例子太分散，力度就不够。
duì shàngshù liǎng diǎn dōu hěn zhòngyào lìngwài zhūduō lìzi bùrú yí gè hǎo lìzi lìzi tài fēnsàn lìdù jiù búgòu · Right, both those points matter. Also, one good example beats lots of them: if your examples are scattered, you lose force.

little sister 至于时间呢？每个人发言的长短有规定吗？
zhìyú shíjiān ne měi gè rén fāyán de chángduǎn yǒu guīdìng ma · And what about time? Is there a rule for how long each person speaks?

professor chen 每人三分钟。该规定是为了公平，谁也不能例外。
měi rén sān fēnzhōng gāi guīdìng shì wèile gōngpíng shéi yě bù néng lìwài · Three minutes each. The rule is there to be fair, and there are no exceptions.

xiaoming 瞧你紧张的，才三分钟嘛！
qiáo nǐ jǐnzhāng de cái sān fēnzhōng ma · Look at you, so nervous! It's only three minutes!

little sister 哥哥，你别理我。我所担心的不是时间，是丧失信心。
gēge nǐ bié lǐ wǒ wǒ suǒ dānxīn de bú shì shíjiān shì sàngshī xìnxīn · Leave me alone. What I'm worried about isn't the time, it's losing my nerve.

professor chen 别担心。你对这个话题兴趣浓厚，准备得也很认真，一定没问题。
bié dānxīn nǐ duì zhège huàtí xìngqù nónghòu zhǔnbèi de yě hěn rènzhēn yídìng méi wèntí · Don't worry. You care deeply about this topic and you've prepared well. You'll be fine.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

丧
sàng
to lose

呈
chéng
to present

good to know · 该 in written Chinese means "this, the said": 该公司 "the company (just mentioned)". In speech it's 这个. 众所周知 and 至关重要 are four-character set phrases that instantly make an essay sound polished; use them, but not in every sentence.

You can now build an argument that sounds formal, fair and convincing. Next stop: the big debate.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 47 mission: the big debate

Follow and join a five-part debate, rules to verdict, using the opinion, cause, structure, problem-solving and lesson words of unit 6.

A real debate pulls together everything from this unit: taking sides, causes, structure, solutions and the lessons of the past.

chapter 1 the rules

professor chen 欢迎大家！今天的题目是“网上学习能不能取代课堂”。
huānyíng dàjiā jīntiān de tímù shì wǎngshang xuéxí néng bu néng qǔdài kètáng · Welcome, everyone! Tonight’s topic is “Can online learning replace the classroom?”.

professor chen 今天的两位发言人，是从十个报名的同学里筛选出来的。
jīntiān de liǎng wèi fāyán rén shì cóng shí gè bàomíng de tóngxué lǐ shāixuǎn chulai de · Tonight’s two speakers were shortlisted from ten students who signed up.

professor chen 支持的一方称作“正方”，反对的一方称作“反方”。
zhīchí de yì fāng chēngzuò zhèngfāng fǎnduì de yì fāng chēngzuò fǎnfāng · The side for the motion is called “zhengfang”, the side against is called “fanfang”.

professor chen 我念一下规定。第一，发言的长短：每人三分钟。凡是超过时间的，都要扣分。
wǒ niàn yíxià guīdìng dì yī fāyán de chángduǎn měi rén sān fēnzhōng fánshì chāoguò shíjiān de dōu yào kòu fēn · Let me read the rules. One, length: three minutes each. Anyone who goes over time loses points.

professor chen 第二，提问的次数没有限制，但每个问题不能超过一分钟。
dì èr tíwèn de cìshù méiyǒu xiànzhì dàn měi gè wèntí bù néng chāoguò yì fēnzhōng · Two, there’s no limit on the number of questions, but no question may run over a minute.

professor chen 第三，该规定对所有人都一样，谁也不能例外。上述规定是上个月大家一起确立的。
dì sān gāi guīdìng duì suǒyǒu rén dōu yíyàng shéi yě bù néng lìwài shàngshù guīdìng shì shàng gè yuè dàjiā yìqǐ quèlì de · Three, these rules are the same for everyone, with no exceptions. The rules above were settled by all of us last month.

teacher wang 我是今天的评分老师。至于结果，我会根据双方的观点和证据来决定。
wǒ shì jīntiān de píngfēn lǎoshī zhìyú jiéguǒ wǒ huì gēnjù shuāngfāng de guāndiǎn hé zhèngjù lái juédìng · I’m tonight’s judge. As for the result, I’ll decide on both sides’ arguments and evidence.

teacher wang 我把评分划分为三个要素：思路、证据和表达。每个要素分级打分，一共五个等级。
wǒ bǎ píngfēn huàfēn wéi sān gè yàosù sīlù zhèngjù hé biǎodá měi gè yàosù fēnjí dǎfēn yígòng wǔ gè děngjí · I divide the score into three key elements: reasoning, evidence and delivery. Each element is graded, with five grades in all.

little sister 我的主张是：网上学习可以取代课堂。
wǒ de zhǔzhāng shì wǎngshang xuéxí kěyǐ qǔdài kètáng · My position: online learning can replace the classroom.

xiaoming 我的立场正好相反：课堂是取代不了的。
wǒ de lìchǎng zhènghǎo xiāngfǎn kètáng shì qǔdài bu liǎo de · Mine is exactly the opposite: the classroom can’t be replaced.

anna 瞧他们俩紧张的！哥哥和妹妹今天要当面争论了。
qiáo tāmen liǎ jǐnzhāng de gēge hé mèimei jīntiān yào dāngmiàn zhēnglùn le · Look how nervous they both are! Brother and sister are going head to head tonight.

chapter 2 for online learning

little sister 众所周知，现在凡是有手机的人，都可以在网上学习。
zhòngsuǒzhōuzhī xiànzài fánshì yǒu shǒujī de rén dōu kěyǐ zài wǎngshang xuéxí · As everyone knows, anyone with a phone can now learn online.

little sister 手机已经占据了我们大部分时间，为什么不用来学习呢?
shǒujī yǐjīng zhànjù le wǒmen dà bùfen shíjiān wèi shénme bú yònglái xuéxí ne · Phones already take up most of our time, so why not use them to learn?

little sister 网上学习有诸多益处。首先，它易于安排，什么时候学都可以。
wǎngshang xuéxí yǒu zhūduō yìchù shǒuxiān tā yìyú ānpái shénme shíhou xué dōu kěyǐ · Online learning has many benefits. First, it's easy to fit in: you can study any time.

little sister 其次，费用低。很多人因住得远或者没有钱而上不了好学校，网上学习消除了这些障碍。
qícì fèiyong dī hěn duō rén yīn zhù de yuǎn huòzhě méiyǒu qián ér shàng bù liǎo hǎo xuéxiào wǎngshang xuéxí xiāochú le zhèxiē zhàngài · Second, it's cheap. Many people miss out on good schools because they live far away or can't afford it; online learning removes those obstacles.

little sister 第三，网上课程的数量非常庞大，类别也很多，想学什么都有。
dì sān wǎngshang kèchéng de shùliàng fēicháng pángdà lèibié yě hěn duō xiǎng xué shénme dōu yǒu · Third, the number of online courses is enormous and there are lots of categories: whatever you want to learn, it's there.

little sister 常规的课堂由老师主导，学生往往很被动。
chángguī de kètáng yóu lǎoshī zhǔdǎo xuéshēng wǎngwǎng hěn bèidòng · In a conventional classroom the teacher leads, and students are often passive.

little sister 网上学习则不同：学习的重心转移到了学生自己身上，这能激发学习的动力。
wǎngshang xuéxí zé bù tóng xuéxí de zhòngxīn zhuǎnyí dào le xuéshēng zìjǐ shēnshàng zhè néng jīfā xuéxí de dònglì · Online learning is different: the focus shifts to the students themselves, and that sparks their drive to learn.

little sister 数据也证实了这一点：在网上上课的人数日益增加。
shùjù yě zhèngshí le zhè yìdiǎn zài wǎngshang shàngkè de rénshù rìyì zēngjiā · And the data confirms it: the number of people taking online classes is growing every day.

little sister 越来越多的大学开始引入网上课程，这种倾向是阻挡不了的。
yuèláiyuè duō de dàxué kāishǐ yǐnrù wǎngshang kèchéng zhè zhǒng qīngxiàng shì zǔdǎng bu liǎo de · More and more universities are bringing in online courses. This trend can't be stopped.

little sister 以往，好课只有在大学里才能听到。网上学习开启了一个新的时代，赋予了每个人学习的机会。
yǐwǎng hǎo kè zhǐyǒu zài dàxué lǐ cái néng tīng dào wǎngshang xuéxí kāiqǐ le yí gè xīn de shídài fùyǔ le měi gè rén xuéxí de jīhuì · In the past, good lessons were only heard at university. Online learning has opened a new era and given everyone the chance to learn.

professor chen 时间到！思路很清楚，要点也很明确。
shíjiān dào sīlù hěn qīngchu yàodiǎn yě hěn míngquè · Time's up! Clear thinking and clear points.

chapter 3 for the classroom

xiaoming 我妹妹所说的，有一部分我认同。但是方便未必就等于学得好。
wǒ mèimei suǒ shuō de yǒu yí bùfen wǒ rèntóng dànshì fāngbiàn wèibì jiù děngyú xué de hǎo · I agree with part of what my sister said. But convenient doesn't necessarily mean effective.

xiaoming 我们先给“学得好”下个定义。学习的核心不是听课，而是理解和使用。
wǒmen xiān gěi xué de hǎo xià gè dìngyì xuéxí de héxīn bú shì tīng kè ér shì lǐjiě hé shǐyòng · Let's first define "learning well". The core of learning isn't sitting through lessons; it's understanding and using.

xiaoming 在网上学习，注意力很容易被分散。而在课堂上，老师能当面纠正你的错误。
zài wǎngshang xuéxí zhùyìlì hěn róngyì bèi fēnsàn ér zài kètáng shàng lǎoshī néng dāngmiàn jiūzhèng nǐ de cuòwù · Online, it's easy to get distracted. In a classroom, the teacher can correct your mistakes face to face.

xiaoming 很多人在网上学习，并不是出于兴趣，而是被迫的。没有动机，就很难坚持。
hěn duō rén zài wǎngshang xuéxí bìng bú shì chūyú xìngqù ér shì bèipò de méiyǒu dòngjī jiù hěn nán jiānchí · Many people study online not out of interest but because they have to. Without motivation it's hard to keep going.

xiaoming 学习不只是知识，还有交流。孩子们在课堂上学到怎样跟人打交道，这是网上学习的局限。
xuéxí bù zhǐshì zhīshi hái yǒu jiāoliú háizimen zài kètáng shàng xué dào zěnyàng gēn rén dǎ jiāodao zhè shì wǎngshang xuéxí de júxiàn · Learning isn't just knowledge; it's also people. In class, children learn how to deal with others. That's where online learning falls short.

xiaoming 孩子学说话、交朋友，靠的是本能，身边需要真人。
háizi xué shuōhuà jiāo péngyou kào de shì běnnéng shēnbiān xūyào zhēn rén · Children learn to talk and make friends by instinct; they need real people around them.

xiaoming 研究表明，缺少跟人交流，会阻碍孩子的认知发展。
yánjiū biǎomíng quēshǎo gēn rén jiāoliú huì zǔài háizi de rènzhī fāzhǎn · Research shows that a lack of contact with people holds back children's cognitive development.

xiaoming 新技术总是伴随着新问题。每天长时间看电脑，会加剧眼睛的问题，还会间接引发睡眠问题。
xīn jìshù zǒngshì bànsuí zhe xīn wèntí měi tiān cháng shíjiān kàn diànnǎo huì jiājù yǎnjing de wèntí hái huì jiànjiē yǐnfā shuìmián wèntí · New technology always comes with new problems. Hours at a computer every day make eye problems worse, and indirectly cause sleep problems too.

xiaoming 这些都是代价。所以，与其说网上学习能取代课堂，不如说它能弥补课堂的不足。
zhèxiē dōu shì dàijià suǒyǐ yǔqí shuō wǎngshang xuéxí néng qǔdài kètáng bùrú shuō tā néng míbǔ kètáng de bùzú · These are all costs. So rather than say online learning can replace the classroom, we should say it can make up for what the classroom lacks.

little sister 我质疑这个说法！很多大人在网上也学得很好。
wǒ zhìyí zhège shuōfǎ hěn duō dàren zài wǎngshang yě xué de hěn hǎo · I question that! Lots of adults learn very well online.

xiaoming 大人归大人，孩子归孩子。孩子的自律能力比较薄弱。两者差异很大，要区分对待。
dàren guī dàren háizi guī háizi háizi de zìlǜ nénglì bǐjiào bóruò liǎngzhě chāyì hěn dà yào qūfēn duìdài · Adults are one thing, children are another. Children's self-discipline is weaker. The two are very different and must be treated differently.

chapter 4 questions

little sister 哥哥，假设一个孩子住在山里，附近没有好学校，他该怎么办？
gēge jiǎshè yí gè háizi zhù zài shān lǐ fùjìn méiyǒu hǎo xuéxiào tā gāi zěnme bàn · Brother, suppose a child lives in the mountains with no good school nearby. What should they do?

xiaoming 这个问题可把我难住了……我承认，这时候网上学习是最可行的办法。
zhège wèntí kě bǎ wǒ nán zhù le wǒ chéngrèn zhè shíhou wǎngshang xuéxí shì zuì kěxíng de bànfǎ · That one has stumped me... I admit that in that case online learning is the most feasible option.

little sister 所以，你的观点有点片面吧？
suǒyǐ nǐ de guāndiǎn yǒudiǎn piànmiàn ba · So your view is a bit one-sided, isn't it?

xiaoming 我不是说网上学习毫无用处，而是说它有限度。
wǒ bú shì shuō wǎngshang xuéxí háo wú yòngchù ér shì shuō tā yǒu xiàndù · I'm not saying online learning is completely useless; I'm saying it has limits.

xiaoming 我也问你：在家对着电脑学习的时候，你是不是常常这也不想学，那也不想学？
wǒ yě wèn nǐ zài jiā duìzháo diànnǎo xuéxí de shíhou nǐ shì bu shì chángcháng zhè yě bù xiǎng xué nà yě bù xiǎng xué · Let me ask you too: when you study at home in front of a computer, don't you often feel like studying neither this nor that?

little sister 那倒不至于。有时候会，不过这是我自己的弱点，跟网上学习没有关联。
nà dào búzhìyú yǒu shíhou huì búguò zhè shì wǒ zìjǐ de ruòdiǎn gēn wǎngshang xuéxí méiyǒu guānlián · It's not that bad. Sometimes, yes, but that's my own weakness; it has nothing to do with online learning.

xiaoming 我猜测很多人都有这个弱点。没有老师在身边，动力很容易减弱，人就陷入了这种状态。
wǒ cāicè hěn duō rén dōu yǒu zhège ruòdiǎn méiyǒu lǎoshī zài shēnbiān dònglì hěn róngyì jiǎnruò rén jiù xiànrù le zhè zhǒng zhuàngtài · My guess is lots of people have that weakness. Without a teacher around, motivation fades easily, and people fall into that state.

little sister 这只是你的推测，你有证据吗？
zhè zhǐ shì nǐ de tuīcè nǐ yǒu zhèngjù ma · That's only your inference. Do you have evidence?

xiaoming 有。一项研究涉及三千名学生：在网上学习的和在教室学习的，成绩平均相差8分。别的同类研究结果也差不多。
yǒu yí xiàng yánjiū shèjí sānqiān míng xuéshēng zài wǎngshang xuéxí de hé zài jiàoshì xuéxí de chéngjì píngjūn xiāngchà fēn biéde tónglèi yánjiū jiéguǒ yě chàbuduō · Yes. One study involved three thousand students: those who learned online and those in classrooms differed by 8 points on average. Other studies of the same kind found much the same.

little sister 即便如此，8分也不足以说明网上学习不好。
jíbiàn rúcǐ fēn yě bù zúyǐ shuōmíng wǎngshang xuéxí bù hǎo · Even so, 8 points isn't enough to show online learning is bad.

professor chen 好！双方都毫不客气。时间到！
hǎo shuāngfāng dōu háo bú kèqi shíjiān dào · Good! Neither side is holding back. Time's up!

chapter 5 the verdict

teacher wang 两位的发言都很精彩，我很难衡量谁更好。
liǎng wèi de fāyán dōu hěn jīngcǎi wǒ hěn nán héngliáng shéi gèng hǎo · Both speeches were excellent. It's hard for me to judge which was better.

teacher wang 妹妹从时间、费用和选择三个层面来谈，层次很清楚，每个要点都有对应的数据。
mèimei cóng shíjiān fèiyong hé xuǎnzé sān gè céngmiàn lái tán céngcì hěn qīngchu měi gè yàodiǎn dōu yǒu duìyìng de shùjù · The sister covered three aspects, time, cost and choice. Her speech was well structured, with matching data for every point.

teacher wang 她对数据的解读也很准确，而且没有忽略对方的观点。
tā duì shùjù de jiědú yě hěn zhǔnquè érqiě méiyǒu hūlüè duìfāng de guāndiǎn · Her reading of the data was accurate too, and she didn't overlook the other side's view.

teacher wang 小明则抓住了学习的实质：学习不只是知识，而是方方面面的成长。他的发言很有力度。
Xiǎomíng zé zhuā zhù le xuéxí de shízhì xuéxí bù zhǐshì zhīshi ér shì fāngfāngmiànmiàn de chéngzhǎng tā de fāyán hěn yǒu lìdù · Xiaoming, for his part, got to the essence of learning: it isn't only knowledge but growth in every aspect. His speech had real force.

teacher wang 今天的结果是：两个人都赢了！
jīntiān de jiéguǒ shì liǎng gè rén dōu yíng le · Tonight's result: you both win!

anna 我只听懂了个大概，可还是觉得很精彩。这无疑是我听过最好的一场讨论会！
wǒ zhǐ tīng dǒng le gè dàgài kě háishi juéde hěn jīngcǎi zhè wúyí shì wǒ tīng guo zuìhǎo de yì chǎng tǎolùn huì · I only got the gist, but I still loved it. That was without doubt the best debate I've ever heard!

little sister 说实话，刚开始我很紧张，几乎丧失了信心。不过今天给了我很多启示。
shuō shíhuà gāng kāishǐ wǒ hěn jǐnzhāng jīhū sàngshī le xìnxīn búguò jīntiān gěi le wǒ hěn duō qǐshì · Honestly, at the start I was so nervous I nearly lost my confidence. But today taught me a lot.

xiaoming 我得好好反思一下，我有些说法太极端了。妹妹的数据也很值得借鉴。
wǒ děi hǎohǎo fǎnsī yíxià wǒ yǒuxiē shuōfǎ tài jíduān le mèimei de shùjù yě hěn zhídé jièjiàn · I need to have a good think: some of the things I said were too extreme. And my sister's use of data is well worth learning from.

professor chen 讨论会的目的不是赢，而是一起探讨问题。很多新的理念，一开始都很有争议，后来才被大家认可。
tǎolùn huì de mùdì bú shì yíng ér shì yìqǐ tàntǎo wèntí hěn duō xīn de lǐniàn yì kāishǐ dōu hěn yǒu zhēngyì hòulái cái bèi dàjiā rènkě · The point of a debate isn't winning; it's exploring a question together. Lots of new ideas are controversial at first and only accepted later.

professor chen 比方说，以前很多人认定女孩子不用上学。现在谁还这么想？
bǐfang shuō yǐqián hěn duō rén rèndìng nǚ háizi búyòng shàngxué xiànzài shéi hái zhème xiǎng · For example, many people used to be convinced girls didn't need to go to school. Who thinks that now?

anna 所以看待新东西，要看到正面，也要看到负面。至于正方和反方，前者看重机会，后者看重质量，两者都至关重要。
suǒyǐ kàndài xīn dōngxi yào kàn dào zhèngmiàn yě yào kàn dào fùmiàn zhìyú zhèngfāng hé fǎnfāng qiánzhě kànzhòng jīhuì hòuzhě kànzhòng zhìliàng liǎngzhě dōu zhìguān zhòngyào · So when we look at something new, we should see the positive and the negative. As for the two sides, the first cares about opportunity and the second about quality, and both are vital.

xiaoming 我现在初步的设想是：网上和课堂结合起来，这可能是最切实的办法。
wǒ xiànzài chūbù de shèxiǎng shì wǎngshang hé kètáng jiéhé qǐlai zhè kěnéng shì zuì qièshí de bànfǎ · My first idea now: combine online and classroom learning. That's probably the most practical way.

little sister 我赞同。不过前提是学校愿意改变，中间也需要一个过渡。
wǒ zàntóng búguò qiántí shì xuéxiào yuànyì gǎibiàn zhōngjiān yě xūyào yí gè guòdù · I agree. But that depends on schools being willing to change, and there has to be a transition.

professor chen 看到大家兴趣这么浓厚，我很高兴。为此，下个月我们就来探讨“未来学校的形态”！
kàn dào dàjiā xìngqù zhème nónghòu wǒ hěn gāoxìng wèicǐ xià gè yuè wǒmen jiù lái tàntǎo wèilái xuéxiào de

xíngtài · I'm glad to see you all so interested. So next month, we'll explore "what the school of the future looks like"!

You've just followed a full debate in Chinese, with data, examples, rebuttals and a verdict. That is HSK 6 at work.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 48 starting a company

Tell the story of a company: when and where it was founded, who runs it, and how it grew.

Company profiles, news reports and job interviews all use this written business style, and 于 is everywhere in it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
于	yú	at, in, on; from (written)	这家{=(measure word)}公司成立于去年。 The company was set up last year.
创办	chuàngbàn	to found, set up	她十年前创办了这所{suo3-5b}学校。 She founded this school ten years ago.
创建	chuàngjiàn	to found, establish	这个网站是两个大学生创建的。 This website was set up by two university students.
创立	chuànglì	to found (a firm, a theory)	这家{=(measure word)}集团创立于北京。 This group was founded in Beijing.
经商	jīngshāng	to be in business, trade	他家三代人都在经商。 Three generations of his family have been in business.
个体	gètǐ	individual; self-employed	我舅舅是个体户，开了一家{=(measure word)}小超市。 My uncle is self-employed: he runs a small supermarket.
业	yè	-industry, line of business	这个城市的服务业很发达。 The service industry in this city is well developed.
集团	jítuán	group (of companies)	他在一家{=(measure word)}大集团工作。 He works for a big group.
总裁	zǒngcái	president, CEO	我们的总裁每天七点就到公司了。 Our CEO is in the office by seven every day.
资本	zīběn	capital (money to invest)	开公司需要一定的资本。 Starting a company takes some capital.
资产	zīchǎn	assets, property	这家{=(measure word)}公司的资产超过一亿元。 The company's assets are worth over 100 million yuan.
打造	dǎzào	to build, create (a brand)	我们要打造一个年轻人喜欢的品牌。 We want to build a brand young people love.
运营	yùnyíng	to run, operate (a business)	这个网站由三个人运营。 This website is run by three people.
承办	chéngbàn	to host, undertake (an event)	今年的运动会由我们学校承办。 Our school is hosting this year's sports day.
委托	wěituō	to entrust, commission	公司委托律师处理这件事。 The company asked a lawyer to deal with the matter.
转让	zhuǎnràng	to transfer, sell on	这家{=(measure word)}小店因房租太贵，打算转让。

			The rent is too high, so the little shop is up for sale.
合并	hébìng	to merge	两家{=(measure word)}公司去年合并了。 The two companies merged last year.
收购	shōugòu	to buy up, acquire	那家{=(measure word)}大集团收购了一家{=(measure word)}小公司。 That big group took over a small company.
率先	shuàixiān	to be the first to, lead	这家{=(measure word)}公司率先推出了新产品。 This company was the first to bring out the new product.
试图	shìtú	to try, attempt (written)	他试图说服老板，但没有成功。 He tried to win the boss over, but failed.
寻求	xúnqiú	to seek (help, support)	遇到困难时，要|学会{==to learn (how) to}寻求帮助。 When things get hard, learn to ask for help.
得以	déyǐ	so that … can (written)	有了大家的帮助，这个问题才得以解决。 Only with everyone's help could the problem be solved.
给予	jǐyǔ	to give, grant (written)	老师给予了我很大的鼓励。 My teacher gave me a lot of encouragement.
借助	jièzhù	with the help of	借助词典，我看懂了这篇文章。 With a dictionary, I understood the article.

pattern 于: at, in, from (written style)

verb | 于 | time / place

于 is the written cousin of 在 and 从. It goes right after the verb: 成立于去年 (set up last year), 毕业于北京大学 (graduated from Peking University), 位于市中心 (located in the city centre). With 将 it dates future events: 将于下周举行.

这家公司成立于去年。 **zhè jiā gōngsī chénglì yú qùnián** The company was set up last year.

他毕业于北京大学。 **tā bìyè yú Běijīng dàxué** He graduated from Peking University.

会议将于明天上午举行。 **huìyì jiāng yú míngtiān shàngwǔ jǔxíng** The meeting will be held tomorrow morning.

dialogue the company story

manager liu 安娜，明天总裁要来，公司的介绍你准备好了吗?
Ānnà míngtiān zǒngcái yào lái gōngsī de jièshào nǐ zhǔnbèi hǎo le ma · Anna, the CEO is coming tomorrow. Is the company presentation ready?

anna 准备好了。我们公司于五年前创建，一开始只有三个人。
zhǔnbèi hǎo le wǒmen gōngsī yú wǔ nián qián chuàngjiàn yì kāishǐ zhǐyǒu sān gè rén · Yes. We started five years ago with just three people.

manager liu 对，那时候我们没有资本，也没有资产，只有一个想法。
duì nà shíhou wǒmen méiyǒu zīběn yě méiyǒu zīchǎn zhǐyǒu yí gè xiǎngfǎ · Right. Back then we had no capital and no assets, just an idea.

anna 后来我们借助一家大集团的平台，打造了自己的产品。
hòulái wǒmen jièzhù yì jiā dà jítuán de píngtái dǎzào le zìjǐ de chǎnpǐn · Then we used a big group's platform to build our own product.

manager liu 没错。现在公司运营得很好，还承办了好几次技术大会。
méi cuò xiànzài gōngsī yùnyíng de hěn hǎo hái chéngbàn le hǎojǐ cì jìshù dàhuì · Exactly. Now the company runs well, and we've even hosted several tech conferences.

anna 听说有家公司想收购我们，还想跟我们合并?
tīngshuō yǒu jiā gōngsī xiǎng shōugòu wǒmen hái xiǎng gēn wǒmen hébìng · I heard a company wants to buy us, or even merge with us?

manager liu 好你个安娜，消息比我还快！不过总裁不打算转让公司。
hǎo nǐ gè Ānnà xiāoxi bǐ wǒ hái kuài búguò zǒngcái bù dǎsuàn zhuǎnràng gōngsī · Why, you, Anna, you hear things before I do! But the CEO has no plans to sell.

anna 那如果他们委托我们做项目呢?
nà rúguǒ tāmen wěituō wǒmen zuò xiàngmù ne · And if they want to commission projects from us?

manager liu 那当然欢迎。总裁说过，对合作伙伴要给予充分的信任。
nà dāngrán huānyíng zǒngcái shuō guo duì hézuò huǒbàn yào jǐyǔ chōngfèn de xìnrèn · Then they're welcome. The CEO always says we should give our partners full trust.

good to know · Company websites love 于: 成立于, 位于, 致力于. In conversation, people just say 在 or 去年成立的. 总裁 is the head of a big company; in a small start-up people often just say 老板 or 老总.

You can now read the "about us" page of a Chinese company, and tell your own firm's story in the same style.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 49 made in china

Talk about how goods are made, stored and bought: makers, raw materials, orders and stock.

"Made in China" is a phrase the whole world knows, and factory visits, orders and supply chains come up in any job that buys or sells.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
厂家	chǎngjiā	manufacturer, factory	这台冰箱的厂家在南方。 The maker of this fridge is in the south.
厂商	chǎngshāng	manufacturer, firm	很多手机厂商都来参加了这次活动。 Many phone makers came to the event.
产地	chǎndì	place of origin	这种茶的产地在南方。 This tea comes from the south.
产出	chǎnchū	to produce, turn out	这家{=(measure word)}工厂每年产出上百万件产品。 This factory turns out over a million items a year.
国产	guóchǎn	made in China, domestic	现在很多人喜欢买国产手机。 Lots of people like to buy Chinese-made phones now.
制品	zhìpǐn	products, goods (made of ...)	为了保护环境，我们要少用塑料制品。 To protect the environment we should use less plastic.
原料	yuánliào	raw material	面包的主要原料是面粉。 The main ingredient of bread is flour.
原材料	yuáncáiliào	raw materials	原材料的价格上涨了，产品也要涨价。 Raw materials cost more, so prices are going up too.
工序	gōngxù	step in production	做一双鞋要经过几十道工序。 Making a pair of shoes takes dozens of steps.
仓库	cāngkù	warehouse	这批货还在仓库里。 This batch of goods is still in the warehouse.
供应	gōngyìng	to supply	这家{=(measure word)}工厂为很多超市供应牛奶。 This plant supplies milk to many supermarkets.
供给	gōngjǐ	supply (economics)	供给少了，价格就会上涨。 When supply falls, prices go up.
采购	cǎigòu	to purchase (for a firm)	张女士负责公司的采购。 Ms Zhang is in charge of buying for the company.
订单	dìngdān	order (for goods)	这个月的订单比上{=last}个月多了一倍。 We have twice as many orders this month as last month.
现货	xiànhuò	goods in stock	这种衣服有现货，今天就能发。 This item is in stock and can go out today.

定制	dìngzhì	to custom-make	这套家具是我们定制的。 This furniture was made to order for us.
高端	gāoduān	high-end	这家{=(measure word)}店只{zhi3}卖高端产品。 This shop only sells high-end goods.
商标	shāngbiāo	trademark, logo	这个商标大家都认识。 Everyone knows this logo.
劳动力	láodònglì	labour force, workers	这里的劳动力比较便宜。 Labour is fairly cheap here.
通用	tōngyòng	general-purpose, universal	这个软件在手机和电脑上都通用。 This app works on both phones and computers.
专用	zhuānyòng	for a special use	这是老人专用的座位。 These seats are for older people.
足	zú	enough; fully, as much as	这个仓库足有两个球场那么大。 The warehouse is a good two pitches in size.
前期	qiánqī	early stage	项目前期的准备工作非常重要。 The groundwork at the start of a project really matters.
后期	hòuqī	later stage	后期的工作由小明负责。 Xiaoming is in charge of the later stages.
情形	qíngxing	situation, circumstances	这种情形下，我们只能等。 In a situation like this we can only wait.

pattern 东一个、西一个: one here, one there

A **— + measure** **B** **— + measure**

Put two opposite words (东/西, 这儿/那儿, 左/右) each before 一 + a measure word, and you get things scattered all over or done without any order. It often sounds a bit critical: messy, scattered, not to the point.

地上东一个、西一个，全是玩具。 **dì shàng dōng yí gè xī yí gè quán shì wánjù** Toys everywhere, all over the floor.

她这儿一件、那儿一件，衣服扔得到处都是。 **tā zhèr yí jiàn nàr yí jiàn yīfu rēng de dàochù dōu shì** A top here, a top there: she leaves her clothes all over the place.

他东一句、西一句，说了半天也没说清楚。 **tā dōng yí jù xī yí jù shuō le bàntiān yě méi shuō qīngchu** He rambled on and on and never got to the point.

dialogue the factory visit

ms zhang 这家厂商跟我们合作十多年了，他们的商标你肯定见过。
zhè jiā chǎngshāng gēn wǒmen hézuò shí duō nián le tāmen de shāngbiāo nǐ kěndìng jiàn guo · We've worked with this firm for over ten years. You'll know their logo.

anna 见过！原来是这个厂家。他们的原料从哪儿来?
jiàn guo yuánlái shì zhège chǎngjiā tāmen de yuánliào cóng nǎr lái · I do! So this is the maker. Where do their raw materials come from?

ms zhang 大多来自本地。前期的几道工序在这里，后期在另一个工厂。
dàduō láizì běndì qiánqī de jǐ dào gōngxù zài zhèlǐ hòuqī zài lìng yí gè gōngchǎng · Mostly from round here. The early steps happen here, the later ones in another plant.

anna 这个仓库真大啊！可是里面的货东一堆、西一堆的。
zhège cāngkù zhēn dà a kěshì lǐmiàn de huò dōng yì duī xī yì duī de · What a huge warehouse! But the goods are piled up all over the place.

ms zhang 它足有两个球场那么大。最近订单太多，把他们忙坏了。
tā zú yǒu liǎng gè qiúchǎng nàme dà zuìjìn dìngdān tài duō bǎ tāmen máng huài le · It's a good two pitches in size. Orders have been pouring in lately and it's run them off their feet.

anna 劳动力不够吗?
láodònglì búgòu ma · Are they short of workers?

ms zhang 是啊，所以供应有点儿慢。
shì a suǒyǐ gōngyìng yǒudiǎnr màn · Yes, so supplies are a bit slow.

anna 那我们这次采购的高端设备，能按时交货吗?
nà wǒmen zhè cì cǎigòu de gāoduān shèbèi néng ànshí jiāo huò ma · Then can they deliver the high-end equipment we're buying on time?

ms zhang 放心，那是专用设备，不是通用产品，他们会优先做。
fàngxīn nà shì zhuānyòng shèbèi bú shì tōngyòng chǎnpǐn tāmen huì yōuxiān zuò · Don't worry. It's special-purpose kit, not a general product, so they'll do it first.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

仓 cāng storehouse

good to know · 厂家 and 厂商 both mean the maker; 厂商 also covers the firm that sells, so you hear it for phone and car brands. 供应 is what a supplier does for a customer; 供给 is the economist's word, as in 供给和需求 supply and demand.

Next time you read "made in China" on a label, you can ask about its **产地**, its **原材料** and how many **工序** it took.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 50 selling and deals

Talk about selling, pricing and doing deals, and complain about choices that make no sense.

Trade fairs, price talks and sales strategy are daily life in Chinese business, and 放着……不…… is how people grumble about wasted chances.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
推销	tuīxiāo	to promote, sell (hard)	他每天打电话向客户推销产品。 He phones clients every day to sell them products.
畅销	chàngxiāo	to sell well	这本小说非常畅销。 This novel is a bestseller.
上市	shàngshì	to come on the market; to list	新手机下{=next}个月上市。 The new phone comes out next month.
定价	dìngjià	to set a price; price	这件衣服定价五百元。 This top is priced at 500 yuan.
谈判	tánpàn	to negotiate; talks	双方谈判了三天，还没有结果。 The two sides have talked for three days with no result yet.
成交	chéngjiāo	to close a deal	我们终于成交了！ We finally closed the deal!
博览会	bólǎnhuì	fair, expo	每年都有很多公司来参加这个博览会。 Many companies come to this fair every year.
参展	cānzhǎn	to exhibit (at a fair)	我们公司今年第一次参展。 This is our company's first year exhibiting.
渠道	qúdào	channel (for sales)	我们需要找到新的销售渠道。 We need to find new sales channels.
贸易	màoyì	trade	张女士在一家{=(measure word)}贸易公司工作。 Ms Zhang works for a trading company.
前景	qiánjǐng	prospects, outlook	这个行业的前景很好。 This industry has a bright future.
看好	kànhǎo	to be optimistic about	大家都看好这个年轻人。 Everyone thinks this young man will go far.
决策	juécè	to decide (policy); decision	这是总裁做出的决策。 That was the CEO's decision.
策略	cèlüè	strategy	我们得{dei3}改变销售策略。 We need to change our sales strategy.
预期	yùqī	to expect; expectation	效果比预期的好。 It worked better than we expected.
危机	wēijī	crisis	公司遇到了很大的危机。 The company ran into a serious crisis.
倒闭	dǎobì	to close down, go under	那家{=(measure word)}饭馆去年倒闭了。 That restaurant closed down last year.

破产	pòchǎn	to go bankrupt	这家{=(measure word)}公司差点儿破产。 The company nearly went bankrupt.
亏损	kuīsǔn	to make a loss	这个项目亏损了二十万元。 The project lost 200,000 yuan.
进而	jìnér	and then, and further	先学好口语，进而提高写作水平。 First get your speaking right, then go on to improve your writing.
迫切	pòqiè	urgent, pressing	我们迫切需要更多的|人手{==staff, hands}。 We urgently need more hands.
不顾	bùgù	to disregard, in spite of	他不顾危险，冲进了火里。 Ignoring the danger, he rushed into the fire.
中断	zhōngduàn	to break off, interrupt	电话突然中断了。 The call suddenly cut out.
遭到	zāodào	to meet with (something bad)	他的建议遭到了大家的反对。 His proposal met with opposition from everyone.

pattern 放着x不y: to leave x unused

放着 | something good | 不 | verb | (却 / 一定要 ...)

放着 means “leaving it lying there”. 放着X不Y says someone has a good X right in front of them and won’t use it, then often adds what they insist on doing instead, with 却 or 一定要. It is a complaint or a puzzled question.

放着电梯不坐，你为什么走楼梯？ **fàng zhe diàntī bú zuò nǐ wèi shénme zǒu lóutī** Why take the stairs when there’s a lift right there?

他放着高工资不要，去了一家小公司。 **tā fàng zhe gāo gōngzī bú yào qù le yì jiā xiǎo gōngsī** He turned down a big salary and went to a small firm.

放着这么好的机会不用，太可惜了。 **fàng zhe zhème hǎo de jīhuì bú yòng tài kěxī le** It’s a real shame to let such a good chance go to waste.

dialogue after the fair

anna 我们第一次参展，博览会上就有三家公司想跟我们谈判。
wǒmen dì yī cì cānzhǎn bólǎnhuì shàng jiù yǒu sān jiā gōngsī xiǎng gēn wǒmen tánpàn · Our first time exhibiting, and three companies at the fair already want to talk business.

manager liu 太好了！新产品下个月上市，定价定了吗?
tài hǎo le xīn chǎnpǐn xià gè yuè shàngshì dìngjià dìng le ma · Brilliant! The new product launches next month. Have we set the price?

anna 还没有。有人建议先降价，把市场打开。
hái méiyǒu yǒu rén jiànyì xiān jiàngjià bǎ shìchǎng dǎkāi · Not yet. Some people say we should cut the price first to open up the market.

manager liu 价格归价格，质量归质量，好东西不能卖得太便宜。
jiàgé guī jiàgé zhìliàng guī zhìliàng hǎo dōngxi bù néng mài de tài piányi · Price is one thing, quality is another. Good products shouldn't go cheap.

anna 可是去年合作中断以后，我们亏损了不少。
kěshì qùnián hézuò zhōngduàn yǐhòu wǒmen kuīsǔn le bù shǎo · But after that partnership broke off last year, we lost quite a lot.

manager liu 亏了就亏了，没什么。重要的是找到合适的渠道，进而打开国际贸易市场。
kuī le jiù kuī le méi shénme zhòngyào de shì zhǎo dào héshì de qúdào jìnér dǎkāi guójì màoyì shìchǎng · What's lost is lost. What matters is finding the right channels and then breaking into international trade.

anna 说到渠道，有家大公司想帮我们推销，您看呢?
shuō dào qúdào yǒu jiā dà gōngsī xiǎng bāng wǒmen tuīxiāo nín kàn ne · Speaking of channels, a big company wants to sell for us. What do you think?

manager liu 放着这么好的机会不用，那就太可惜了。不过最后的决策要由总裁来做。
fàng zhe zhème hǎo de jīhuì bú yòng nà jiù tài kěxī le búguò zuìhòu de juécè yào yóu zǒngcái lái zuò · It would be a shame to pass up a chance like that. But the final decision is the CEO's.

anna 明白。我先跟他们谈，争取这个月成交。
míngbai wǒ xiān gēn tāmen tán zhēngqǔ zhège yuè chéngjiāo · Got it. I'll talk to them first and try to close the deal this month.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

贸
mào
trade

渠
qú
canal, ditch

good to know · 遭到 is only for bad things: 遭到反对, 遭到拒绝, 遭到批评. For good things use 受到 or 得到. 倒闭 is a business closing down; 破产 is the legal end, going bankrupt.

You can now pitch a product, talk price, and grumble like a native when someone wastes a good chance.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 51 money matters

Talk about personal money: saving, spending, loans, transfers and interest.

Banks, rent, loans and sending money home are real-life conversations, and 除……外 is how forms, notices and careful speakers list exceptions.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
除	chú	except, apart from	除周日外，银行每天都营业。 The bank is open every day except Sunday.
金钱	jīnqián	money (as a thing)	金钱买不到真正的友谊。 Money can't buy real friendship.
金额	jīné	amount (of money)	请写清楚汇款的金额。 Please write the amount clearly.
货币	huòbì	currency	人民币是中国的货币。 The renminbi is China's currency.
金子	jīnzi	gold	这块手表是用金子做的。 This watch is made of gold.
银	yín	silver	她戴着一条银项链。 She's wearing a silver necklace.
财富	cáifù	wealth	健康是最大的财富。 Health is the greatest wealth.
财产	cáichǎn	property, belongings	他把全部财产都留给了孩子。 He left everything he owned to his children.
财务	cáiwù	finance, accounts	她在公司负责财务。 She's in charge of finance at the company.
理财	lǐcái	to manage your money	年轻人也应该{==to learn (how) to}理财。 Young people should learn to manage their money too.
储蓄	chǔxù	to save; savings	很多中国家庭都有储蓄的习惯。 Many Chinese families are in the habit of saving.
利息	lìxī	interest (on money)	现在银行的利息很低。 Bank interest is very low right now.
贷款	dàikuǎn	to borrow (from a bank); loan	他们贷款买了一套房子。 They took out a loan to buy a flat.
分期	fēnqī	to pay in instalments	这台电脑可以分期付款。 You can pay for this computer in instalments.
汇	huì	to send money, remit	我每个月给父母汇一些钱。 I send my parents some money every month.
汇款	huìkuǎn	to send money; transfer	汇款已经到了，请查收。 The money has arrived; please check.
提取	tíqǔ	to withdraw, extract	我想提取两千元现金。 I'd like to withdraw 2,000 yuan in cash.

支出	zhīchū	to spend; spending	这个月的支出比收入还多。 This month I spent more than I earned.
收益	shōuyì	earnings, return	钱存|在银行里，收益不高。 Money in the bank doesn't earn much.
收取	shōuqǔ	to charge, collect	银行会收取一点儿手续费。 The bank charges a small fee.
款	kuǎn	sum of money; style	这笔{=(measure word for sums of money)}款下{=next}周才|能到。 This sum won't arrive until next week.
剩余	shèngyú	to be left over; surplus	剩余的钱我都|存起来{==to save up}了。 I saved whatever was left over.
加倍	jiābèi	to double; doubly	考试前，他加倍努力地复习。 Before the exam he studied twice as hard.

pattern 除……外: apart from, except

除 | X | 外 | ，都 … / 还 …

除……外 is the short, written form of 除了……以外. Followed by 都, it leaves X out: "everyone except X". Followed by 还 or 也, it adds to X: "besides X, also …".

除周日外，银行每天都营业。 **chú zhōu rì wài yínháng měi tiān dōu yíngyè** The bank is open every day except Sunday.

除人民币外，这家店也收别的货币。 **chú rénmínbì wài zhè jiā diàn yě shōu biéde huòbì** Besides renminbi, this shop takes other currencies too.

除财务部外，其他部门都要加班。 **chú cáiwùbù wài qítā bùmén dōu yào jiābān** Every department apart from finance has to work late.

dialogue a first scholarship

little sister 安娜，我第一次拿到奖学金，想学理财，你教教我吧！
Ānnà wǒ dì yī cì ná dào jiǎngxuéjīn xiǎng xué lǐcái nǐ jiāo jiao wǒ ba · Anna, I've got my first scholarship and I want to learn to manage money. Teach me!

xiaoming 瞧把她高兴得！一共才几千块钱。
qiáo bǎ tā gāoxìng de yígòng cái jǐ qiān kuài qián · Look how happy it's made her! It's only a few thousand yuan.

anna 钱不在多少嘛。你可以先存一部分，银行会给利息。
qián bú zài duōshao ma nǐ kěyǐ xiān cún yí bùfen yínháng huì gěi lìxī · It's not about how much. You could save some first; the bank pays interest.

little sister 利息太低了！听说金子的价格一直在涨，我想买金子。
lìxī tài dī le tīngshuō jīnzi de jiàgé yìzhí zài zhǎng wǒ xiǎng mǎi jīnzi · The interest is so low! I hear gold keeps going up. I want to buy gold.

anna 金子、银都可以买，但千万别把全部财产都放进去。
jīnzi yín dōu kěyǐ mǎi dàn qiānwàn bié bǎ quánbù cáichǎn dōu fàng jinqu · Gold or silver are fine, but don't put everything you own into them.

xiaoming 她呀，这也不想做，那也不想做，就想很快变富。
tā yā zhè yě bù xiǎng zuò nà yě bù xiǎng zuò jiù xiǎng hěn kuài biàn fù · Her? She can't be bothered with this or that, she just wants to get rich quick.

little sister 才不是！我只是不想让剩余的钱放着不动。
cái bú shì wǒ zhǐshì bù xiǎng ràng shèngyú de qián fàng zhe bú dòng · Not true! I just don't want the money I have left to sit there doing nothing.

anna 那就做个计划：除生活费外，每个月存一点儿。下学期再加倍，一年下来就不少了。
nà jiù zuò gè jìhuà chú shēnghuó fèi wài měi gè yuè cún yìdiǎnr xià xuéqī zài jiābèi yì nián xiàlái jiù bù shǎo le · Then make a plan: apart from living costs, save a little each month. Double it next term, and by the end of the year it adds up.

little sister 好主意！金钱不是一切，但有个计划总是好的。
hǎo zhǔyi jīnqián bú shì yíqiè dàn yǒu gè jìhuà zǒngshì hǎo de · Good idea! Money isn't everything, but a plan always helps.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

储
chǔ
to store

蓄
xù
to store up

good to know · 财产 is what you own; 财富 is wealth in general; 财务 is a firm's accounts. All three start with 财 money. Paying in instalments is 分期付款, and online shops in China often offer it with no interest.

You can now open an account, ask about interest, and talk a friend out of putting all their savings into gold.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 52 stocks and numbers

Talk about shares, funds and numbers: rises, falls, shares of a total and “up to now”.

Business news is full of percentages and totals, and 到……为止 is how reports and people sum things up “so far”.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
为止	wéizhǐ	up to, until	到目前为止，一切都很顺利。 So far, everything has gone smoothly.
股票	gǔpiào	share, stock	他买了一些股票。 He bought some shares.
股市	gǔshì	stock market	最近股市不太好。 The stock market hasn’t been great lately.
炒股	chǎogǔ	to trade shares	我爸爸从来不炒股。 My dad never trades shares.
基金	jījīn	fund	她每个月买一点儿基金。 She puts a bit into a fund every month.
投资	tóuzī	to invest; investment	他把钱投资在了一家{=(measure word)}小公司。 He invested his money in a small company.
持有	chíyǒu	to hold, own	他持有这家{=(measure word)}公司百分之十的股票。 He holds ten per cent of the company’s shares.
占有	zhànyǒu	to hold, occupy (a share)	这家{=(measure word)}公司在国内市场占有重要地位。 This company holds an important place in the home market.
富裕	fùyù	well-off, prosperous	这个村子越来越富裕了。 This village is getting more and more prosperous.
跌	diē	to fall (prices); to trip	今天股市跌了。 The stock market fell today.
倍增	bèizēng	to double, multiply	十年来{=(over the past …)}，这里的人口倍增。 The population here has doubled in ten years.
大幅	dàfú	sharply, by a wide margin	今年的销量大幅增长。 Sales rose sharply this year.
幅度	fúdù	range, extent	这次涨价的幅度不大。 The price rise isn’t big.
比重	bǐzhòng	proportion, share	服务业在经济中的比重越来越大。 Services make up a growing share of the economy.
占比	zhànbǐ	share, percentage	女性员工的占比超过了一半。 Women make up over half the staff.
百分点	bǎifēndiǎn	percentage point	今年的增长比去年高了两个百分点。 Growth this year is two points higher than last year.

率	lǜ	rate (-rate, -ratio)	这里的失业率比较低。 Unemployment here is fairly low.
成	chéng	tenth, ten per cent	今年的收入增加了两成。 Income is up twenty per cent this year.
人均	rénjūn	per person, per capita	这家{=(measure word)}饭店人均一百元左右。 This restaurant costs about 100 yuan a head.
共计	gòngjì	to total, come to	这次活动共计有五百人参加。 Five hundred people in all took part.
总计	zǒngjì	to total; grand total	三个月的费用总计六千元。 Three months come to 6,000 yuan in total.
微小	wēixiǎo	tiny, slight	这只{zhi3}是一个微小的变化。 It's only a tiny change.
大致	dàzhì	roughly, more or less	我大致明白你的意思了。 I more or less get what you mean.

pattern 到……为止: up to, until

到 | a time / a point | 为止 | , what has happened

到 + a time + 为止 marks the end point: everything up to then. 到目前为止 (so far) is the one you will hear most. It can also end an activity: 今天就到这里为止 (let's stop here today).

到现在为止，一切都很顺利。 **dào xiànzài wéizhǐ yíqiè dōu hěn shùnlì** So far, everything's gone smoothly.

今天的课就到这里为止。 **jīntiān de kè jiù dào zhèlǐ wéizhǐ** That's all for today's class.

报名到下周五为止。 **bàomíng dào xià zhōu wǔ wéizhǐ** Registration closes next Friday.

dialogue xiaoming the investor

xiaoming 安娜，我爸爸再三提醒我，不要随便炒股。
Ānnà wǒ bàba zàisān tíxǐng wǒ búyào suíbiàn chǎogǔ · Anna, my dad keeps warning me not to trade shares carelessly.

anna 李医生说得对。最近股市跌得很厉害。
Lǐyīshēng shuō de duì zuìjìn gǔshì diē de hěn lìhai · Dr Li is right. The market's been falling hard lately.

xiaoming 可是我所认识的同事，大都在投资股票或者基金。
kěshì wǒ suǒ rènshi de tóngshì dàdū zài tóuzī gǔpiào huòzhě jījīn · But most colleagues I know are investing in shares or funds.

anna 投资可以，但别只看收益，也要看风险。你投了多少？
tóuzī kěyǐ dàn bié zhǐ kàn shōuyì yě yào kàn fēngxiǎn nǐ tóu le duōshao · Investing is fine, but don't just look at the returns; look at the risks too. How much have you put in?

xiaoming 不多，大致占我存款的两成。
bù duō dàzhì zhàn wǒ cúnkuǎn de liǎng chéng · Not much. Roughly twenty per cent of my savings.

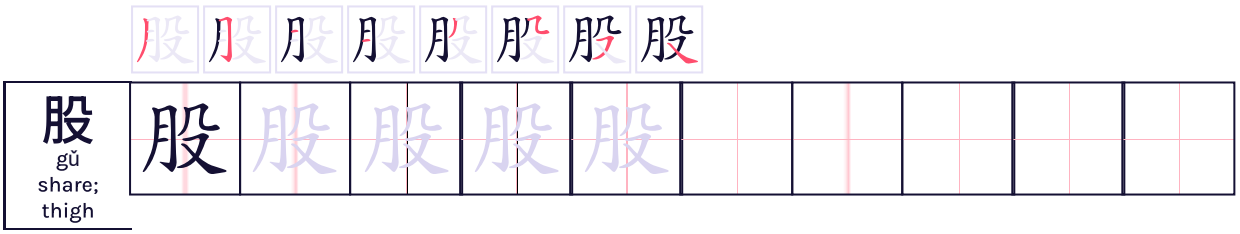
anna 那还好。上周跌的幅度大吗？
nà hái hǎo shàng zhōu diē de fúdù dà ma · That's OK then. Did it fall much last week?

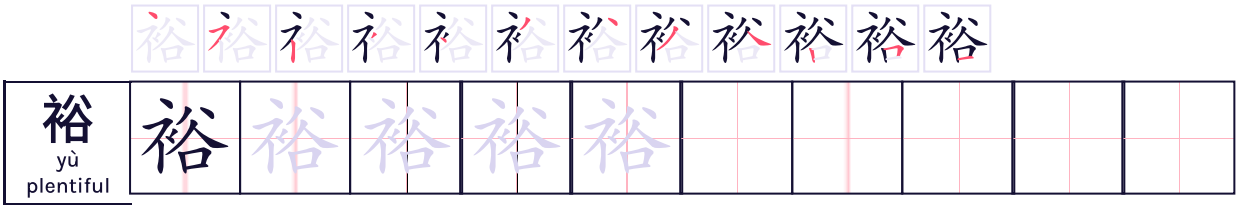
xiaoming 跌了三个百分点，不过只是微小的变化。
diē le sān gè bǎifēndiǎn búguò zhǐshì wēixiǎo de biànhuà · Three points, but that's only a tiny change.

anna 到现在为止，你一共亏了多少？
dào xiànzài wéizhǐ nǐ yígòng kuī le duōshao · So how much have you lost so far, all in all?

xiaoming 总计不到一千块。我一再告诉自己：要冷静！
zǒngjì bu dào yìqiān kuài wǒ yízài gàosu zìjǐ yào lěngjìng · Under a thousand in total. I keep telling myself: stay calm!

write it trace the grey, then write your own





good to know · 成 counts in tenths: 三成 is 30%, 八成 80%. 八成 also means "most likely": 他八成忘了 he's probably forgotten. 百分点 is a percentage point: from 3% to 5% is up two 百分点, not two per cent.

You can now follow a market report, talk about your own investments, and sum up anything with 到目前为止.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 53 lucky and unlucky

Tell stories of good and bad luck, with twists nobody expected, and talk about compensation and dates in a month.

A good story needs a twist, and 不料 is the written storyteller's favourite way to say "but then, out of nowhere …".

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
不料	bùliào	unexpectedly, to one's surprise	我以为他会同意，不料他拒绝了。 I thought he'd agree, but to my surprise he said no.
彩票	cǎipiào	lottery ticket	他每周都买一张彩票。 He buys a lottery ticket every week.
补偿	bǔcháng	to make up for, compensate	我想用这顿饭补偿你。 Let this meal make it up to you.
补贴	bǔtiē	allowance, subsidy	公司每个月给我们交通补贴。 The company gives us a monthly travel allowance.
赔偿	péicháng	to pay damages; compensation	行李丢了，公司赔偿了我五百元。 My luggage was lost and the company paid me 500 yuan.
流入	liúrù	to flow into	大量资金流入了这个行业。 A lot of money has poured into this industry.
流通	liútōng	to circulate	开窗让空气流通一下。 Open the window and let some air through.
扩展	kuòzhǎn	to expand, extend	公司打算扩展海外业务。 The company plans to expand its overseas business.
金融	jīnróng	finance (banking)	他大学学的是金融。 He studied finance at university.
上旬	shàngxún	first ten days of a month	我们下{=next}个月上旬出发。 We leave early next month.
中旬	zhōngxún	middle ten days of a month	这本书将在本{ben3-5}月中旬出版。 The book comes out in the middle of this month.
下旬	xiàxún	last ten days of a month	每个月下旬发工资。 We get paid at the end of every month.
钟头	zhōngtóu	hour (spoken)	我等了你两个钟头！ I waited two hours for you!
一贯	yīguàn	consistent, all along	他一贯很认真。 He has always been very conscientious.
多余	duōyú	surplus; unnecessary	你的担心是多余的。 There's no need for you to worry.
求	qiú	to beg, ask; to seek	我求你帮我一个忙{=(a favour)}。 I'm begging you to do me a favour.

不曾	bùcéng	never (have done)	我不曾去过{guo}那里。 I have never been there.
从未	cóngwèi	never (before)	我从未见过{guo}这么美的景色。 I've never seen such a beautiful view.
为何	wèihé	why (written)	你为何不早说? Why didn't you say so earlier?
不已	bùyǐ	endlessly, no end	听到这个消息，她激动不已。 She was thrilled to bits by the news.
杂	zá	mixed, miscellaneous	我的工作很杂，什么都要做。 My job is a mixed bag: I do everything.
不成	bùchéng	won't do; surely not ...?	难道你还想一个人做完不成? Surely you don't plan to do it all on your own?
冲	chòng	towards, at; strong	她冲{chong4}我笑了笑。 She smiled at me.

pattern 不料: unexpectedly, but then

what you expected , 不料 **what really happened**

不料 (literally "not expected") opens the second half of a story, where the surprise comes. The first half says the plan or the expectation. It is a little written; in speech people say 没想到.

我以为他会同意，不料他一口拒绝了。 **wǒ yǐwéi tā huì tóngyì búliào tā yìkǒu jùjué le** I thought he'd agree, but he flatly refused.

本来天气很好，不料下午突然刮起了大风。 **běnlái tiānqì hěn hǎo búliào xiàwǔ tūrán guā qǐ le dà fēng** The weather was lovely, but then a strong wind blew up in the afternoon.

我以为没有补贴，不料公司每个月给五百元。 **wǒ yǐwéi méiyǒu bǔtiē búliào gōngsī měi gè yuè gěi wǔbǎi yuán** I thought there was no allowance, but the company pays 500 yuan a month.

dialogue lucky and unlucky

xiaoming 安娜，你知道吗？我上个月中旬买了一张彩票，不料真的中奖了！
Ānnà nǐ zhīdào ma wǒ shàng gè yuè zhōngxún mǎi le yì zhāng cǎipiào búliào zhēn de zhòngjiǎng le · Anna, guess what? I bought a lottery ticket in the middle of last month, and I actually won!

anna 真的吗？你不是从未买过彩票吗？
zhēn de ma nǐ bú shì cóngwèi mǎi guo cǎipiào ma · Really? I thought you'd never bought one?

xiaoming 是啊，就买了一次，只中了两百块。
shì a jiù mǎi le yí cì zhǐ zhòng le liǎngbǎi kuài · Right, just that once. And I only won two hundred.

anna 那也不错！可我今天就没那么幸运了。
nà yě búcuò kě wǒ jīntiān jiù méi nàme xìngyùn le · Still not bad! I wasn't so lucky today.

xiaoming 怎么了？
zěnme le · What happened?

anna 我在路上等了一个钟头的车，到了公司，老板又冲我发了脾气。
wǒ zài lùshang děng le yí gè zhōngtóu de chē dào le gōngsī lǎobǎn yòu chòng wǒ fā le píqi · I waited an hour for a bus, and when I got to work the boss lost his temper with me.

xiaoming 为何？你一贯很认真啊。
wèihé nǐ yíguàn hěn rènzhēn a · Why? You're always so careful.

anna 他以为我把一份文件弄丢了，不料文件就在他自己的桌子上。
tā yǐwéi wǒ bǎ yí fèn wénjiàn nòng diū le búliào wénjiàn jiù zài tā zìjǐ de zhuōzi shàng · He thought I'd lost a document, but it turned out to be on his own desk.

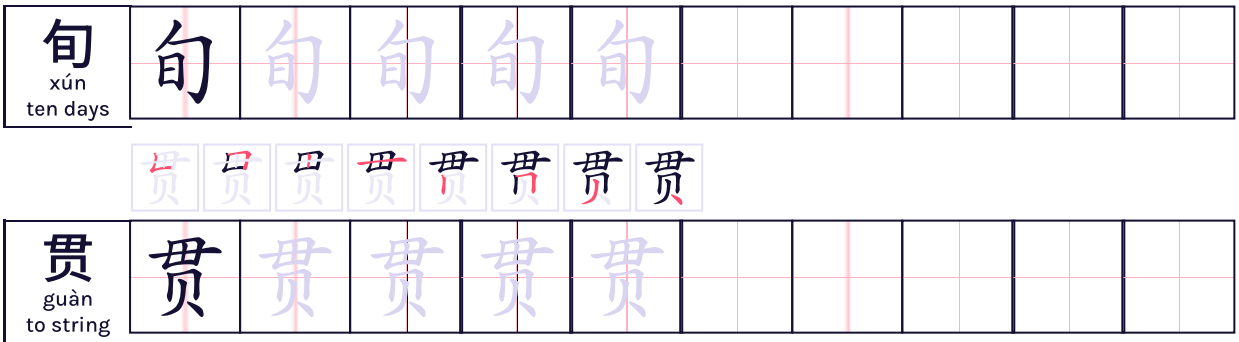
xiaoming 难道他还不道歉不成？
nándào tā hái bú dàoqiàn bùchéng · Surely he apologised?

anna 道歉了，还请我喝咖啡作为补偿。所以运气不好，也未必是坏事嘛！
dàoqiàn le hái qǐng wǒ hē kāfēi zuòwéi bǔcháng suǒyǐ yùnqi bù hǎo yě wèibì shì huài shì ma · He did, and bought me a coffee to make up for it. So bad luck isn't necessarily a bad thing!

write it trace the grey, then write your own



旬
xún
ten days



贯
guàn
to string through

good to know · A month splits into three 旬 of about ten days: 上旬 (1st–10th), 中旬 (11th–20th), 下旬 (21st to the end). 补偿 makes up for a loss in general; 赔偿 is paying for damage you caused, often by law; 补贴 is an extra allowance.

Every good story has a twist: with **不料** you can tell yours the way Chinese writers do.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 54 mission: the start-up

Follow a business story from a trade fair to a deal, and use the words of founding, making, selling, money and the stock market together.

Real business talk mixes everything at once: prices, orders, loans, risks and surprises. This story puts the whole unit to work.

chapter 1 a visitor at the stand

manager liu 安娜，这次博览会对我们非常重要。公司的资金只够用到下个月下旬。
Ānnà zhè cì bólǎnhuì duì wǒmen fēicháng zhòngyào gōngsī de zījīn zhǐ gòu yòng dào xià gè yuè xiàxún · Anna, this expo matters a lot. The company's money only lasts until late next month.

anna 明白。到今天为止，已经有二十多家公司来过我们这儿了。
míngbai dào jīntiān wéizhǐ yǐjīng yǒu èrshí duō jiā gōngsī lái guo wǒmen zhèr le · Understood. Up to today, more than twenty companies have visited our stand.

manager liu 两天共计收到八个订单，效果超出了我的预期。
liǎng tiān gòngjì shōudào bā gè dìngdān xiàoguǒ chāochū le wǒ de yùqī · In two days we've had eight orders in all. It's gone better than I expected.

anna 不过参展的厂商太多了，这儿一家，那儿一家，成交率不高。我们得主动推销。
búguò cānzhǎn de chǎngshāng tài duō le zhèr yì jiā nàr yì jiā chéngjiāo lǜ bù gāo wǒmen děi zhǔdòng tuīxiāo · But there are so many makers exhibiting, one here, one there, that few visits end in a sale. We have to go out and sell.

ms zhang 安娜！原来你们也来了。我们贸易公司正在寻求新的合作伙伴。
Ānnà yuánlái nǐmen yě lái le wǒmen màoyì gōngsī zhèngzài xúnqiú xīn de hézuò huǒbàn · Anna! So you're here too. Our trading company is looking for new partners.

anna 张阿姨，太巧了！这是我们的新产品，下个月上市。
zhāng āyí tài qiǎo le zhè shì wǒmen de xīn chǎnpǐn xià gè yuè shàngshì · Ms Zhang, what luck! This is our new product. It comes on the market next month.

ms zhang 看起来很不错。是国产的吗？
kànqǐlai hěn búcuò shì guóchǎn de ma · It looks very good. Is it made in China?

manager liu 对，产地在杭州，商标也是我们自己设计的。这种是通用的，那种是医院专用的。
duì chǎndì zài Hángzhōu shāngbiāo yě shì wǒmen zìjǐ shèjì de zhè zhǒng shì tōngyòng de nà zhǒng shì yīyuàn zhuānyòng de · Yes, it's made in Hangzhou, and we designed the logo ourselves. This kind is for general use; that kind is just for hospitals.

ms zhang 这种高端产品在国外很畅销。有现货吗？还是只能定制？
zhè zhǒng gāoduān chǎnpǐn zài guówài hěn chàngxiāo yǒu xiànhuò ma háishi zhǐ néng dìngzhì · High-end products like this sell well abroad. Do you have stock, or is it made to order only?

manager liu 前期仓库里足有一千台现货，后期可以按您的要求定制。
qiánqī cāngkù lǐ zú yǒu yìqiān tái xiànhuò hòuqī kěyǐ àn nín de yāoqiú dìngzhì · At first we have a full thousand units in the warehouse; after that we can make them to your needs.

ms zhang 好。我们想采购五千台，不过价格得谈一谈。
hǎo wǒmen xiǎng cǎigòu wǔqiān tái búguò jiàgé děi tán yi tan · Good. We'd like to buy five thousand, but we need to talk about price.

chapter 2 bad news

xiaoming 安娜，坏消息。工厂说原材料涨价了，供应可能会中断。
Ānnà huài xiāoxi gōngchǎng shuō yuáncáiliào zhǎngjià le gōngyìng kěnéng huì zhōngduàn · Anna, bad news. The factory says raw materials have gone up, and supplies might stop.

anna 什么？我们刚拿到一个大订单！
shénme wǒmen gāng ná dào yí gè dà dìngdān · What? We've just got a big order!

xiaoming 我跟他们谈了两个钟头。仓库里还有一些原料，但劳动力也不足。
wǒ gēn tāmen tán le liǎng gè zhōngtóu cāngkù lǐ hái yǒu yìxiē yuánliào dàn láodònglì yě bùzú · I talked with them for two hours. There are still some materials in the warehouse, but they're short of workers too.

anna 我们迫切需要帮助。那几道工序能不能委托别的厂家做？
wǒmen pòqiè xūyào bāngzhù nà jǐ dào gōngxù néng bu néng wěituō biéde chǎngjiā zuò · We badly need help. Could we ask another factory to do some of the steps?

xiaoming 难。别的厂家每天只能产出两百台，供给跟不上。
nán biéde chǎngjiā měi tiān zhǐ néng chǎnchū liǎngbǎi tái gōngjǐ gēnbúshàng · Hard. The other factories can only turn out two hundred units a day, and supply can't keep up.

xiaoming 还有，有家大集团试图收购这家工厂，情形有点儿复杂。
hái yǒu yǒu jiā dà jítuán shìtú shōugòu zhè jiā gōngchǎng qíngxing yǒudiǎnr fùzá · And a big group is trying to buy this factory, so things are a bit complicated.

anna 放着这么多订单不做，他们难道想转让工厂不成？
fàng zhe zhème duō dìngdān bú zuò tāmen nándào xiǎng zhuǎnràng gōngchǎng bùchéng · They've got all these orders and won't make them? Surely they don't want to sell the factory?

xiaoming 听说老板不顾家人反对去炒股，结果亏损了很多钱。
tīngshuō lǎobǎn búgù jiārén fǎnduì qù chǎogǔ jiéguǒ kuīsǔn le hěn duō qián · I hear the owner traded shares against his family's wishes and lost a lot of money.

anna 要是工厂倒闭了，我们的订单怎么办？
yàoshi gōngchǎng dǎobì le wǒmen de dìngdān zěnme bàn · If the factory closes down, what happens to our order?

xiaoming 别急，还没到破产那一步。我明天去一趟，看看他们的财务情况。
bié jí hái méi dào pòchǎn nà yí bù wǒ míngtiān qù yí tàng kàn kan tāmen de cáiwù qíngkuàng · Don't panic, it hasn't come to bankruptcy. I'll go over tomorrow and look at their finances.

anna 对不起，我不是冲你发脾气，我只是太着急了。
duìbuqǐ wǒ bú shì chòng nǐ fā píqi wǒ zhǐshì tài zháojí le · Sorry, I'm not angry at you. I'm just very worried.

chapter 3 where will the money come from?

manager liu 工厂说，要继续生产，得先付一笔款，金额是五十万。
gōngchǎng shuō yào jìxù shēngchǎn děi xiān fù yì bǐ kuǎn jīné shì wǔshí wàn · The factory says that to keep production going, we must first pay a sum of five hundred thousand.

anna 五十万？可是除工资外，我们这个月的支出已经很大了。
wǔshí wàn kěshì chú gōngzī wài wǒmen zhège yuè de zhīchū yǐjīng hěn dà le · Five hundred thousand? But apart from wages, our spending this month is already high.

anna 剩余的资金还有多少？
shèngyú de zījīn hái yǒu duōshao · How much money do we have left?

manager liu 大致三十万。只能向银行贷款了，可是利息不低。
dàzhì sānshí wàn zhǐ néng xiàng yínháng dàikuǎn le kěshì lìxī bù dī · Roughly three hundred thousand. We'll have to borrow from the bank, but the interest isn't low.

manager liu 而且我们的资产不多，银行不一定愿意借给我们。政府的补贴要到下个月才发。
érqiě wǒmen de zīchǎn bù duō yínháng bù yídìng yuànyì jiè gěi wǒmen zhèngfǔ de bǔtiē yào dào xià gè yuè cái fā · And we don't have many assets, so the bank may not lend. The government subsidy only comes next month.

anna 我个人还有一些储蓄，可以先提取出来，汇给工厂。
wǒ gèrén hái yǒu yìxiē chǔxù kěyǐ xiān tíqǔ chulai huì gěi gōngchǎng · I have some savings of my own. I can take them out and send them to the factory.

manager liu 没想到你这么会理财！可那是你自己的财产啊。
Méixiǎngdào nǐ zhème huì lǐcái kě nà shì nǐ zìjǐ de cáichǎn a · I had no idea you were so good with money! But that's your own property.

anna 我不炒股，只买一点基金。对我来说，金钱没有这个公司重要。
wǒ bù chǎogǔ zhǐ mǎi yìdiǎn jījīn duì wǒ lái shuō jīnqián méiyǒu zhège gōngsī zhòngyào · I don't trade shares, I only buy a few funds. To me, money matters less than this company.

manager liu 好吧，那就算你投资公司。以后有了多余的资金，第一个还给你。
hǎo ba nà jiù suàn nǐ tóuzī gōngsī yǐhòu yǒu le duōyú de zījīn dì yī gè huán gěi nǐ · All right, count it as your investment in the company. When we have spare money, you're the first we pay back.

anna 就这么定了！我明天一早就去银行汇款。
jiù zhème dìng le wǒ míngtiān yìzǎo jiù qù yínháng huìkuǎn · Then it's settled! I'll go to the bank first thing tomorrow and send the money.

chapter 4 price is one thing ...

ms zhang 你们的定价比别的厂商高两成，能不能降一点？
nǐmen de dìngjià bǐ biéde chǎngshāng gāo liǎng chéng néng bu néng jiàng yìdiǎn · Your price is twenty per cent higher than other makers'. Can you come down a bit?

manager liu 价格归价格，质量归质量。我们的产品是高端的，质量一流。
jiàgé guī jiàgé zhìliàng guī zhìliàng wǒmen de chǎnpǐn shì gāoduān de zhìliàng yìliú · Price is one thing, quality is another. Ours is high-end and the quality is first-rate.

ms zhang 我明白。不过现在市场不好，我们公司今年的支出也很大。
wǒ míngbai búguò xiànzài shìchǎng bù hǎo wǒmen gōngsī jīnnián de zhīchū yě hěn dà · I understand. But the market is weak, and our spending is high this year too.

anna 我们的策略是长期合作。如果你们一次付款，我们可以给予百分之五的优惠。
wǒmen de cèlüè shì chángqī hézuò rúguǒ nǐmen yí cì fù kuǎn wǒmen kěyǐ jǐyǔ bǎifēnzhīwǔ de yōuhuì · Our approach is long-term partnership. If you pay in one go, we can give you a five per cent discount.

ms zhang 能分期吗？分三期，每期的金额一样。
néng fēnqī ma fēn sān qī měi qī de jīné yíyàng · Could we pay in instalments? Three equal payments.

manager liu 可以。不过除第一期外，其他两期得在下个月中旬以前付清。
kěyǐ búguò chú dì yī qī wài qítā liǎng qī děi zài xià gè yuè zhōngxún yǐqián fù qīng · Fine. But apart from the first, the other two must be paid before the middle of next month.

ms zhang 还有，要是你们交货晚了，得赔偿我们的损失。
hái yǒu yàoshi nǐmen jiāo huò wǎn le děi péicháng wǒmen de sǔnshī · Also, if you deliver late, you must pay for our losses.

manager liu 当然。晚一天，我们就补偿您订单金额的百分之一。
dāngrán wǎn yì tiān wǒmen jiù bǔcháng nín dìngdān jīné de bǎifēnzhīyī · Of course. For each day late, we'll compensate you one per cent of the order's value.

ms zhang 好，那就这么定了。成交！
hǎo nà jiù zhème dìng le chéngjiāo · All right, that's settled. It's a deal!

anna 太好了！谢谢张女士一贯的支持。
tài hǎo le xièxie Zhāngnǚshì yíguàn de zhīchí · Wonderful! Thank you for always supporting us, Ms Zhang.

ms zhang 别客气。我很看好你们的前景。
bié kèqi wǒ hěn kànhǎo nǐmen de qiánjǐng · Don't mention it. I think your prospects are very good.

chapter 5 the ceo's news

manager liu 大家听我说：总裁刚发来一条新闻，我读给你们听。
dàjiā tīng wǒ shuō zǒngcái gāng fā lái yì tiáo xīnwén wǒ dú gěi nǐmen tīng · Listen, everyone: the CEO has just sent us a news item. I'll read it to you.

manager liu （读新闻）这家集团于1998年创建，最早是一个个体户开的小店，2010年与另一家公司合并。
dú xīnwén zhè jiā jítuán yú nián chuàngjiàn zuì zǎo shì yí gè gètǐ hù kāi de xiǎo diàn nián yǔ lìng yì jiā gōngsī hébìng · (reading) The group was founded in 1998. It began as a small shop run by one self-employed owner, and merged with another company in 2010.

manager liu （读新闻）集团在去年的金融危机中遭到了很大的损失，今年收益却倍增，海外收入的比重超过四成。
dú xīnwén jítuán zài qùnián de jīnróng wēijī zhōng zāodào le hěn dà de sǔnshī jīnnián shōuyì què bèizēng hǎiwài shōurù de bǐzhòng chāoguò sì chéng · (reading) The group suffered heavy losses in last year's financial crisis, but this year its earnings have doubled, and overseas income is over forty per cent of the total.

manager liu （读新闻）近年来，大量资金流入服务业。集团决定不再收购工厂，而是投资北京一家创业公司。
dú xīnwén jìnnián lái dàliàng zījīn liúrù fúwù yè jítuán juédìng bú zài shōugòu gōngchǎng érshì tóuzī Běijīng yì jiā chuàngyè gōngsī · (reading) In recent years, a lot of money has flowed into the service industry. The group has decided not to buy the factory, and to invest in a Beijing start-up instead.

manager liu （读新闻）谈到为何改变决策，总裁说：这家公司率先打造了新产品，前景很好。
dú xīnwén tán dào wèihé gǎibiàn juécè zǒngcái shuō zhè jiā gōngsī shuàixiān dǎzào le xīn chǎnpǐn qiánjǐng hěn hǎo · (reading) Asked why it changed its decision, the CEO said: this company was the first to build such a product, and its prospects are good.

manager liu （读新闻）双方将于下个月上旬正式合作，进而扩展海外市场。
dú xīnwén shuāngfāng jiāng yú xià gè yuè shàngxún zhèngshì hézuò jìnér kuòzhǎn hǎiwài shìchǎng · (reading) The two sides will start working together in early next month, and then go on to expand into overseas markets.

xiaoming 北京的创业公司？那不就是我们吗？我以为他们是来竞争的，不料是来合作的！
Běijīng de chuàngyè gōngsī nà bú jiùshì wǒmen ma wǒ yǐwéi tāmen shì lái jìngzhēng de búliào shì lái hézuò de · A Beijing start-up? Isn't that us? I thought they'd come to compete, and they've come to work with us!

xiaoming 最近股市跌了不少，集团的股票却大幅上涨了三个百分点。
zuìjìn gǔshì diē le bùshǎo jítuán de gǔpiào què dàfú shàngzhǎng le sān gè bǎifēndiǎn · The stock market has fallen a lot lately, but the group's shares have shot up three percentage points.

manager liu 集团只占三成，我们自己还持有七成。借助他们的渠道，我们的产品得以进入国际市场。
jítuán zhǐ zhàn sān chéng wǒmen zìjǐ hái chíyǒu qī chéng jièzhù tāmen de qúdào wǒmen de chǎnpǐn déyǐ jìnrù guójì shìchǎng · The group will only hold thirty per cent; we keep seventy per cent ourselves. Through their channels, our product can get into the international market.

anna 以前是我们求别人投资。我从未想过能走到今天，真是激动不已！
yǐqián shì wǒmen qiú biérén tóuzī wǒ cóngwèi xiǎng guo néng zǒu dào jīntiān zhēn shì jīdòng bùyǐ · We used to beg people to invest. I never imagined we'd get this far. I'm so moved!

xiaoming 我也不曾想到。这比买彩票中奖还好！
wǒ yě bùcéng xiǎngdào zhè bǐ mǎi cǎipiào zhòng jiǎng hái hǎo · Neither did I. This is better than winning the lottery!

manager liu 这都是大家努力的结果。从下个月起，大家的奖金加倍！今天晚上我请客，人均不超过一百块！
zhè dōu shì dàjiā nǔlì de jiéguǒ cóng xià gè yuè qǐ dàjiā de jiǎngjīn jiābèi jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ qǐngkè rénjūn bù chāoguò yìbǎi kuài · It's all thanks to your hard work. From next month, everyone's bonus is doubled! Dinner's on me tonight: up to a hundred yuan a head!

A fair, a factory, a bank balance, a deal and a twist: you just followed a whole business story in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 55 continents and coasts

Chinese HSK 6 in 90 days
unit 8 · nature & disasters

Talk about continents, poles, coasts and islands, and say how surprised you were when you looked closer.

Travel plans, documentaries and climate news all need these words, and 不看不知道，一看吓一跳 is a saying you will hear every week.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
北极	běijí	the North Pole, the Arctic	北极非常冷，到处都是冰。 The Arctic is freezing, with ice everywhere.
两极	liǎngjí	the two poles; two extremes	地球的两极都非常寒冷。 Both of the Earth's poles are bitterly cold.
南极洲	Nánjízhōu	Antarctica	南极洲上几乎没有人住。 Almost nobody lives in Antarctica.
北美洲	Běiměizhōu	North America	美国在北美洲。 The USA is in North America.
南美洲	Nánměizhōu	South America	我想去南美洲旅游。 I'd like to travel in South America.
大洋洲	Dàyángzhōu	Oceania	大洋洲有很多美丽的岛。 Oceania has many beautiful islands.
岛	dǎo	island	我们坐船去了那个小岛。 We took a boat to the little island.
岸	àn	bank, shore	船慢慢靠了岸。 The boat slowly came in to the shore.
海岸	hǎiàn	coast, seashore	这条海岸的风景特别美。 The scenery along this coast is stunning.
沿海	yánhǎi	coastal (area)	沿海城市的经济比较发达。 Coastal cities tend to have stronger economies.
海域	hǎiyù	sea area, waters	这片海域有很多鱼。 There are lots of fish in these waters.
海面	hǎimiàn	sea surface	太阳从海面上升起来了。 The sun rose over the sea.
海拔	hǎibá	height above sea level	这座山的海拔有三千多米。 This mountain is over three thousand metres high.
广阔	guǎngkuò	vast, wide	站在海边，看着广阔的大海，心情好极了。 Standing by the vast sea, I felt wonderful.
大地	dàdì	the earth, the land	春天来了，大地一片绿色。 Spring has come and the land is turning green.
显	xiǎn	to show, look (younger ...)	这件衣服很显年轻。 This top makes you look young.

清晰	qīngxī	clear, distinct	这张照片拍得很清晰。 This photo is very sharp.
引	yǐn	to lead, attract, draw	美丽的海岸引来了很多游客。 The beautiful coast draws lots of tourists.
适宜	shìyí	suitable, fit for	这个季节很适宜去海边。 This season is just right for the seaside.

pattern 不看不知道，一看吓一跳

不 + verb | 不知道 | ，一 + verb | 吓一跳 / 才发现 ...

Literally “don’t look and you don’t know; look once and you jump with fright”. The same verb goes in both halves: you only discover the surprising truth by doing it. The ending can change: 一看吓一跳, 一比才发现, 一算吓一跳.

不看不知道，一看吓一跳。 **bú kàn bù zhīdào yí kàn xià yí tiào** You’d never believe it until you see it.

不算不知道，一算吓一跳：这个月花了这么多钱！ **bú suàn bù zhīdào yí suàn xià yí tiào zhège yuè huā le zhème duō qián** I had no idea until I added it up: I spent so much this month!

不试不知道，一试才发现，这件衣服很显年轻。 **bú shì bù zhīdào yí shì cái fāxiàn zhè jiàn yīfu hěn xiǎn niánqīng** I only found out when I tried it on: this top makes me look younger.

dialogue a map of the world

dr zhou 安娜，你看这张地图。地球的两极，一个是北极，一个是南极洲。
Ānnà nǐ kàn zhè zhāng dìtú dìqiú de liǎngjí yí gè shì běijí yí gè shì Nánjízhōu · Anna, look at this map. The Earth’s two poles: one is the Arctic, the other Antarctica.

anna 南极洲是一大片陆地。那北极的冰下面也是陆地吗？
Nánjízhōu shì yí dà piàn lùdì nà běijí de bīng xiàmiàn yě shì lùdì ma · Antarctica is a huge piece of land. Is there land under the ice at the North Pole too?

dr zhou 不是，北极主要是海，海面上是厚厚的冰。
bú shì běijí zhǔyào shì hǎi hǎimiàn shàng shì hòu hòu de bīng · No, the Arctic is mostly sea, with thick ice on top.

anna 原来是这样！我一直以为北极也是陆地呢。
yuánlái shì zhèyàng wǒ yìzhí yǐwéi běijí yě shì lùdì ne · So that’s how it is! I always thought the Arctic was land too.

dr zhou 不查不知道，一查吓一跳：这几十年，两极的冰少了很多。
bù chá bù zhīdào yì chá xià yí tiào zhè jǐ shí nián liǎngjí de bīng shǎo le hěn duō · Look at the data and you get a shock: there’s much less ice at both poles than a few decades ago.

anna 冰少了，海面会升高吧？沿海的城市怎么办？
bīng shǎo le hǎimiàn huì shēng gāo ba yánhǎi de chéngshì zěnme bàn · With less ice the sea will rise, won’t it? What about coastal cities?

dr zhou 这正是我们研究的问题。很多国家都很关注附近的海域。
zhè zhèng shì wǒmen yánjiū de wèntí hěn duō guójiā dōu hěn guānzhù fùjìn de hǎiyù · That’s exactly what we study. Lots of countries are watching their waters closely.

anna 下个月我想去南方的一个岛上玩，那里安全吗？
xià gè yuè wǒ xiǎng qù nánfāng de yí gè dǎo shàng wán nàlǐ ānquán ma · Next month I’d like to visit an island in the south. Is it safe?

dr zhou 放心，那里很适宜旅游。不过去海边也好，去山区也好，都要先看天气预报。
fàngxīn nàlǐ hěn shìyí lǚyóu búguò qù hǎi biān yěhǎo qù shānqū yěhǎo dōu yào xiān kàn tiānqì yùbào · Don’t worry, it’s a great place to visit. But whether you go to the coast or the mountains, check the forecast first.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

岛
dǎo
island

岸
àn
bank, shore

拔
bá
to pull up, rise

good to know · Chinese counts seven continents: 亚洲, 欧洲, 非洲, 北美洲, 南美洲, 大洋洲 and 南极洲. 洲 has the water radical 氵: land in the water. 海拔 is height above sea level: 海拔三千米 means 3,000 metres up.

You can now talk about where on Earth you want to go, and how surprised you were when you got there.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 56 weather

Describe the weather in detail: storms, showers, humidity, light and dark, and weather that keeps changing.

The weather is everyone's first small talk, and 一时……一时…… is how a writer says it changes from one moment to the next.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
晴朗	qínglǎng	clear and sunny	今天天气晴朗，适宜出门。 It's clear and sunny today: a good day to go out.
阵雨	zhènyǔ	shower (of rain)	下午可能有阵雨。 There may be showers this afternoon.
风雨	fēngyǔ	wind and rain; hardships	他们一起经历了很多风雨。 They've been through a lot together.
打雷	dǎléi	to thunder	外面打雷了，快关窗户。 It's thundering: close the windows.
雷	léi	thunder	雷声把孩子吓哭了。 The thunder made the child cry.
闪电	shǎndiàn	lightning	天空中出现了一道{=(measure word: a flash of)}闪电。 A flash of lightning lit up the sky.
彩虹	cǎihóng	rainbow	雨停了，天上出现了彩虹。 The rain stopped and a rainbow came out.
台风	táifēng	typhoon	台风明天到，大家不要出海。 The typhoon arrives tomorrow; nobody should go out to sea.
潮湿	cháoshī	damp, humid	南方的春天很潮湿。 Spring in the south is very humid.
干燥	gānzào	dry	北京的冬天很干燥。 Beijing winters are very dry.
湿度	shīdù	humidity	今天的湿度很高，衣服晒不干{gan1}。 It's so humid today the washing won't dry.
炎热	yánrè	scorching hot	炎热的夏天，大家都想去游泳。 In the scorching summer everyone wants a swim.
严寒	yánhán	bitterly cold	在严寒的冬天，一杯热茶让人心里暖暖的。 In the bitter cold of winter, a cup of hot tea warms you through.
寒冬	hándōng	cold winter	寒冬过去，春天就要来了。 Winter is over; spring is on its way.
暖	nuǎn	warm; to warm	太阳一出来，身上就暖暖的。 Once the sun comes out, you feel warm all over.
淋	lín	to get wet (in the rain); pour	我没带伞，被雨淋了。 I had no umbrella and got soaked.

飘	piāo	to float, drift (in the air)	天上飘着白{=white}云。 White clouds are drifting across the sky.
月光	yuèguāng	moonlight	月光照在湖面上，美极了。 The moonlight on the lake was beautiful.
黑暗	hēiàn	dark	停电了，房间里一片黑暗。 The power went out and the room was pitch dark.
影子	yǐngzi	shadow	中午的时候，影子最短。 Shadows are shortest at noon.
发光	fāguāng	to give off light, shine	月亮本身不发光。 The moon gives off no light of its own.
景象	jǐngxiàng	scene, sight	城市里到处是一片热闹的景象。 All over the city it's a lively scene.
一阵	yīzhèn	a burst, a spell	一阵风吹过来，好冷。 A gust of wind blew in. Brr!
频繁	pínfán	frequent	最近这里的暴雨越来越频繁了。 Downpours here are getting more and more frequent.

pattern 一时……一时……: one moment …, the next …

一时 A ，一时 B

Two 一时 phrases describe something that keeps switching between two states: weather, moods, plans. It is a little written; in speech people often say 一会儿……一会儿……

他的心情一时好，一时坏。 **tā de xīnqíng yìshí hǎo yìshí huài** His mood goes up and down.

外面一时下雨，一时出太阳。 **wàimiàn yìshí xià yǔ yìshí chū tàiyáng** Outside it keeps switching between rain and sunshine.

她一时想去，一时又不想去。 **tā yìshí xiǎng qù yìshí yòu bù xiǎng qù** One minute she wants to go, the next she doesn't.

dialogue caught in the rain

xiaoming 刚才还很晴朗，怎么突然下起了阵雨？
gāngcái hái hěn qínglǎng zěnme tūrán xià qǐ le zhènyǔ · It was clear and sunny a minute ago. Where did this shower come from?

anna 这几天的天气一时晴一时雨，我左等右等，雨还是不停。
zhè jǐ tiān de tiānqì yìshí qíng yìshí yǔ wǒ zuǒ děng yòu děng yǔ háishi bù tíng · The weather's been sunny one moment and rainy the next. I've waited and waited and it won't stop.

xiaoming 你放着家里的伞不带，现在被淋湿了吧？
nǐ fàng zhe jiā lǐ de sǎn bú dài xiànzài bèi lín shī le ba · You left your umbrella at home, and now you're soaked, aren't you?

anna 别说了！你听，又打雷了，雷声好大。
bié shuō le nǐ tīng yòu dǎléi le léi shēng hǎo dà · Don't rub it in! Listen, it's thundering again, and loud.

xiaoming 看，闪电！一阵风吹过来，雨都飘到脸上了，好冷。
kàn shǎndiàn yízhèn fēng chuī guolai yǔ dōu piāo dào liǎn shàng le hǎo lěng · Look, lightning! A gust of wind just blew the rain in my face. Brr!

anna 天气预报说，晚上还有台风，湿度也很高。
tiānqì yùbào shuō wǎnshang hái yǒu táifēng shīdù yě hěn gāo · The forecast says there's a typhoon tonight, and the humidity is high too.

xiaoming 那我们快回去吧。停电的时候外面一片黑暗，很危险。
nà wǒmen kuài huiqu ba tíng diàn de shíhou wàimiàn yí piàn hēiàn hěn wēixiǎn · Then let's get home. If the power goes it'll be pitch dark out here, which is dangerous.

anna 好。不过雨停以后要是出现彩虹，那景象一定很美，我要出来拍照！
hǎo búguò yǔ tíng yǐhòu yàoshi chūxiàn cǎihóng nà jǐngxiàng yídìng hěn měi wǒ yào chūlái pāizhào · OK. But if a rainbow comes out after the rain, it'll be a beautiful sight. I'm coming out to take photos!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

雷
léi
thunder

虹
hóng
rainbow

good to know · Weather forecasts love these words: 晴朗 clear, 阵雨 showers, 雷阵雨 thundery showers, 湿度 humidity. 飘 is drifting in the air (snow, clouds, a smell); the water version of "float, drift" is 漂, which you meet on day 58. 化 is also a verb, "to melt, dissolve": 雪化了, 冰化成了水, 糖在水里化了. As a suffix it is "-ise": 现代化.

Next time the sky can't decide, you can describe it beautifully: 一时晴，一时雨.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 57 plants and farms

Talk about flowers, crops and farm work, and describe someone busy with this and that.

Food starts on a farm, and Chinese poems, paintings and festivals are full of plum blossom, orchids and chrysanthemums.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
花朵	huāduǒ	flower, bloom	公园里的花朵都开了。 The flowers in the park are all out.
菊花	júhuā	chrysanthemum	秋天是看菊花的季节。 Autumn is the season for chrysanthemums.
兰花	lánhuā	orchid	兰花很难养，要特别小心。 Orchids are hard to grow; they need real care.
梅花	méihuā	plum blossom	梅花在寒冷的冬天|开放{==to bloom}。 Plum blossom opens in the cold of winter.
松	sōng	loose; to loosen	这里的土又松又软。 The soil here is loose and soft.
株	zhū	(measure word for plants)	我在阳台上种{zhong4}了两株花。 I've planted two flowers on the balcony.
刺	cì	thorn; to prick	玫瑰很漂亮，可是有刺。 Roses are pretty, but they have thorns.
结	jiē	to bear (fruit)	树上结{jie1-6}了很多苹果。 The tree is full of apples.
结果	jiēguǒ	to bear fruit	这棵苹果树种{zhong4}了三年，今年终于结果{jie1guo3}了。 We planted this apple tree three years ago, and this year it finally bore fruit.
种地	zhòngdì	to farm, work the land	他爷爷一辈子都在种地。 His grandfather farmed all his life.
田	tián	field (for crops)	田里的水稻快熟了。 The rice in the fields is nearly ripe.
农田	nóngtián	farmland	村子周围都是农田。 The village is surrounded by farmland.
庄稼	zhuāngjia	crops	今年雨水充足，庄稼长{zhang3}得很好。 There's been plenty of rain this year, and the crops are doing well.
水稻	shuǐdào	rice (the plant)	南方人种{zhong4}水稻，北方人种{zhong4}小麦。 Southerners grow rice; northerners grow wheat.
小麦	xiǎomài	wheat	面粉是用小麦做的。 Flour is made from wheat.
播种	bōzhǒng	to sow (seeds)	春天是播种的季节。 Spring is the season for sowing.
培育	péiyù	to grow, breed; to raise	科学家培育出了一种新的水稻。 Scientists have bred a new kind of rice.

丰收	fēngshōu	to have a good harvest	今年又是一个丰收年。 It's been another bumper year.
农产品	nóngchǎnpǐn	farm produce	这个市场卖的都是当地的农产品。 Everything at this market is local farm produce.
土壤	tǔrǎng	soil	这里的土壤很适宜种{zhong4}茶。 The soil here is ideal for tea.
肥沃	féiwò	fertile	河边的土地非常肥沃。 The land by the river is very fertile.
泥	ní	mud	刚下过{guo}雨，鞋上全是泥。 It's just rained, and my shoes are covered in mud.
割	gē	to cut, harvest	农民们正在田里割小麦。 The farmers are harvesting wheat in the fields.
砍	kǎn	to chop, cut down	这棵树太老了，只好砍了。 The tree was too old, so it had to be cut down.

pattern a这a那: doing this and that

verb 这 same verb 那

Say one verb twice, once with 这 and once with 那, and it means doing all sorts of things of that kind: 忙这忙那 busy with this and that, 问这问那 asking about everything, 想这想那 worrying about everything. It is lively and often a little critical.

妈妈在厨房里忙这忙那。 **māma zài chúfáng lǐ máng zhè máng nà** Mum is busy with all sorts of jobs in the kitchen.

别想这想那了，早一点儿睡吧。 **bié xiǎng zhè xiǎng nà le zǎo yìdiǎnr shuì ba** Stop worrying about everything and get some sleep.

他一到超市就买这买那，花了很多钱。 **tā yí dào chāoshì jiù mǎi zhè mǎi nà huā le hěn duō qián** Once he's in a supermarket he buys everything in sight and spends a fortune.

dialogue back to the village

xiaoming 安娜，这就是我爸爸小时候住的村子。到处都是农田，家家户户都种地。
Ānnà zhè jiùshì wǒ bàba xiǎoshíhou zhù de cūn zi dàochù dōu shì nóngtián jiājiāhùhù dōu zhòngdì · Anna, this is the village where my dad grew up. Farmland everywhere, and every family farms.

dr li 我小时候，放学以后要帮家里种庄稼。
wǒ xiǎoshíhou fàngxué yǐhòu yào bāng jiā lǐ zhòng zhuāngjia · When I was little I had to help with the crops after school.

anna 那您会割小麦吗？
nà nín huì gē xiǎomài ma · So can you harvest wheat?

dr li 当然会！春天播种，夏天割小麦，忙这忙那，一年四季都闲不下来。
dāngrán huì chūntiān bōzhǒng xiàtiān gē xiǎomài máng zhè máng nà yì nián sìjì dōu xián bu xialai · Of course! Sowing in spring, harvesting in summer, always some job to do. No rest all year.

anna 您看，田边那株花真漂亮，是兰花吗？
nín kàn tián biān nà zhū huā zhēn piàoliang shì lánhuā ma · Look, that flower at the edge of the field is lovely. Is it an orchid?

dr li 不是，那是菊花。小心，它旁边的树有刺。
bú shì nà shì júhuā xiǎoxīn tā pángbiān de shù yǒu cì · No, it's a chrysanthemum. Careful, the tree next to it has thorns.

xiaoming 爸爸，这棵大树怎么被砍了？
bàba zhè kē dà shù zěnme bèi kǎn le · Dad, why has this big tree been cut down?

dr li 它太老了，下面的泥土也松了，大风一吹就会倒。
tā tài lǎo le xiàmiàn de nítǔ yě sōng le dà fēng yì chuī jiù huì dǎo · It was too old, and the earth under it had gone loose. One strong wind and it would have fallen.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

兰
lán
orchid

麦
mài
wheat, grain

沃
wò
fertile

泥
ní
mud

good to know · 结 has two readings: jiē for fruit (结果 bear fruit) and jié for tying and endings (结果 result, 结束 end). 种 is zhòng as a verb (种地, 种树) and zhǒng as "kind, seed" (一种, 播种 bōzhǒng).

From a field to your bowl of rice: you can now talk about where food comes from, and tease a friend who asks about everything.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 58 wild animals

Talk about wild animals and nature, and describe a careful search or study with 一番.

Nature documentaries, zoo visits and walks in the wild need these words, and 一番 makes any effort sound thorough.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
狮子	shīzi	lion	动物园里的狮子正在睡觉。 The lions at the zoo are asleep.
狼	láng	wolf	狼常常一群一群地生活。 Wolves usually live in packs.
鲨鱼	shāyú	shark	大部分鲨鱼不会主动伤害人。 Most sharks won't attack people unprovoked.
乌龟	wūguī	tortoise, turtle	乌龟走得很慢，但能活很久。 Tortoises walk slowly but live a long time.
老鼠	lǎoshǔ	mouse, rat	我家的猫从来不抓老鼠。 Our cat never catches mice.
蚂蚁	mǎyǐ	ant	蚂蚁虽然小，力气却很大。 Ants are small but very strong.
蜜蜂	mìfēng	bee	蜜蜂在花园里飞来飞去。 Bees are flying all around the garden.
野	yě	wild	山上开满了野花。 The hills are covered in wild flowers.
野生	yěshēng	wild (animals, plants)	我们要保护野生动物。 We must protect wildlife.
野外	yěwài	the open country, outdoors	在野外要注意安全。 Be careful when you're out in the wild.
繁殖	fánzhí	to breed, reproduce	老鼠繁殖得非常快。 Mice breed very fast.
捕	bǔ	to catch	这里的人以前都靠捕鱼生活。 People here used to live by fishing.
生命力	shēngmìnglì	vitality, will to live	这种草的生命力很强。 This grass is incredibly hardy.
万物	wànwù	all things (in nature)	春天来了，万物开始生长。 Spring is here, and everything starts to grow.
天然	tiānrán	natural	这个湖是天然形成的。 This lake formed naturally.
罕见	hǎnjiàn	rare	这么大的雪在南方很罕见。 Snow this heavy is rare in the south.
化石	huàshí	fossil	博物馆里有很多动物化石。 The museum has lots of animal fossils.

脚印	jiǎoyìn	footprint	雪地{di4-3}上留下了一串脚印。 A line of footprints was left in the snow.
埋	mái	to bury	小狗把骨头埋在了院子里。 The puppy buried its bone in the yard.
浮	fú	to float (on water)	木头会浮在水上。 Wood floats on water.
漂	piāo	to float, drift (on water)	河上漂着一片叶子。 A leaf is drifting down the river.
水流	shuǐliú	current, flow of water	这里水流很急，不要游泳。 The current is strong here: no swimming.
水面	shuǐmiàn	water surface	水面上有几只鸭子。 There are a few ducks on the water.
隐藏	yǐncáng	to hide, conceal	很多小动物白天隐藏在树林里。 Many small animals hide in the woods by day.

pattern 一番: a round of effort

verb | 了一番 | / 经过一番 + noun

番 counts a round of something that takes time and care. After a verb: 研究了一番 (studied it carefully), 介绍了一番. Before a noun: 一番努力, 一番功夫. It makes an effort sound real and thorough.

经过一番努力，他终于成功了。 **jīngguò yì fān nǔlì tā zhōngyú chénggōng le** After a lot of hard work, he finally succeeded.

她认真地打扮了一番才出门。 **tā rènzhēn de dǎban le yì fān cái chūmén** She got properly dressed up before going out.

我们先观察一番，再决定怎么做。 **wǒmen xiān guānchá yì fān zài juédìng zěnme zuò** Let's take a good look first, then decide what to do.

dialogue by the river

little sister 周博士，这条河里真的有野生的乌龟吗?
Zhōubóshì zhè tiáo hé lǐ zhēn de yǒu yěshēng de wūguī ma · Dr Zhou, are there really wild turtles in this river?

dr zhou 有。我们先观察一番。你看，那只乌龟正浮在水面上晒太阳呢。
yǒu wǒmen xiān guānchá yì fān nǐ kàn nà zhī wūguī zhèng fú zài shuǐmiàn shàng shài tàiyáng ne · There are. Let's look carefully first. See, that turtle is floating on the surface, sunbathing.

anna 它旁边漂着一片叶子，它一动也不动。
tā pángbiān piāo zhe yí piàn yèzi tā yí dòng yě bú dòng · There's a leaf drifting right next to it, and it doesn't move a muscle.

dr zhou 乌龟很聪明。水流太急的时候，它会隐藏在石头下面。
wūguī hěn cōngmíng shuǐliú tài jí de shíhou tā huì yǐncáng zài shítou xiàmiàn · Turtles are clever. When the current is too strong, they hide under rocks.

little sister 那边地上有很多小洞，是老鼠的家吗?
nàbiān dì shàng yǒu hěn duō xiǎo dòng shì lǎoshǔ de jiā ma · There are lots of little holes in the ground over there. Do mice live there?

dr zhou 是蚂蚁的家。别小看蚂蚁，它们繁殖得很快，生命力特别强。
shì mǎyǐ de jiā bié xiǎokàn mǎyǐ tāmen fánzhí de hěn kuài shēngmìnglì tèbié qiáng · Ants do. Don't underestimate ants: they breed fast and they're incredibly tough.

anna 这里有狼吗?
zhèlǐ yǒu láng ma · Are there wolves here?

dr zhou 以前有，现在很少了。不过你看，这个脚印是野猪的。
yǐqián yǒu xiànzài hěn shǎo le búguò nǐ kàn zhège jiǎoyìn shì yě zhū de · There used to be, but hardly any now. Look, though: this footprint is a wild boar's.

little sister 在野外走一走，真有意思!
zài yěwài zǒu yi zou zhēn yǒu yìsi · Walking out in the wild is so much fun!

dr zhou 是啊，大自然里的万物，都有自己生存的办法。
shì a dàzìrán lǐ de wànwù dōu yǒu zìjǐ shēngcún de bànfǎ · Yes. Everything in nature has its own way of surviving.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

乌
wū
black, crow

龟
guī
turtle

罕
hǎn
rare

good to know · Both 浮 and 漂 are "float" on water: 浮 is staying up on the surface, 漂 is drifting along with the water. 老鼠 and 老虎 both start with 老, which here is just a friendly word prefix, not "old".

You can now describe what you see on a walk in the wild, from ants to wolves, and how hard you looked.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 59 disasters

Understand news about floods, droughts and fires, talk about them calmly and kindly, and say how you can help.

Disasters are in the news every year. Knowing the words helps you follow the facts, stay safe and offer help.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
灾	zāi	disaster	我们要学一些防灾的知识。 We should learn something about disaster preparedness.
灾害	zāihài	disaster (natural)	地震是一种自然灾害。 An earthquake is a natural disaster.
灾难	zāinàn	catastrophe, disaster	面对灾难，人们互相帮助。 In the face of disaster, people help each other.
灾区	zāiqū	disaster area	很多志愿者去了灾区。 Many volunteers went to the disaster area.
受灾	shòuzāi	to be hit by a disaster	这次大雨让很多村子受灾。 The heavy rain hit many villages.
遭受	zāoshòu	to suffer (loss, damage)	那年夏天，南方遭受了严重的洪水。 That summer the south suffered serious floods.
遭遇	zāoyù	to run into; experience	他们在路上遭遇了大风。 They ran into a gale on the way.
突发	tūfā	to break out suddenly	遇到突发情况，要保持冷静。 In an emergency, stay calm.
洪水	hóngshuǐ	flood	洪水过后，大家开始打扫街道。 After the flood, everyone started cleaning the streets.
淹	yān	to flood, submerge	大雨把路都淹了。 The heavy rain flooded the roads.
淹没	yānmò	to submerge, drown out	河边的农田被淹没了。 The fields by the river were under water.
干旱	gānhàn	drought; dry	这个地区常年干旱。 This region is dry all year round.
旱灾	hànzāi	drought (disaster)	连续几个月不下雨，发生了旱灾。 Months without rain brought a drought.
恶劣	èliè	very bad, harsh	天气恶劣的时候，最好不要出门。 In bad weather it's best to stay in.
火灾	huǒzāi	fire (disaster)	发生火灾时，不要坐电梯。 In a fire, don't take the lift.
爆	bào	to burst	好险！|水管{==water pipe}爆了，差点儿把电脑淹了。 That was close! A pipe burst and nearly flooded the computer.
爆发	bàofā	to break out, erupt	大雨过后，山区爆发了洪水。 After the downpour, floods broke out in the hills.

爆炸	bàozhà	to explode	手机充电时太热，可能会爆炸。 A phone that gets too hot while charging could explode.
炸	zhà	to explode, burst	气球突然炸{zha4}了，把孩子吓了一跳{tiao4}。 The balloon suddenly popped and made the child jump.
来临	láilín	to arrive, approach	台风来临前，船都回到了港口。 Before the typhoon arrived, the boats all came back to harbour.
其间	qíjiān	during that time	我在北京住了三年，其间去过{guo}很多地方。 I lived in Beijing for three years and went to lots of places in that time.
险	xiǎn	dangerous; nearly	好险！差点儿就迟到了。 Phew! I was almost late.

pattern 虽……但……: although …, still …

虽 | a fact | ，但 / 却 / 也 | the contrast

虽 is the short, written 虽然. It comes after the subject (天气虽恶劣) and the second half turns with 但, 却 or 也. News reports love it because it is short and serious.

雨虽不大，但下了一整天。 **yǔ suī bú dà dàn xià le yì zhěng tiān** The rain wasn't heavy, but it went on all day.

这里虽多年没有发生灾害，但大家还是要做好准备。 **zhèlǐ suī duō nián méiyǒu fāshēng zāihài dàn dàjiā háishi yào zuò hǎo zhǔnbèi** There hasn't been a disaster here for years, but people still need to be ready.

台风虽已过去，但很多地方还没有电。 **táifēng suī yǐ guòqù dàn hěn duō dìfang hái méiyǒu diàn** The typhoon has passed, but many places still have no power.

dialogue back from the flood

anna 周博士，新闻说南方突发洪水，很多村子都受灾了。
Zhōubóshì xīnwén shuō nánfāng tūfā hóngshuǐ hěn duō cūn zi dōu shòuzāi le · Dr Zhou, the news says floods hit the south suddenly and many villages were affected.

dr zhou 是的，我刚从灾区回来。我在那里住了五天，其间雨一直没停。
shì de wǒ gāng cóng zāiqū huílái wǒ zài nàlǐ zhù le wǔ tiān qíjiān yǔ yìzhí méi tíng · Yes, I've just come back from there. I stayed five days, and it rained the whole time.

anna 那里的人都安全吗？
nàlǐ de rén dōu ānquán ma · Are the people there safe?

dr zhou 大部分人都提前离开了。房子虽被淹了，但人都平安。
dà bùfen rén dōu tíqián líkāi le fángzi suī bèi yān le dàn rén dōu píngān · Most people left in time. The houses were flooded, but people are safe.

xiaoming 本来以为今年会好一些，不料又发生了洪水。前几年，那里还遭遇过干旱。
běnlái yǐwéi jīnnián huì hǎo yìxiē búliào yòu fāshēng le hóngshuǐ qián jǐ nián nàlǐ hái zāoyù guo gānhàn · We thought this year would be better, and then came floods again. A few years ago they even had a drought.

dr zhou 对。极端天气越来越多，灾难来临前做好准备非常重要。
duì jíduān tiānqì yuè lái yuè duō zāinàn láilín qián zuò hǎo zhǔnbèi fēicháng zhòngyào · Right. Extreme weather is getting more common, so being ready before a disaster strikes really matters.

anna 我们能做些什么？
wǒmen néng zuò xiē shénme · What can we do?

dr zhou 可以给灾区捐东西，也可以学一些防灾的知识。比如发生火灾时，不要坐电梯。
kěyǐ gěi zāiqū juān dōngxi yě kěyǐ xué yìxiē fáng zāi de zhīshi bǐrú fāshēng huǒzāi shí búyào zuò diàntī · You can donate to the area, and learn some basic preparedness. For example, never take the lift in a fire.

anna 好，我明天就去报名当志愿者。
hǎo wǒ míngtiān jiù qù bàomíng dāng zhìyuànzhě · Right, I'll sign up as a volunteer tomorrow.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

灾
zāi
disaster

旱
hàn
drought

劣
liè
inferior

good to know · The 灾 family: 火灾 fire, 旱灾 drought, 灾区 disaster area, 救灾 relief, 防灾 preparedness. 炸 is zhà for explode (爆炸) and zhá for deep-fry (炸鸡). Context always tells you which. 封 counts letters (一封信) and is also a verb, "to seal, close off": 封路 "close a road", 封住 "seal up", 大雪封山 "snow cuts off the mountains".

You can now follow a disaster report calmly, and say clearly how you would like to help.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 60 mountain rescue

Talk about mountains, plateaus and landscapes, ask for help in an emergency, and change topic with 至于.

Hiking is hugely popular in China, and knowing how to call for help and describe where you are can matter a lot. 至于 lets you move on smoothly to the next point.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
高原	gāoyuán	plateau, highland	在高原上走路要慢一点儿。 Walk slowly on a high plateau.
草原	cǎoyuán	grassland, prairie	草原上有很多马和羊。 There are lots of horses and sheep on the grassland.
山顶	shāndǐng	mountaintop, summit	我们爬了五个小时，终于到了山顶。 We climbed for five hours and finally reached the top.
山峰	shānfēng	mountain peak	远处的山峰上还有雪。 There's still snow on the distant peaks.
山坡	shānpō	hillside, slope	山坡上种{zhong4}满了茶树。 The hillside is covered with tea bushes.
坡	pō	slope; sloping	前面的坡很滑，慢一点儿！ The slope ahead is slippery: slow down!
沟	gōu	ditch, gully	路边有一条很深的沟。 There's a deep ditch by the road.
地形	dìxíng	terrain, landform	这里的地形很复杂。 The terrain here is complicated.
地域	dìyù	region, territory	中国地域广阔，各地的气候差别很大。 China is vast, and the climate differs a lot from place to place.
地质	dìzhì	geology	他大学学的是地质。 He studied geology at university.
救命	jiùmìng	to save a life; help!	救命啊！有人吗? Help! Is anyone there?
求救	qiújiù	to call for help	他迷路以后，马上打电话求救。 When he got lost, he phoned for help at once.
救援	jiùyuán	to rescue; rescue	救援队很快就到了。 The rescue team arrived quickly.
救灾	jiùzāi	disaster relief	救灾的时候，最重要的是减少伤亡。 In disaster relief, the first thing is to keep casualties down.
消防	xiāofáng	fire fighting, fire safety	消防队员很快就扑灭了山上的大火。 Firefighters soon put out the fire on the hill.
灭	miè	to go out; put out (a fire)	风太大，火灭了。 The wind was too strong and the fire went out.

扑灭	pūmiè	to put out (a fire)	大火终于被扑灭了。 The fire was finally put out.
伤亡	shāngwáng	casualties	这次地震没有造成人员伤亡。 The earthquake caused no casualties.
伤员	shāngyuán	injured person	伤员已经被送到了医院。 The injured have been taken to hospital.
重建	chóngjiàn	to rebuild	地震以后，人们开始重建家园。 After the earthquake, people began rebuilding their homes.
融化	rónghuà	to melt	春天到了，山顶的雪开始融化。 Spring has come and the snow on the summit is melting.
以免	yǐmiǎn	so as not to, in case	多穿一点儿衣服，以免感冒。 Wrap up warm so you don't catch cold.

pattern 至于: as for

topic A + comment **，至于** **topic B** **，comment**

至于 moves on to a related point: "as for B …". It often hands B over or leaves it open: 至于……，还没决定 / 你得问别人. It always starts the second part of what you say.

我们明天去爬山，至于去哪座山，还没决定。 **wǒmen míngtiān qù pá shān zhìyú qù nǎ zuò shān hái méi juédìng** We're going hiking tomorrow; as for which mountain, we haven't decided.

救援队已经出发了，至于什么时候能到，要看天气。 **jiùyuán duì yǐjīng chūfā le zhìyú shénme shíhou néng dào yào kàn tiānqì** The rescue team has set off; as for when they'll arrive, it depends on the weather.

这里的地形我比较熟悉，至于地质，你得问周博士。 **zhèlǐ de dìxíng wǒ bǐjiào shúxi zhìyú dìzhì nǐ děi wèn Zhōubóshì** I know the terrain here quite well; as for the geology, you'll have to ask Dr Zhou.

dialogue trouble on the mountain

anna 小明，前面的坡很滑，慢一点儿！
Xiǎomíng qiánmiàn de pō hěn huá màn yìdiǎnr · Xiaoming, the slope ahead is slippery. Slow down!

xiaoming 没事。不爬不知道，一爬才发现这座山峰这么高。
méishì bù pá bù zhīdào yì pá cái fāxiàn zhè zuò shānfēng zhème gāo · I'm fine. You only find out when you climb: this peak is so high.

anna 小心！……你怎么了？
xiǎoxīn nǐ zěnme le · Careful! … What happened?

xiaoming 我的脚掉进沟里了，好疼，走不了了。
wǒ de jiǎo diào jìn gōu lǐ le hǎo téng zǒu bu liǎo le · My foot went into a ditch. It really hurts; I can't walk.

anna 别动，我马上打电话求救。
bié dòng wǒ mǎshàng dǎ diànhuà qiújiù · Don't move. I'll call for help right now.

xiaoming 先给我爸爸打电话吧，他是医生。至于救援队，看看情况再说。
xiān gěi wǒ bàba dǎ diànhuà ba tā shì yīshēng zhìyú jiùyuán duì kàn kan qíngkuàng zàishuō · Call my dad first, he's a doctor. As for the rescue team, let's see how it goes.

dr li 小明，先别动，把脚放平。我已经联系了山上的救援队。
Xiǎomíng xiān bié dòng bǎ jiǎo fàng píng wǒ yǐjīng liánxì le shān shàng de jiùyuán duì · Xiaoming, keep still and keep your foot flat. I've already contacted the mountain rescue team.

anna 他们多久能到？我们在半山坡上。
tāmen duō jiǔ néng dào wǒmen zài bàn shānpō shàng · How long will they be? We're halfway up the hillside.

dr li 他们对这里的地形很熟悉，半个小时就到。
tāmen duì zhèlǐ de dìxíng hěn shúxi bàn gè xiǎoshí jiù dào · They know the terrain well; they'll be there in half an hour.

xiaoming 爸爸，对不起，让您担心了。
bàba duìbuqǐ ràng nín dānxīn le · Sorry for worrying you, Dad.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

坡
pō
slope; sloping

援
yuán
to help, aid

good to know · In China, dial 110 for the police, 119 for fire and rescue, and 120 for an ambulance. 以免 (so as not to) is the opposite of 以便 (so that): 早点儿走，以免迟到 / 早点儿走，以便找到座位.

You can now describe a landscape, call for help clearly, and steer a conversation with 至于.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 61 mission: the storm

Follow a story of an island holiday, a typhoon and its aftermath, using the words of land, sea, weather, plants, animals and disasters together.

Weather warnings, staying safe and helping out afterwards: this is the language people really use when nature turns rough.

chapter 1 paradise

little sister 哇，这里的海岸太美了！海面又平又蓝。
wā zhèlǐ de hǎiàn tài měi le hǎimiàn yòu píng yòu lán · Wow, this coast is gorgeous! The sea is so calm and blue.

xiaoming 这座岛不大，海拔很低，岛上到处都是松树。
zhè zuò dǎo bú dà hǎibá hěn dī dǎo shàng dàochù dōu shì sōngshù · The island is small and low-lying, with pine trees everywhere.

anna 不来不知道，一来吓一跳，原来南方的海水这么清。
bù lái bù zhīdào yì lái xià yí tiào yuánlái nánfāng de hǎi shuǐ zhème qīng · You never know till you come: I had no idea the southern sea was so clear.

xiaoming 沿海的气候很适宜旅游，每年都引来很多游客。
yánhǎi de qìhòu hěn shìyí lǚyóu měi nián dōu yǐn lái hěn duō yóukè · The coastal climate is very pleasant, and it draws lots of visitors every year.

little sister 你们看，水面上漂着一只小船，正慢慢靠岸。
nǐmen kàn shuǐmiàn shàng piāo zhe yì zhī xiǎo chuán zhèng màn màn kào àn · Look, a little boat is drifting on the water, slowly coming in to the shore.

xiaoming 这片海域鱼很多，岛上的人以前都靠捕鱼生活。
zhè piàn hǎiyù yú hěn duō dǎo shàng de rén yǐqián dōu kào bǔ yú shēnghuó · These waters are full of fish. People on the island used to live by fishing.

little sister 海里有鲨鱼吗？我想去游泳。
hǎi lǐ yǒu shāyú ma wǒ xiǎng qù yóuyǒng · Are there sharks in the sea? I want to go swimming.

xiaoming 有是有，不过很少。别游得太远就行。
yǒu shì yǒu búguò hěn shǎo bié yóu de tài yuǎn jiù xíng · There are, but very few. Just don't swim out too far.

anna 天气晴朗，天上飘着几朵白云，远处的小岛也看得很清晰。
tiānqì qínglǎng tiānshàng piāo zhe jǐ duǒ bái yún yuǎn chù de xiǎo dǎo yě kàn de hěn qīngxī · It's a clear, sunny day, a few white clouds are drifting by, and you can see the far islands clearly.

anna 我去过北美洲和南美洲，可是还没去过大洋洲。
wǒ qù guo Běiměizhōu hé Nánměizhōu kěshì hái méi qù guo Dàyángzhōu · I've been to North America and South America, but never to Oceania.

xiaoming 周博士连南极洲和北极都去过，她说两极的冰都在融化。
Zhōubóshì lián Nánjízhōu hé běijí dōu qù guo tā shuō liǎngjí de bīng dōu zài rónghuà · Dr Zhou has even been to Antarctica and the Arctic. She says the ice at both poles is melting.

little sister 你们看，海水在月光下发光，这景象太美了！
nǐmen kàn hǎi shuǐ zài yuèguāng xià fāguāng zhè jǐngxiàng tài měi le · Look, the sea is shining in the moonlight. What a beautiful sight!

chapter 2 rice and flowers

anna 没想到岛上还有这么多农田！
méi xiǎng dào dǎo shàng hái yǒu zhème duō nóngtián · I never thought there'd be so much farmland on the island!

xiaoming 是啊，这里的人除了捕鱼，也种地。
shì a zhèlǐ de rén chúle bǔ yú yě zhòngdì · Yes, besides fishing, people here farm the land too.

xiaoming 你们看牌子上写的：“本村土壤肥沃，主要种水稻，年年丰收。”
nǐmen kàn páizi shàng xiě de běn cūn tǔrǎng féiwò zhǔyào zhòng shuǐdào nián nián fēngshōu · Look what the sign says: “Our village's soil is fertile. We mainly grow rice and have a good harvest every year.”

anna “村里自己培育的水稻，是本村最有名的农产品。”
cūn lǐ zìjǐ péiyù de shuǐdào shì běn cūn zuì yǒumíng de nóngchǎnpǐn · “The rice the village breeds itself is our best-known farm produce.”

little sister 北方主要种小麦，南方主要种水稻，对吧？
běifāng zhǔyào zhòng xiǎomài nánfāng zhǔyào zhòng shuǐdào duì ba · The north mainly grows wheat and the south mainly grows rice, right?

anna 对。你们看，农民正在田里割水稻呢。
duì nǐmen kàn nóngmín zhèngzài tián lǐ gē shuǐdào ne · Right. Look, the farmers are cutting the rice in the fields.

xiaoming 前几天刚下过雨，田里都是泥，真不容易。
qián jǐ tiān gāng xià guo yǔ tián lǐ dōu shì ní zhēn bù róngyì · It rained just a few days ago, so the fields are all mud. It's hard work.

little sister 这家院子里的花朵真多，有菊花，也有兰花。
zhè jiā yuànzi lǐ de huāduǒ zhēn duō yǒu júhuā yě yǒu lánhuā · This house has so many flowers in its yard: chrysanthemums, and orchids too.

anna 可惜梅花要冬天才开，现在看不到。
kěxī méihuā yào dōngtiān cái kāi xiànzài kàn bu dào · Shame the plum blossom only flowers in winter, so we can't see it now.

xiaoming 小心，那株花有刺！
xiǎoxīn nà zhū huā yǒu cì · Careful, that plant has thorns!

little sister 花这么多，蜜蜂也特别多。
huā zhème duō mìfēng yě tèbié duō · With so many flowers, there are loads of bees too.

xiaoming 听说山上的树林里还隐藏着很多野生动物。
tīngshuō shān shàng de shùlín lǐ hái yǐncáng zhe hěn duō yěshēng dòngwù · I hear lots of wild animals are hidden away in the woods up the hill, too.

chapter 3 wind and rain

xiaoming 宾馆发来通知：“台风今天晚上来临，天气恶劣，请大家不要外出。”
bīnguǎn fā lái tōngzhī táifēng jīntiān wǎnshang láilín tiānqì èliè qǐng dàjiā búyào wàichū · The hotel has sent a notice: “The typhoon arrives this evening. The weather will be very bad, so please stay indoors.”

xiaoming “出岛的大桥已经封了。请准备好水和食物，以免停电后买不到东西。”
chū dǎo de dà qiáo yǐjīng fēng le qǐng zhǔnbèi hǎo shuǐ hé shíwù yǐmiǎn tíng diàn hòu mǎi bu dào dōngxi · “The bridge off the island is already closed. Please have water and food ready, so you aren’t caught short if the power goes off.”

little sister 中午还那么晴朗，现在却下起了阵雨。
zhōngwǔ hái nàme qínglǎng xiànzài què xià qǐ le zhènyǔ · It was so sunny at noon, and now it’s started to shower.

anna 难怪昨天蚂蚁都在搬家，原来大雨要来了。
nánguài zuótiān mǎyǐ dōu zài bānjiā yuánlái dà yǔ yào lái le · No wonder the ants were all moving house yesterday: heavy rain was on its way.

little sister 一时打雷，一时闪电，外面的风声像狼叫一样，好吓人。
yìshí dǎléi yìshí shǎndiàn wàimiàn de fēng shēng xiàng láng jiào yíyàng hǎo xià rén · Thunder one moment, lightning the next, and the wind howls like a wolf. It’s scary.

anna 别怕，房子很坚固。今年这一带台风频繁，大家都习惯了。
bié pà fángzi hěn jiāngù jīnnián zhè yídài táifēng pínfán dàjiā dōu xíguàn le · Don’t be scared, the building is solid. Typhoons have been frequent round here this year; people are used to them.

xiaoming 我刚去关窗，被雨淋得全身都湿了。
wǒ gāng qù guān chuāng bèi yǔ lín de quánshēn dōu shī le · I just went to shut the window and got soaked from head to toe.

xiaoming 停电了！灯一下子全灭了，外面一片黑暗。
tíng diàn le dēng yíxiàzi quán miè le wàimiàn yí piàn hēiàn · The power’s gone! All the lights went out at once, and it’s pitch dark outside.

anna 还好我们提前准备了水和吃的。
háihǎo wǒmen tíqián zhǔnbèi le shuǐ hé chī de · Good thing we got water and food in advance.

little sister 听说村子附近爆发了洪水，很多农田被淹没了。
tīngshuō cūnzi fùjìn bàofā le hóngshuǐ hěn duō nóngtián bèi yānmò le · I heard there are floods near the village, and lots of farmland is under water.

anna 什么声音？好像有东西爆炸了！
shénme shēngyīn hǎoxiàng yǒu dōngxi bàozhà le · What was that noise? It sounded like something exploded!

xiaoming 是对面的电线炸了，着火了！消防车已经来了。
shì duìmiàn de diàn xiàn zhà le zháohuǒ le xiāofáng chē yǐjīng lái le · The power line across the road blew up and caught fire! The fire engine is already here.

chapter 4 helping out

anna 雨停了，阳光照在大地上，好暖啊。
yǔ tíng le yángguāng zhào zài dàdì shàng hǎo nuǎn a · The rain has stopped and the sun is shining on the land. It's so warm.

little sister 可是村子里到处都是倒下的树，真是一场灾难。
kěshì cūnzi lǐ dàochù dōu shì dǎo xià de shù zhēn shì yì chǎng zāinàn · But there are fallen trees all over the village. It's a real disaster.

xiaoming 村子在山下，地形低，所以受灾最严重。
cūnzi zài shān xià dìxíng dī suǒyǐ shòuzāi zuì yánzhòng · The village sits at the foot of the hill on low ground, so it was hit the hardest.

anna 很多家庭都遭受了损失吧？有人员伤亡吗？
hěn duō jiātíng dōu zāoshòu le sǔnshī ba yǒu rényuán shāngwáng ma · Lots of families must have suffered losses. Was anyone killed or hurt?

xiaoming 没有人死亡，只有几个伤员，救援队已经把他们送到医院了。
méiyǒu rén sǐwáng zhǐ yǒu jǐ gè shāngyuán jiùyuán duì yǐjīng bǎ tāmen sòng dào yīyuàn le · Nobody died, there are just a few injured, and the rescue team has already taken them to hospital.

little sister 昨天晚上那场火灾呢？
zuótiān wǎnshang nà chǎng huǒzāi ne · And last night's fire?

xiaoming 消防队员很快就把火扑灭了。楼上有位老人大喊“救命”，也被救了出来。
xiāofáng duìyuán hěn kuài jiù bǎ huǒ pūmiè le lóu shàng yǒu wèi lǎorén dà hǎn jiùmìng yě bèi jiù le chulai · The firefighters put it out quickly. An old man upstairs shouted “Help!”, and he was rescued too.

anna 好险！灾区现在很需要人手，我们也去参加救灾吧。
hǎo xiǎn zāiqū xiànzài hěn xūyào rénshǒu wǒmen yě qù cānjiā jiùzāi ba · That was close! The disaster area really needs hands now. Let's go and help with the relief work too.

little sister 路边的沟里全是水，水流很急，上面浮着很多树枝。
lùbiān de gōu lǐ quán shì shuǐ shuǐliú hěn jí shàngmiàn fú zhe hěn duō shù zhī · The ditches by the road are full of fast-flowing water, with lots of branches floating on it.

xiaoming 这棵树挡住了路，得先把它砍断，车才能过去。
zhè kē shù dǎng zhù le lù děi xiān bǎ tā kǎn duàn chē cái néng guòqù · This tree is blocking the road. We have to chop it up before cars can get through.

anna 树下的土都松了，难怪风一吹就倒了。
shù xià de tǔ dōu sōng le nánguài fēng yì chuī jiù dǎo le · The soil under it has all gone loose. No wonder it fell over in the wind.

little sister 你们看，这些小草被水淹了一夜，却都还活着，生命力真强！
nǐmen kàn zhèxiē xiǎo cǎo bèi shuǐ yān le yí yè què dōu hái huó zhe shēngmìnglì zhēn qiáng · Look, this grass was under water all night but it's all still alive. What a will to live!

chapter 5 dr zhou arrives

anna 周博士！您怎么也来了？
Zhōubóshì nín zěnme yě lái le · Dr Zhou! What are you doing here?

dr zhou 我来了解这次台风的情况，也来看看你们。
wǒ lái liǎojiě zhè cì táifēng de qíngkuàng yě lái kàn kan nǐmen · I've come to look into this typhoon, and to see how you three are.

little sister 很多庄稼都被水淹了，农民们一定很难过。
hěn duō zhuāngjia dōu bèi shuǐ yān le nóngmínmen yídìng hěn nánguò · So many crops were flooded. The farmers must be heartbroken.

dr zhou 别担心，这里的土壤很肥沃，水退了以后还能重新播种。
bié dānxīn zhèlǐ de tǔrǎng hěn féiwò shuǐ tuì le yǐhòu hái néng chóngxīn bōzhǒng · Don't worry. The soil here is very fertile; once the water goes down they can sow again.

xiaoming 您不是在高原做研究吗？
nín bú shì zài gāoyuán zuò yánjiū ma · Weren't you doing research up on the plateau?

dr zhou 刚回来。那里又严寒又干燥，不过太阳一出来，山顶的雪就化了。
gāng huílái nàlǐ yòu yánhán yòu gānzào búguò tàiyáng yì chūlái shāndǐng de xuě jiù huà le · I've just got back. It's bitterly cold and dry up there, but as soon as the sun comes out, the snow on the summits melts.

xiaoming 这里正好相反，又炎热又潮湿，湿度特别高。
zhèlǐ zhènghǎo xiāngfǎn yòu yánrè yòu cháoshī shīdù tèbié gāo · Here it's just the opposite: hot and humid, with very high humidity.

dr zhou 今年各地灾害都不少，北方的草原还遭遇了干旱。
jīnnián gèdì zāihài dōu bù shǎo běifāng de cǎoyuán hái zāoyù le gānhàn · There have been plenty of disasters everywhere this year. The grasslands in the north even had a drought.

little sister 快来看！山坡上被雨冲出来一块石头，上面好像有脚印！
kuài lái kàn shānpō shàng bèi yǔ chōng chulai yí kuài shítou shàngmiàn hǎoxiàng yǒu jiǎoyìn · Come and look! The rain has washed a stone out of the hillside, and there seem to be footprints on it!

dr zhou 这是化石！它在土里埋了几百万年，在野外非常罕见。
zhè shì huàshí tā zài tǔ lǐ mái le jǐ bǎi wàn nián zài yěwài fēicháng hǎnjiàn · It's a fossil! It's been buried in the earth for millions of years. You very rarely find one out in the open.

anna 你们看，天上出现了彩虹！
nǐmen kàn tiānshàng chūxiàn le cǎihóng · Look, there's a rainbow in the sky!

xiaoming 不经历风雨，怎么见彩虹？大家一起重建，村子会更好的。
bù jīnglì fēngyǔ zěnme jiàn cǎihóng dàjiā yìqǐ chóngjiàn cūnzi huì gèng hǎo de · No rain, no rainbow. If everyone rebuilds together, the village will be even better.

A coast, a rice field, a storm and a rainbow: you followed the whole story, and you know what to say when nature turns rough.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 62 digital life

Talk about computers and apps: versions, faults, storage and files, and build new words with -化, -式, -型 and -性.

Every job runs on software, and these four endings let you understand hundreds of new tech and news words on sight.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
简化	jiǎnhuà	to simplify	新软件简化了很多步骤。 The new software cuts out a lot of steps.
强化	qiánghuà	to strengthen	我们要强化网络安全。 We need to strengthen our online security.
数字化	shùzìhuà	to digitise; digital	图书馆的老书都数字化了。 The library's old books have all been digitised.
优化	yōuhuà	to optimise, improve	我们要优化工作流程。 We need to streamline the way we work.
理性	lǐxìng	rational; reason	遇到问题时要保持理性。 Stay rational when problems come up.
特性	tèxìng	characteristic, property	每种材料都有自己的特性。 Every material has its own properties.
型号	xínghào	model (number)	你的手机是什么型号? What model is your phone?
性能	xìngnéng	performance (of a machine)	这台电脑的性能很好。 This computer performs really well.
版本	bǎnběn	version, edition	请下载最新的版本。 Please download the latest version.
故障	gùzhàng	fault, breakdown	电梯出故障了，我们走楼梯吧。 The lift has broken down; let's take the stairs.
修复	xiūfù	to repair, restore	这个问题已经修复了。 This problem has been fixed.
启动	qǐdòng	to start (a machine, a project)	电脑启动得很慢。 The computer takes ages to start up.
运行	yùnxíng	to run (a program, a train)	这个软件运行得很稳定。 This program runs very smoothly.
输出	shūchū	to output, export	文章写好以后，可以|输出成{==to export as}图片。 Once the article is written, you can export it as an image.
转换	zhuǎnhuàn	to convert, switch	这个软件能把语音|转换成{==to turn into}文字。 This app can turn speech into text.
压缩	yāsuō	to compress	文件太大，先压缩一下吧。 The file's too big; compress it first.

存储	cúnchǔ	to store (data)	这些照片存储在手机里。 These photos are stored on the phone.
储存	chǔcún	to store, stock up	冬天以前，很多家庭会储存一些|白菜{==Chinese cabbage}。 Before winter, many families store up some Chinese cabbage.
容量	róngliàng	capacity	我的手机存储容量不够了。 My phone is running out of storage.
文档	wéndàng	document (file)	请把文档发到我的邮箱。 Please send the document to my email.
粘贴	zhāntiē	to paste	把这段文字复制粘贴到文档里。 Copy and paste this text into the document.
下线	xiàxiàn	to go offline; log off	我先下线了，明天再聊。 I'm logging off now. Talk tomorrow.
动态	dòngtài	updates, news; dynamic	我每天都看看朋友们的动态。 I check my friends' updates every day.
漏洞	lòudòng	loophole; (security) bug	这个软件有一个安全漏洞。 This software has a security hole.
弹性	tánxìng	elasticity; flexible	我们公司实行弹性工作时间。 Our company has flexible working hours.

pattern -化, -式, -型, -性: endings that build words

word + 化 / 式 / 型 / 性

-化 means "make or become": 简化 simplify, 现代化 modernise. -式 means "style": 中式 Chinese-style, 西式. -型 means "type": 大型 large-scale, 新型 new-type. -性 means "-ness, -ity": 重要性 importance, 特性 property.

这家饭店的菜是中式的。 **zhè jiā fàndiàn de cài shì zhōng shì de** This restaurant serves Chinese food.

这是一种新型的手机。 **zhè shì yì zhǒng xīnxíng de shǒujī** This is a new kind of phone.

每种材料都有自己的特性。 **měi zhǒng cáiliào dōu yǒu zìjǐ de tèxìng** Every material has its own properties.

我们要优化工作流程。 **wǒmen yào yōuhuà gōngzuò liúchéng** We need to streamline the way we work.

dialogue laptop trouble

anna 小明，我的电脑一时快一时慢，是不是出故障了？
Xiǎomíng wǒ de diànnǎo yìshí kuài yìshí màn shì bu shì chū gùzhàng le · Xiaoming, my laptop is fast one minute and slow the next. Is it broken?

xiaoming 我看看。你的电脑型号太老了，存储容量也快满了。
wǒ kàn kan nǐ de diànnǎo xínghào tài lǎo le cúnchǔ róngliàng yě kuài mǎn le · Let me see. Your model is really old, and the storage is almost full.

anna 里面全是工作文档，我不敢删。
lǐmiàn quán shì gōngzuò wéndàng wǒ bù gǎn shān · It's all work documents. I daren't delete them.

xiaoming 可以把文档储存在网上，再把大的视频压缩一下。
kěyǐ bǎ wéndàng chǔcún zài wǎngshang zài bǎ dà de shìpín yāsuō yíxià · You can store the documents online, and compress the big videos.

anna 还有，我一粘贴，文字就全乱了。
hái yǒu wǒ yì zhāntiē wénzì jiù quán luàn le · And whenever I paste something, the text comes out scrambled.

xiaoming 那是软件的漏洞，新版本已经修复了。更新以后重新启动一下就好。
nà shì ruǎnjiàn de lòudòng xīn bǎnběn yǐjīng xiūfù le gēngxīn yǐhòu chóngxīn qǐdòng yíxià jiù hǎo · That's a bug in the software; the new version has fixed it. Update it, restart, and you're done.

anna 太好了。我们公司的系统也要优化了，最近老是出故障。
tài hǎo le wǒmen gōngsī de xìtǒng yě yào yōuhuà le zuìjìn lǎoshì chū gùzhàng · Great. Our company system needs optimising too; it keeps going offline.

xiaoming 安全方面也得强化，有漏洞就容易出问题。
ānquán fāngmiàn yě děi qiánghuà yǒu lòudòng jiù róngyì chū wèntí · Security needs strengthening too. Where there's a hole, there's trouble.

anna 你说话总是这么理性，什么问题都能说清楚。
nǐ shuōhuà zǒngshì zhème lǐxìng shénme wèntí dōu néng shuō qīngchu · You're always so rational. You can explain anything.

good to know · 存储 is the computer word (data storage); 储存 is everyday storing of anything, from data to winter vegetables. 性 after a word makes a noun of quality: 安全性 safety, 可能性 possibility, 积极性 enthusiasm.

Four little endings, hundreds of words: next time you see 化, 式, 型 or 性 in the news, you can guess the meaning.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

Talk about life online: links, browsers, data, cameras, privacy and staying safe, and use the prefixes 超-, 多-, 无-, 准-.

China lives online, from paying to chatting to working remotely. These words and prefixes are everywhere in apps, ads and news.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
多媒体	duōméitǐ	multimedia	我们学校的教室都是多媒体教室。 All our school's classrooms are multimedia rooms.
网	wǎng	net; the internet, network	家里的网太慢了，我看不了{liao3-4}视频。 The internet at home is too slow for videos.
联网	liánwǎng	to go online, connect	这台打印机可以联网。 This printer can connect to the internet.
链接	liànjiē	link; to link	我把链接发给你了。 I've sent you the link.
点击	diǎnjī	to click	点击这里就能下载。 Click here to download.
浏览器	liúlǎnqì	web browser	这个网页要用新的浏览器打开。 Open this page in a newer browser.
论坛	lùntán	forum	他常在论坛上回答别人的问题。 He often answers people's questions on forums.
流量	liúliàng	(mobile) data; traffic, flow	我这个月的流量快用完了。 I've nearly used up my data for this month.
隐私	yǐnsī	privacy	请尊重别人的隐私。 Please respect other people's privacy.
扫描	sǎomiáo	to scan	我把文件扫描以后发给你。 I'll scan the document and send it to you.
摄像头	shèxiàngtóu	camera (webcam)	开会的时候请打开摄像头。 Please turn your camera on for the meeting.
识别	shíbié	to recognise, identify	手机能识别我的脸。 My phone can recognise my face.
实时	shíshí	in real time	这个地图可以实时显示路况。 This map shows the traffic in real time.
远程	yuǎnchéng	remote, long-distance	今天我们开远程会议。 Today we're having a remote meeting.
传输	chuánshū	to transmit, transfer	照片传输得很快。 The photos transfer very quickly.
通信	tōngxìn	to communicate; telecommunications	地震以后，那里的通信中断了一段时间。 After the earthquake, communications

			there were cut for a while.
通讯	tōngxùn	communication(s)	手机已经|成了{==has become}最重要的通讯工具。 The phone has become our most important means of communication.
对接	duìjiē	to connect, link up (systems)	我们的系统下{=next}个月要跟银行对接。 Our system links up with the bank's next month.
跟踪	gēnzōng	to track, follow	你可以在网上跟踪你的快递。 You can track your parcel online.
监测	jiāncè	to monitor	这块手表可以监测心跳。 This watch can monitor your heart rate.
图像	túxiàng	image, picture	这台电视的图像很清晰。 This TV has a very sharp picture.
视觉	shìjué	(sense of) sight, visual	这部电影的视觉效果非常好。 The film's visual effects are superb.
听觉	tīngjué	(sense of) hearing	狗的听觉非常好。 Dogs have excellent hearing.
崭新	zhǎnxīn	brand-new	他穿着一双崭新的鞋。 He's wearing a brand-new pair of shoes.

pattern 超-, 多-, 无-, 准-: prefixes

超 / 多 / 无 / 反 / 准 **+ word**

A few characters work like English prefixes. 超 super-: 超大, 超好用. 多 multi-: 多媒体, 多功能. 无 no, -less: 无线, 无人. 反 anti-, counter-: 反方向. 准 soon-to-be: 准大学生, 准妈妈. 亚 sub-, second (亚军 runner-up) works the same way.

这部手机超好用。 **zhè bù shǒujī chāo hǎo yòng** This phone is super easy to use.

我们学校的教室都是多媒体教室。 **wǒmen xuéxiào de jiàoshì dōu shì duōméitǐ jiàoshì** All our school's classrooms are multimedia rooms.

她下个月就是准大学生了。 **tā xià gè yuè jiùshì zhǔn dàxuéshēng le** Next month she'll be a university student.

dialogue the new browser

little sister 哥哥，我在论坛上看到一个崭新的浏览器，听说超快。
gēge wǒ zài lùntán shàng kàn dào yí gè zhǎnxīn de liúlǎnqì tīngshuō chāo kuài · I saw a brand-new browser on a forum. They say it's super fast.

xiaoming 先别下载。凡是不认识的软件，都要先查一查。
xiān bié xiàzài fánshì bú rènshi de ruǎnjiàn dōu yào xiān chá yi cha · Don't download it yet. Any software you don't know, check it out first.

little sister 你太小心了吧？
nǐ tài xiǎoxīn le ba · Aren't you being a bit too careful?

xiaoming 现在很多软件会跟踪你的位置，还会传输你的数据。
xiànzài hěn duō ruǎnjiàn huì gēnzōng nǐ de wèizhì hái huì chuánshū nǐ de shùjù · These days lots of apps track where you are and send off your data.

little sister 那我们家的摄像头呢？我的隐私会不会被别人看到？
nà wǒmen jiā de shèxiàngtóu ne wǒ de yǐnsī huì bu huì bèi biérén kàn dào · What about our home camera? Could other people see my private life?

xiaoming 只要设置好密码就没问题。我还能远程监测大白在家干什么呢。
zhǐyào shèzhì hǎo mìmǎ jiù méi wèntí wǒ hái néng yuǎnchéng jiāncè Dàbái zài jiā gàn shénme ne · Not if you set a good password. I can even check what Dabai is up to at home from work.

little sister 哈哈，原来你每天上班都在看大白！
hā hā yuánlái nǐ měi tiān shàngbān dōu zài kàn Dàbái · Ha! So you spend your work day watching Dabai!

xiaoming 对啊，图像很清楚，还能实时说话。大白一听到我的声音就跑过来。
duì a túxiàng hěn qīngchu hái néng shíshí shuōhuà Dàbái yì tīng dào wǒ de shēngyīn jiù pǎo guolai · Yep. The picture is clear and we can talk live. Dabai comes running as soon as he hears my voice.

little sister 狗的听觉比视觉还好吧？
gǒu de tīngjué bǐ shìjué hái hǎo ba · A dog's hearing is even better than its eyesight, isn't it?

xiaoming 没错，所以它一听就知道是我。
méi cuò suǒyǐ tā yì tīng jiù zhīdào shì wǒ · Exactly, so he knows it's me the moment he hears me.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

击
jī
to strike

坛
tán
platform, altar

讯
xùn
news, message

good to know · 通信 and 通讯 are close: 通信 is the technical and industry word (通信技术), 通讯 is common for tools and contacts (通讯工具, 通讯录 address book). 超 as “super” is chatty: 超好吃, 超可爱. In writing, prefer 非常 or 十分.

You can now talk tech, warn a friend about privacy, and turn any adjective “super” with 超.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 64 how things work

Explain how things work: principles, models, measurements, shapes and materials, and say "even if" with 就算.

Explaining how something works is a core skill at work and in study, and 就算……也…… is how you insist something holds even in the worst case.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
原理	yuánlǐ	principle (how it works)	这台机器的原理其实很简单。 The way this machine works is actually simple.
机械	jīxiè	machinery; mechanical	他在一家{=(measure word)}机械工厂当工程师。 He's an engineer at a machinery plant.
构造	gòuzào	structure, construction	人的眼睛构造很复杂。 The human eye has a complex structure.
仪器	yíqì	instrument (scientific)	实验室里有很多新仪器。 The lab has lots of new instruments.
模型	móxíng	model	他做了一个飞机模型。 He made a model plane.
模拟	mónǐ	to simulate	我们先用电脑模拟一下。 Let's simulate it on the computer first.
精确	jīngquè	precise, exact	这个数字不太精确。 This figure isn't very precise.
精准	jīngzhǔn	accurate, on target	他的判断非常精准。 His judgement is spot on.
测量	cèliáng	to measure	我们先测量一下房间的面积。 Let's measure the room first.
毫米	háomǐ	millimetre	只{zhi3}差一毫米，门就关上了。 One more millimetre and the door would have shut.
毫升	háoshēng	millilitre	这瓶水有五百毫升。 This bottle holds 500 millilitres.
平方	píngfāng	square (of a number); square metre	三的平方是九。 Three squared is nine.
体积	tǐjī	volume, size	这个箱子体积太大，放不进车里。 This box is too big to fit in the car.
密度	mìdù	density	这个城市的人口密度很高。 This city is very densely populated.
相等	xiāngděng	to be equal	这两条线的长度相等。 These two lines are the same length.
垂直	chuízhí	perpendicular, vertical	这两面墙必须互相垂直。 These two walls must be at right angles.
旋转	xuánzhuǎn	to rotate, spin	地球绕着太阳旋转。 The Earth goes round the sun.

转动	zhuàndòng	to turn, rotate	风一吹，|风车{==windmill}就转动|起来{==(starts to)}。 When the wind blows, the windmill starts turning.
均匀	jūnyún	even, uniform	做菜的时候，盐要撒得均匀一点儿。 When cooking, sprinkle the salt evenly.
坚硬	jiānyìng	hard, solid	这种木头非常坚硬。 This wood is very hard.
透明	tòumíng	transparent	这个盒子是透明的。 This box is see-through.
物体	wùtǐ	object, body (physics)	天上有一个会发光的物体。 There's a glowing object in the sky.
材质	cáizhì	material (what it's made of)	这件衣服是什么材质的? What's this top made of?
木材	mùcái	timber, wood	这座老房子是用木材建的。 This old house is built of wood.
水泥	shuǐní	cement, concrete	这条路是水泥路。 This road is concrete.

pattern 就算……也……: even if …

就算 **even the extreme case** ，也 **the result stays the same**

就算 sets up a case, often an extreme or unlikely one, and 也 says the result doesn't change. It is spoken and firm; 即使……也…… is the more written version.

就算再忙，我也会给你打电话。 **jiùsuàn zài máng wǒ yě huì gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà** However busy I am, I'll call you.

就算机器再精准，也需要人来检查。 **jiùsuàn jīqì zài jīngzhǔn yě xūyào rén lái jiǎnchá** However accurate the machine is, people still need to check.

就算模型做得再好，也要在真桥上测试。 **jiùsuàn móxíng zuò de zài hǎo yě yào zài zhēn qiáo shàng cèshì** Even if the model is perfect, it still has to be tested on the real bridge.

dialogue the model bridge

anna 小明，你桌子上这个是什么模型？
Xiǎomíng nǐ zhuōzi shàng zhège shì shénme móxíng · Xiaoming, what's this model on your desk?

xiaoming 是一座桥的模型。我们先用电脑模拟，再做一个小的试一试。
shì yí zuò qiáo de móxíng wǒmen xiān yòng diànnǎo mónǐ zài zuò yí gè xiǎo de shì yi shi · It's a model bridge. We simulate it on the computer first, then build a small one to try out.

anna 它的构造好复杂啊！是什么材质的？
tā de gòuzào hǎo fùzá a shì shénme cáizhì de · The structure looks so complicated! What's it made of?

xiaoming 下面是水泥，上面用的是木材，很坚硬。
xiàmiàn shì shuǐní shàngmiàn yòng de shì mùcái hěn jiānyìng · The bottom is concrete and the top is timber. It's very hard.

anna 这么小的地方，你们怎么测量？
zhème xiǎo de dìfang nǐmen zěnme cèliáng · How do you measure such tiny parts?

xiaoming 用这台仪器，可以精确到零点一毫米。
yòng zhè tái yíqì kěyǐ jīngquè dào líng diǎn yì háomǐ · With this instrument. It's precise to a tenth of a millimetre.

anna 真精准！不过模型归模型，真的桥会一样吗？
zhēn jīngzhǔn búguò móxíng guī móxíng zhēn de qiáo huì yíyàng ma · How accurate! But a model is one thing; will the real bridge be the same?

xiaoming 好问题。就算模型做得再好，也要在真桥上再测试。
hǎo wèntí jiùsuàn móxíng zuò de zài hǎo yě yào zài zhēn qiáo shàng zài cèshì · Good question. However good the model, we still have to test on the real bridge.

anna 那这个转动的部分是做什么的？
nà zhège zhuàndòng de bùfen shì zuò shénme de · And what's this turning part for?

xiaoming 船过来的时候，桥的中间可以旋转，让船通过。
chuán guòlái de shíhou qiáo de zhōngjiān kěyǐ xuánzhuǎn ràng chuán tōngguò · When a ship comes, the middle of the bridge swings round to let it through.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

仪
yí
instrument

拟
nǐ
to imitate; draft

匀
yún
even

good to know · 精确 is exact in measurement (精确到一毫米); 精准 is hitting the target (精准的判断, 精准地找到). 平方 is “squared” in maths and, in speech, short for 平方米: 这套房子一百平方 (100 square metres).

You can now explain how something works, and stand your ground with 就算……也……
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 65 in the lab

Talk about a science lab: cells, genes, elements and states of matter, testing and proving results, and say “so that” with 以便.

Science news, health reports and school science all use these words, and 以便 is how written Chinese states a purpose.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
细胞	xìbāo	cell (biology)	人体是由无数个细胞组成的。 The human body is made of countless cells.
基因	jīyīn	gene	眼睛的颜色是由基因决定的。 Eye colour is decided by genes.
遗传	yíchuán	to inherit (genetically)	这种病会遗传吗? Is this illness hereditary?
进化	jìnhuà	to evolve; evolution	生物的进化需要很长的时间。 Evolution takes a very long time.
元素	yuánsù	element; factor	铜是一种常见的金属元素。 Copper is a common metal element.
气体	qìtǐ	gas	水加热以后会变成气体。 Heated water turns into gas.
液体	yètǐ	liquid	飞机上不能带太多液体。 You can’t take much liquid on a plane.
固体	gùtǐ	solid	冰是固体，水是液体。 Ice is a solid; water is a liquid.
金属	jīnshǔ	metal	这把椅子是金属的。 This chair is metal.
铜	tóng	copper, bronze	这个古老的镜子是铜做的。 This ancient mirror is made of bronze.
氧气	yǎngqì	oxygen	高原上氧气比较少。 There’s less oxygen up on a plateau.
合成	héchéng	to synthesise, combine	这种材料是人工合成的。 This material is man-made.
生成	shēngchéng	to generate, produce	系统会自动生成一份报告。 The system generates a report automatically.
释放	shìfàng	to release	植物在阳光下会释放氧气。 Plants release oxygen in sunlight.
还原	huányuán	to restore (to the original)	这张老照片的颜色被还原了。 The colours of this old photo have been restored.
效应	xiàoyìng	effect	这家{=(measure word)}店请明星做广告，就是想利用名人效应。 The shop hired a star for its adverts to cash in on the celebrity effect.
周期	zhōuqī	cycle, period	这个项目的周期是两年。 This project runs over two years.

频率	pínlǜ	frequency	你运动的频率是多少？一周三次吗? How often do you exercise? Three times a week?
概率	gàilǜ	probability, chance	明天下雨的概率很大。 There's a good chance of rain tomorrow.
检测	jiǎncè	to test, detect	这台仪器可以检测水的质量。 This instrument can test water quality.
检验	jiǎnyàn	to inspect, verify	这批产品都检验过{guo}了。 This batch has all been inspected.
鉴定	jiàndìng	to authenticate, appraise	专家鉴定这幅画是真的。 The experts judged the painting to be genuine.
验证	yànzhèng	to verify, prove	这个想法需要实验来验证。 This idea needs to be tested by experiment.
人为	rénwéi	man-made, caused by people	这次火灾是人为的。 This fire was started by people.

pattern ……，以便……: so that

what you do ，以便 the purpose

以便 opens the second half and gives the aim of the first: do A so that B becomes easier or possible. It is written style; in speech people say 好 or 为了. Its opposite is 以免 (so as not to).

请把电话号码留下，以便我们联系您。 **qǐng bǎ diànhuà hàomǎ liúxia yǐbiàn wǒmen liánxì nín** Please leave your number so that we can contact you.

这些水要放进冰箱，以便明天检测。 **zhèxiē shuǐ yào fàng jìn bīngxiāng yǐbiàn míngtiān jiǎncè** This water must go in the fridge so it can be tested tomorrow.

系统会自动生成报告，以便大家查看。 **xìtǒng huì zìdòng shēngchéng bàogào yǐbiàn dàjiā chákàn** The system generates a report automatically so everyone can see it.

dialogue a tour of the lab

little sister 周博士，这些仪器是用来做什么的?
Zhōubóshì zhèxiē yíqì shì yònglái zuò shénme de · Dr Zhou, what are all these instruments for?

dr zhou 这台用来检测水里有没有金属，比如铜。
zhè tái yònglái jiǎncè shuǐ lǐ yǒu méiyǒu jīnshǔ bǐrú tóng · This one tests whether there's metal in water, copper for example.

anna 那边那台呢?
nàbiān nà tái ne · And that one over there?

dr zhou 那是检验空气的，看看氧气和别的气体有多少。
nà shì jiǎnyàn kōngqì de kàn kan yǎngqì hé biéde qìtǐ yǒu duōshao · That one checks the air: how much oxygen and other gases there are.

little sister 听说您还能鉴定化石的年代?
tīngshuō nín hái néng jiàndìng huàshí de niándài · I heard you can even date fossils?

dr zhou 能。不过周期很长，结果要多次验证，以便确定没有人为的错误。
néng búguò zhōuqī hěn cháng jiéguǒ yào duō cì yànzhèng yǐbiàn quèdìng méiyǒu rénwéi de cuòwù · Yes. But it takes a long time: the results are checked many times, so we're sure there's no human error.

anna 做科学研究真不容易，这也不能马虎，那也不能马虎。
zuò kēxué yánjiū zhēn bù róngyì zhè yě bù néng mǎhu nà yě bù néng mǎhu · Science is hard: you can't be careless about this, or about that.

dr zhou 是啊。就像生物的进化，一代一代，要经过很长很长的时间。
shì a jiù xiàng shēngwù de jìnhuà yídài yídài yào jīngguò hěn cháng hěn cháng de shíjiān · That's right. Like evolution: generation after generation, over a very, very long time.

little sister 基因出现变化的概率大吗?
jīyīn chūxiàn biànhuà de gàilǜ dà ma · Is there a big chance of genes changing?

dr zhou 很小。不过我们可以用电脑还原生物几百万年前的样子。
hěn xiǎo búguò wǒmen kěyǐ yòng diànnǎo huányuán shēngwù jǐ bǎi wàn nián qián de yàngzi · Very small. But we can use computers to reconstruct what living things looked like millions of years ago.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

胞
bāo
womb; sac

铜
tóng
copper, bronze

good to know · 检测, 检验, 鉴定, 验证: test with instruments, inspect against a standard, authenticate (an antique, a fossil), prove (an idea). 率 is lǜ in 频率 frequency and 概率 probability: both are "rates". 作用 "effect" is also a written verb: 作用于 "to act on": 阳光作用于植物. In speech, say 对……有作用 or 影响.

Gas, liquid, solid, gene, cell: you can now follow a science report and explain why results need proving.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 66 big projects

Talk about big science and engineering: space, the Moon, research projects, patents, AI and the pipes and bridges that run a city, and set conditions with 除非……才……

Space missions, AI and mega-projects are headline news in China, and 除非……才…… is how you say “only if”.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
太空	tàikōng	outer space	人类一直在探索太空的秘密。 People have always tried to discover the secrets of space.
月球	yuèqiú	the Moon	月球上没有空气。 There is no air on the Moon.
天文	tiānwén	astronomy	她从小就对天文很感兴趣。 She’s loved astronomy since she was little.
轨道	guǐdào	orbit; track, rails	月球在自己的轨道上运行。 The Moon moves along its own orbit.
航空	hángkōng	aviation; air (travel)	他在一家{=(measure word)}航空公司工作。 He works for an airline.
基地	jīdì	base	这里是一个科研基地。 This is a research base.
探索	tànsuǒ	to explore	孩子们喜欢探索新事物。 Children love exploring new things.
突破	tūpò	to break through; breakthrough	这项研究取得|了很大的突破。 This research has made a big breakthrough.
科普	kēpǔ	popular science	我想写一篇科普文章。 I want to write a popular-science article.
课题	kètí	research topic, project	你最近在做什么课题? What are you researching at the moment?
考察	kǎochá	to investigate on site, study	他们去南方考察了一个星期。 They spent a week on a study trip in the south.
采集	cǎijí	to collect, gather (samples)	|科学家{==scientists}们在月球上采集了一些土壤。 Scientists collected some soil from the Moon.
搜集	sōují	to collect, gather (information)	我可以帮你搜集资料。 I can help you gather material.
专利	zhuānlì	patent	这项发明已经申请了专利。 A patent has been applied for on this invention.
命名	mìngmíng	to name	这颗星星是用一位|科学家{==scientist}的名字命名的。 This star was named after a scientist.
高新技术	gāoxīnjìshù	high and new technology	这家{=(measure word)}公司专门研发高新技术。

			This company specialises in developing hi-tech.
人工智能	réngōngzhìnéng	artificial intelligence, AI	人工智能已经进入了我们的生活。 AI has become part of our lives.
放大	fàngdà	to enlarge, magnify	这张照片放大以后更清楚了。 The photo is clearer when you zoom in.
覆盖	fùgài	to cover	网络已经覆盖了全国大部分农村。 The network now covers most of the country's villages.
升	shēng	litre	我每天喝两升{sheng1-6}水。 I drink two litres of water a day.
桥梁	qiáoliáng	bridge (formal)	这座桥梁连接了两座城市。 This bridge links two cities.
水库	shuǐkù	reservoir	这个水库能储存很多水。 This reservoir can hold a lot of water.
管道	guǎndào	pipe, pipeline	工人们正在修理地下的管道。 Workers are fixing the pipes underground.
输送	shūsòng	to carry, transport (by pipe, line)	这根管道每天输送大量的水。 This pipe carries huge amounts of water every day.

pattern 除非……才……: only if …

除非 | the one condition | ，才 | the result

除非 names the only condition, and 才 says the result happens only then. Another common shape is 除非……，否则…… (unless …, otherwise …).

除非你亲自去，他才会同意。 **chúfēi nǐ qīnzì qù tā cái huì tóngyì** He'll only agree if you go in person.

除非天气好，我们才去爬山。 **chúfēi tiānqì hǎo wǒmen cái qù pá shān** We'll only go hiking if the weather is good.

除非大家都同意，这个计划才能实行。 **chúfēi dàjiā dōu tóngyì zhège jìhuà cái néng shíxíng** The plan can go ahead only if everyone agrees.

dialogue an interview about space

anna 周博士，我想写一篇科普文章。您最近在做什么课题？
Zhōubóshì wǒ xiǎng xiě yì piān kēpǔ wénzhāng nín zuìjìn zài zuò shénme kètí · Dr Zhou, I want to write a popular-science article. What are you researching at the moment?

dr zhou 我在研究月球的轨道，跟一个科研基地合作。
wǒ zài yánjiū yuèqiú de guǐdào gēn yí gè kēyán jīdì hézuò · I'm studying the Moon's orbit, together with a research base.

xiaoming 太厉害了！我大学学的就是航空工程。您去那个基地考察过吗？
tài lìhai le wǒ dàxué xué de jiùshì hángkōng gōngchéng nín qù nàge jīdì kǎochá guo ma · Amazing! I studied aeronautical engineering at university. Have you been to the base on a study visit?

dr zhou 去过几次。我所看到的，都是最新的高新技术。
qù guo jǐ cì wǒ suǒ kàn dào de dōu shì zuì xīn de gāoxīn jìshù · A few times. Everything I saw there was the very latest technology.

anna 听说人工智能也用在了太空探索上？
tīngshuō réngōng zhìnéng yě yòng zài le tàikōng tànsuǒ shàng · I hear AI is used in space exploration too?

dr zhou 对，很多数据都靠人工智能来分析，比人快多了。
duì hěn duō shùjù dōu kào réngōng zhìnéng lái fēnxī bǐ rén kuài duō le · Yes, a lot of the data is analysed by AI, much faster than people can.

xiaoming 那研究天文的人以后会不会没有工作？
nà yánjiū tiānwén de rén yǐhòu huì bu huì méiyǒu gōngzuò · So will astronomers be out of a job one day?

dr zhou 不会。除非机器自己会提出好问题，才能代替我们。还早呢！
bú huì chúfēi jīqì zìjǐ huì tíchū hǎo wèntí cái néng dàitì wǒmen hái zǎo ne · No. Only when machines can ask good questions themselves could they replace us. That's a long way off!

anna 说得太好了，我要把这句写进文章里。
shuō de tài hǎo le wǒ yào bǎ zhè jù xiě jìn wénzhāng lǐ · Well said! I'm putting that line in my article.

dr zhou 没问题，我还可以帮你搜集一些资料和照片。
méi wèntí wǒ hái kěyǐ bāng nǐ sōují yìxiē zīliào hé zhàopiàn · Go ahead. I can also help you gather some material and photos.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

轨
guǐ
track, rail

覆
fù
to cover, overturn

good to know · 采集 is collecting physical samples (soil, plants, data from sensors); 搜集 is searching out and gathering information or objects. 升 is the verb "rise" (升高), and the measure word "litre": 一升水 a litre of water.

From the Moon to the water pipes under your street, you can now talk about the big projects that shape our world.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 67 energy and the planet

Talk about energy, pollution and green living: coal, oil and gas, solar and wind, emissions and saving energy, in the written style of 于.

Energy and the environment are some of the most-discussed topics in China today, from electric cars to air quality, and reports on them are full of 于.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
能源	néngyuán	energy (sources)	我们要节约能源。 We should save energy.
能量	néngliàng	energy (amount)	早饭能给我们一天的能量。 Breakfast gives us energy for the day.
新能源	xīnnéngyuán	new energy (renewables)	越来越多的人开新能源汽车。 More and more people drive electric and other new-energy cars.
太阳能	tàiyángnéng	solar energy	很多家庭在楼顶上装了太阳能。 Lots of families have put solar water heaters on the roof.
风力	fēnglì	wind power	海边有很多风力发电站。 There are lots of wind farms by the sea.
发电	fādiàn	to generate electricity	这条河可以用来发电。 This river can be used to make electricity.
电力	diànlì	electric power	夏天用电多，电力很紧张。 In summer people use a lot of power and supplies get tight.
电源	diànyuán	power supply, socket	出门前请关掉电源。 Please switch off at the mains before you go out.
煤	méi	coal	以前北方冬天主要烧煤取暖。 In the past, northern homes were mostly heated by burning coal.
石油	shíyóu	oil, petroleum	石油的价格又涨了。 The price of oil has gone up again.
天然气	tiānránqì	natural gas	我家做饭用天然气。 We cook with natural gas at home.
燃料	ránliào	fuel	飞机的燃料很贵。 Aircraft fuel is expensive.
消耗	xiāohào	to consume, use up	跑步能消耗很多能量。 Running burns a lot of energy.
节能	jiénéng	to save energy; energy-saving	这种灯很节能。 These lights are very energy-efficient.
低碳	dītàn	low-carbon	骑自行车是一种低碳的出行方式。 Cycling is a low-carbon way to get about.

二氧化碳	èryǎnghuàtàn	carbon dioxide	植物会吸收二氧化碳。 Plants absorb carbon dioxide.
排放	páifàng	to emit, discharge	汽车排放的二氧化碳越来越多。 Cars are giving off more and more carbon dioxide.
污水	wūshuǐ	waste water, sewage	工厂的污水必须处理以后才|能排放。 Factory waste water must be treated before it is released.
饮用水	yǐnyòngshuǐ	drinking water	这里的饮用水很干净。 The drinking water here is very clean.
噪声	zàoshēng	noise	马路上的噪声太大了。 The traffic noise is terrible.
生态	shēngtài	ecology, ecosystem	保护生态就是保护我们自己。 Protecting nature means protecting ourselves.
绿化	lǜhuà	to green (plant trees and grass)	这个小区的绿化做得很好。 This estate has lots of well-kept green space.
再生	zàishēng	to regenerate; renewable	太阳能是可以再生的能源。 Solar power is a renewable energy.
循环	xúnhuán	to circulate; cycle	这些袋子可以循环使用。 These bags can be reused.
短缺	duǎnquē	to be short of; shortage	有些地区饮用水短缺。 Some regions are short of drinking water.

pattern 于 in written phrases: 用于, 来自于, 有利于

verb / adjective **于** **use / source / who benefits**

On day 48, 于 dated and placed things (成立于去年). It also joins fixed written phrases: 用于 used for, 来自于 comes from, 有利于 good for, 位于 located in. They make reports sound neat and serious.

这个风力发电站位于海边。 **zhège fēnglì fādiàn zhàn wèiyú hǎi biān** This wind farm is on the coast.

这种燃料主要用于发电。 **zhè zhǒng ránliào zhǔyào yòngyú fādiàn** This fuel is used mainly to generate electricity.

节能有利于保护环境。 **jiénéng yǒulì yú bǎohù huánjìng** Saving energy is good for the environment.

dialogue a green-living event

little sister 周博士，我们学校要办一个环保活动，您能给我们一些建议吗?
Zhōubóshì wǒmen xuéxiào yào bàn yí gè huánbǎo huódòng nín néng gěi wǒmen yìxiē jiànyì ma · Dr Zhou, our university is holding an environmental event. Could you give us some ideas?

dr zhou 可以从身边做起，比如少开车，少消耗能源。
kěyǐ cóng shēnbiān zuò qǐ bǐrú shǎo kāichē shǎo xiāohào néngyuán · Start with everyday things: drive less, use less energy.

anna 我听说中国的太阳能发电是世界第一?
wǒ tīngshuō Zhōngguó de tàiyángnéng fādiàn shì shìjiè dì yī · I heard China generates more solar power than anywhere else?

dr zhou 对。不过很多地方还在用煤和石油，这些燃料会排放大量的二氧化碳。
duì búguò hěn duō dìfang hái zài yòng méi hé shíyóu zhèxiē ránliào huì páifàng dàliàng de èryǎnghuàtàn · That's right. But many places still use coal and oil, and those fuels give off a lot of carbon dioxide.

little sister 那电动车呢? 它用的也是电啊。
nà diàndòngchē ne tā yòng de yě shì diàn a · What about e-bikes? They run on electricity too.

dr zhou 好问题。如果电来自新能源，就更低碳了。
hǎo wèntí rúguǒ diàn láizì xīnnéngyuán jiù gèng dītàn le · Good question. If the electricity comes from renewables, they're even lower-carbon.

anna 城市里的噪声也是一种污染吧?
chéngshì lǐ de zàoshēng yě shì yì zhǒng wūrǎn ba · City noise is a kind of pollution too, isn't it?

dr zhou 是的。多做城市绿化，种树种草，既能减少噪声，也有利于生态。
shì de duō zuò chéngshì lǜhuà zhòng shù zhòng cǎo jì néng jiǎnshǎo zàoshēng yě yǒulì yú shēngtài · Yes. More green space, trees and grass, cuts noise and is good for nature.

little sister 那我们的活动就叫“低碳生活，循环使用”!
nà wǒmen de huódòng jiù jiào dītàn shēnghuó xúnhuán shǐyòng · Then we'll call our event “Low-carbon living: reuse and recycle”!

dr zhou 好名字! 能源要节约，东西要循环使用。
hǎo míngzi néngyuán yào jiéyuē dōngxi yào xúnhuán shǐyòng · Great name! Save energy, and reuse things.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

煤
méi
coal

耗
hào
to consume

good to know · 能源 is the source (coal, sun, wind); 能量 is the amount of energy (food gives you 能量). In China, cars running on electricity are called 新能源汽车, “new-energy vehicles”, and carry green number plates.

Coal or sun, oil or wind: you can now join one of the biggest conversations of our time, in Chinese. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 68 mission: the science fair

Follow a story about a science fair, using the words of computers, the internet, machines and measuring, the lab, space and big projects, and energy together.

Presenting a project, fixing a last-minute bug and answering tough questions: this is how science and tech talk sounds in real life.

chapter 1 a machine that tests water

little sister 哥哥，这就是我们的作品：一个可以检测河水的小机器人。
gēge zhè jiùshì wǒmen de zuòpǐn yí gè kěyǐ jiǎncè hé shuǐ de xiǎo jīqìrén · This is our project: a little robot that tests river water.

xiaoming 不错啊！它的原理是什么？
búcuò a tā de yuánlǐ shì shénme · Not bad! How does it work?

little sister 它浮在水面上，用仪器测量水里的金属和气体，再把数据实时传输到手机上。
tā fú zài shuǐmiàn shàng yòng yíqì cèliáng shuǐ lǐ de jīnshǔ hé qìtǐ zài bǎ shùjù shíshí chuánshū dào shǒujī shàng · It floats on the surface, measures the metals and gases in the water with its instruments, and sends the data to a phone in real time.

xiaoming 外面是透明的，里面的机械构造都看得很清楚。
wàimiàn shì tòumíng de lǐmiàn de jīxiè gòuzào dōu kàn de hěn qīngchu · The outside is see-through: you can clearly see the mechanical parts inside.

little sister 上面的摄像头可以旋转，三百六十度都能拍到。
shàngmiàn de shèxiàngtóu kěyǐ xuánzhuǎn sānbǎiliùshí dù dōu néng pāi dào · The camera on top can rotate, so it can film all 360 degrees.

xiaoming 它体积这么小，密度又比水低，难怪能浮起来。
tā tǐjī zhème xiǎo mìdù yòu bǐ shuǐ dī nánguài néng fú qǐlai · It's so small and less dense than water: no wonder it floats.

little sister 我们先做过一个模型，还在电脑上模拟了好几次。
wǒmen xiān zuò guo yí gè móxíng hái zài diànnǎo shàng mónǐ le hǎojǐ cì · We built a model first, and ran quite a few simulations on the computer.

xiaoming 用的是什么能源？
yòng de shì shénme néngyuán · What does it run on?

little sister 太阳能！又节能又低碳。白天储存的能量，晚上也够用。
tàiyángnéng yòu jiénéng yòu dītàn báitiān chǔcún de néngliàng wǎnshang yě gòu yòng · Solar power! Energy-saving and low-carbon. The energy it stores in the day lasts through the night.

little sister 而且它是多功能的，还能测水深，精准到一毫米。
érqiě tā shì duō gōngnéng de hái néng cè shuǐ shēn jīngzhǔn dào yì háomǐ · And it's multi-functional: it can also measure the depth of the water, accurate to one millimetre.

xiaoming 性能不错。不过外面的材质要坚硬一点儿，以免被石头撞坏。
xìngnéng búcuò búguò wàimiàn de cáizhì yào jiānyìng yìdiǎnr yǐmiǎn bèi shítou zhuàng huài · It performs well. But the outside needs to be tougher so rocks don't damage it.

little sister 好，我们明天就换一种。木材怕水，水泥又太重，那就用硬塑料吧。
hǎo wǒmen míngtiān jiù huàn yì zhǒng mùcái pà shuǐ shuǐní yòu tài zhòng nà jiù yòng yìng sùliào ba · OK, we'll change the material tomorrow. Wood doesn't like water and concrete is too heavy, so we'll use hard plastic.

chapter 2 crash!

little sister 糟糕！电脑出故障了，启动不了！
zāogāo diànnǎo chū gùzhàng le qǐdòng bu liǎo · Oh no! The computer's broken down: it won't start!

xiaoming 别着急。这台电脑是什么型号？系统是哪个版本？
bié zháojí zhè tái diànnǎo shì shénme xínghào xìtǒng shì nǎge bǎnběn · Don't panic. What model is this computer? Which version is the system?

anna 你们的文档都存储在网上吗？
nǐmen de wéndàng dōu cúnchǔ zài wǎngshang ma · Are your documents all stored online?

little sister 大部分在网上，可是视频还在电脑里。
dà bùfen zài wǎngshang kěshì shìpín hái zài diànnǎo lǐ · Most of them, but the video is still on the computer.

xiaoming 我来看看……是软件的一个漏洞，我已经修复了。
wǒ lái kàn kan shì ruǎnjiàn de yí gè lòudòng wǒ yǐjīng xiūfù le · Let me see … it's a bug in the software. I've fixed it.

xiaoming 另外，电脑的容量快满了，难怪运行得超慢。
lìngwài diànnǎo de róngliàng kuài mǎn le nánguài yùnxíng de chāo màn · Also, the computer is almost full: no wonder it runs so slowly.

anna 太好了！视频太大的话，先压缩一下再上传，不然太费流量。
tài hǎo le shìpín tài dà dehuà xiān yāsuō yíxià zài shàngchuán bùrán tài fèi liúliàng · Brilliant! If the video's too big, compress it before you upload it, or it'll eat up your data.

little sister 视频还得先转换一下，再输出。
shìpín hái děi xiān zhuǎnhuàn yíxià zài shūchū · The video still has to be converted first, then exported.

xiaoming 说明文字太长了，我帮你简化一下，你直接粘贴到文档里。
shuōmíng wénzì tài cháng le wǒ bāng nǐ jiǎnhuà yíxià nǐ zhíjiē zhāntiē dào wéndàng lǐ · The description is too long. I'll simplify it for you, and you just paste it into the document.

anna 你的同学刚发了条动态：“我先下线了，明天见！”
nǐ de tóngxué gāng fā le tiáo dòngtài wǒ xiān xiàxiàn le míngtiān jiàn · Your classmate just posted an update: “I'm logging off, see you tomorrow!”

little sister 谢谢你们！就算今天不睡觉，我也要把这个视频做完。
xièxie nǐmen jiùsuàn jīntiān bú shuìjiào wǒ yě yào bǎ zhège shìpín zuò wán · Thank you both! Even if I don't sleep tonight, I'm finishing this video.

xiaoming 还是早一点儿睡吧，明天回答问题头脑要清醒。
háishi zǎo yìdiǎnr shuì ba míngtiān huídá wèntí tóunǎo yào qīngxǐng · Better get some sleep. Tomorrow you need a clear head for the questions.

chapter 3 something in the water

little sister 比赛前，我们得来水库考察一次，在真的水里试一试。
bǐsài qián wǒmen děi lái shuǐkù kǎochá yí cì zài zhēn de shuǐ lǐ shì yi shi · Before the contest we have to come to the reservoir once and try it in real water.

xiaoming 每天有几百万升水从这里通过管道输送到城里。
měi tiān yǒu jǐ bǎi wàn shēng shuǐ cóng zhèlǐ tōngguò guǎndào shūsòng dào chéng lǐ · Every day millions of litres of water are carried from here to the city through pipes.

anna 你们看，水面上覆盖着一层绿色的东西。
nǐmen kàn shuǐmiàn shàng fùgài zhe yì céng lǜsè de dōngxi · Look, the surface is covered with a layer of something green.

little sister 我们先采集一些水，每瓶两百毫升。
wǒmen xiān cǎijí yìxiē shuǐ měi píng liǎngbǎi háoshēng · Let's collect some water first, two hundred millilitres a bottle.

little sister 机器人显示：水里的铜比平时多，氧气却少了一半。
jīqìrén xiǎnshì shuǐ lǐ de tóng bǐ píngshí duō yǎngqì què shǎo le yíbàn · The robot shows more copper in the water than usual, but only half the oxygen.

anna 这是自然现象，还是人为的？
zhè shì zìrán xiànxiàng háishi rénwéi de · Is this natural, or caused by people?

xiaoming 附近有一家工厂，很可能是它排放的污水。
fùjìn yǒu yì jiā gōngchǎng hěn kěnéng shì tā páifàng de wūshuǐ · There's a factory nearby; it's very likely its waste water.

little sister 这种金属会慢慢释放到水里，直接作用于鱼的细胞。
zhè zhǒng jīnshǔ huì màn màn shìfàng dào shuǐ lǐ zhíjiē zuòyòng yú yú de xìbāo · This metal is slowly released into the water and acts directly on the fish's cells.

anna 这可是全城的饮用水啊，安全性太重要了！
zhè kěshì quán chéng de yǐnyòngshuǐ a ānquán xìng tài zhòngyào le · This is the whole city's drinking water: its safety really matters!

little sister 我把图像放大看看……污染好像有固定的周期，而且频率越来越高。
wǒ bǎ túxiàng fàngdà kàn kan wūrǎn hǎoxiàng yǒu gùdìng de zhōuqī érqiě pínlǜ yuè lái yuè gāo · Let me enlarge the images … the pollution seems to come in a regular cycle, and more and more often.

anna 那你们要天天跑来吗？
nà nǐmen yào tiān tiān pǎo lái ma · So will you have to come out here every day?

little sister 不用，它能联网，我们可以远程跟踪，在家打开浏览器就能看到。
búyòng tā néng liánwǎng wǒmen kěyǐ yuǎnchéng gēnzōng zài jiā dǎkāi liúlǎnqì jiù néng kàn dào · No, it connects to the internet, so we can track it remotely: just open a browser at home.

chapter 4 tough questions

dr zhou 你们好，今天由我来给大家打分。请介绍一下你们的课题。
nǐmen hǎo jīntiān yóu wǒ lái gěi dàjiā dǎfēn qǐng jièshào yíxià nǐmen de kètí · Hello, I'm judging today. Tell me about your project.

little sister 我们的机器人可以监测河水，以便及时发现污水。
wǒmen de jīqìrén kěyǐ jiāncè hé shuǐ yǐbiàn jíshí fāxiàn wūshuǐ · Our robot monitors river water so that waste water can be spotted in time.

little sister 它能检测十几种元素，主要是金属。
tā néng jiǎncè shí jǐ zhǒng yuánsù zhǔyào shì jīnshǔ · It can detect a dozen or so elements, mainly metals.

dr zhou 数据精确吗？你们怎么验证结果？
shùjù jīngquè ma nǐmen zěnme yànzhèng jiéguǒ · Is the data accurate? How do you check your results?

little sister 每次测量以后，我们都会采集一些水，在实验室里再检验一次。
měi cì cèliáng yǐhòu wǒmen dōu huì cǎijí yìxiē shuǐ zài shíyànshì lǐ zài jiǎnyàn yí cì · After each measurement we collect some water and test it again in the lab.

little sister 我们的仪器还通过了专家鉴定，出错的概率很低。
wǒmen de yíqì hái tōngguò le zhuānjiā jiàndìng chū cuò de gàilǜ hěn dī · Our instruments have also passed an expert assessment, and the chance of errors is low.

dr zhou 摄像头会不会拍到游客，涉及别人的隐私？
shèxiàngtóu huì bu huì pāi dào yóukè shèjí biérén de yǐnsī · Could the camera film visitors and intrude on people's privacy?

little sister 不会，它只拍水面。系统会把图像合成一张地图，自动生成报告。
bú huì tā zhǐ pāi shuǐmiàn xìtǒng huì bǎ túxiàng héchéng yì zhāng dìtú zìdòng shēngchéng bàogào · No, it only films the water. The system combines the images into a map and produces a report by itself.

dr zhou 很好。至于以后，你们想让它做什么？
hěn hǎo zhìyú yǐhòu nǐmen xiǎng ràng tā zuò shénme · Very good. As for the future, what do you want it to do?

little sister 我们想借助人工智能，让它自己识别哪里的水有问题。
wǒmen xiǎng jièzhù réngōng zhìnéng ràng tā zìjǐ shíbié nǎlǐ de shuǐ yǒu wèntí · We want to use AI so it can work out by itself where the water has a problem.

dr zhou 这是个崭新的想法。除非多做实验，才能证明它真的有用。
zhè shì gè zhǎnxīn de xiǎngfǎ chúfēi duō zuò shíyàn cái néng zhèngmíng tā zhēn de yǒuyòng · That's a brand-new idea. Only more experiments will prove it really works.

dr zhou 下一阶段，可以把系统再优化一下，让监测更智能化，再和环保部门对接。
xià yì jiēduàn kěyǐ bǎ xìtǒng zài yōuhuà yíxià ràng jiāncè gèng zhìnéng huà zài hé huánbǎo bùmén duìjiē · Next, you could optimise the system, make the monitoring smarter, and link it up with the environment department.

chapter 5 and the winner is ...

anna 快看，你们拿了第一名！
kuài kàn nǐmen ná le dì yī míng · Look, you've come first!

little sister 真的吗？我简直不敢相信！
zhēn de ma wǒ jiǎnzhí bù gǎn xiāngxìn · Really? I can't believe it!

dr zhou 祝贺你们！学校还会帮你们申请专利。
zhùhè nǐmen xuéxiào hái huì bāng nǐmen shēnqǐng zhuānlì · Congratulations! The university will help you apply for a patent too.

dr zhou 各位同学，今年的作品从太空到新能源，每一个都是一次探索。
gèwèi tóngxué jīnnián de zuòpǐn cóng tàikōng dào xīnnéngyuán měi yí gè dōu shì yí cì tànsuǒ · Dear students, this year's projects, from outer space to new energy, are each a voyage of exploration.

dr zhou 有一组模拟了月球基地的生活，还有一组搜集了很多天文数据。
yǒu yì zǔ mónǐ le yuèqiú jīdì de shēnghuó hái yǒu yì zǔ sōují le hěn duō tiānwén shùjù · One team simulated life on a Moon base, and another gathered a lot of astronomy data.

dr zhou 过去我们靠煤、石油和天然气，可这些燃料总有一天会短缺。
guòqù wǒmen kào méi shíyóu hé tiānránqì kě zhèxiē ránliào zǒng yǒu yì tiān huì duǎnquē · In the past we relied on coal, oil and natural gas, but one day these fuels will run short.

dr zhou 而且消耗这些燃料会释放大量二氧化碳，破坏生态。
érqiě xiāohào zhèxiē ránliào huì shìfàng dàliàng èryǎnghuàtàn pòhuài shēngtài · And burning through them releases huge amounts of carbon dioxide and damages the ecosystem.

dr zhou 所以我们要用风力和太阳能发电，让电力来自可再生的能源。
suǒyǐ wǒmen yào yòng fēnglì hé tàiyángnéng fādiàn ràng diànlì láizì kě zàishēng de néngyuán · So we need wind and solar power to generate electricity, so that our power comes from renewable sources.

dr zhou 资源要循环使用，城市要多绿化，这需要新的突破，也需要你们。
zīyuán yào xúnhuán shǐyòng chéngshì yào duō lǜhuà zhè xūyào xīn de tūpò yě xūyào nǐmen · Resources should be recycled and cities need more green spaces: that takes new breakthroughs, and it takes you.

anna 我要把你们的故事写进我的科普文章，链接发到网上。
wǒ yào bǎ nǐmen de gùshi xiě jìn wǒ de kēpǔ wénzhāng liànjiē fā dào wǎngshang · I'm putting your story in my popular-science article and posting the link online.

little sister 那我的朋友们一点击就能看到了！
nà wǒ de péngyoumen yì diǎnjī jiù néng kàn dào le · Then my friends can see it with one click!

dr zhou 科学就是这样：不试不知道，一试才发现，自己也能改变世界。
kēxué jiùshì zhèyàng bú shì bù zhīdào yí shì cái fāxiàn zìjǐ yě néng gǎibiàn shìjiè · That's science: you never know until you try, and then you find you can change the world too.

Bugs, data, a polluted reservoir, judges and prizes: you just followed a whole science story in Chinese. Ready to tell yours?
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 69 the news

Talk about how news is made and shared: editors, drafts, channels, anchors and hot topics.

The news is where HSK 6 reading lives, and talking about what's trending is daily small talk in China.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
报刊	bàokān	newspapers and magazines	图书馆里有很多报刊，大家可以免费看。 The library has lots of newspapers and magazines you can read for free.
报社	bàoshè	newspaper office	她大学毕业以后，去了一家{=(measure word)}报社工作。 After university she went to work for a newspaper.
编辑	biānjí	to edit; editor	这篇文章还需要再编辑一下。 This article still needs another edit.
编写	biānxiě	to write, compile	这本教材是几位老师一起编写的。 This textbook was written by several teachers together.
稿件	gǎojiàn	manuscript, submission	编辑每天要看几十篇稿件。 Editors read dozens of submissions every day.
稿子	gǎozi	draft, script (of a talk)	明天开会要用的稿子，你写好了吗? Have you finished the script for tomorrow's meeting?
版	bǎn	edition; page (of a paper)	这条新闻上了报纸的第一版。 This story made the front page.
发行	fāxíng	to issue, release, publish	这部电影明年在全国发行。 The film will be released nationwide next year.
修订	xiūdìng	to revise (a text)	这本词典已经修订过{guo}好几次了。 This dictionary has been revised several times.
播	bō	to broadcast	这个节目每天晚上八点播。 This programme airs every evening at eight.
频道	píndào	channel (TV, online)	我换了好几个频道，都在播足球比赛。 I flicked through several channels: football on all of them.
主播	zhǔbō	news anchor; live streamer	她是新闻频道的主播。 She's an anchor on the news channel.
访谈	fǎngtán	interview, talk show	这个访谈节目请过{guo}很多有名的作家。 This talk show has had many famous writers as guests.
专题	zhuāntí	special topic, feature	报社这个月要做一个关于老年人生活的专题。 This month the paper is running a feature on the lives of older people.
评论	pínglùn	to comment; comment	这篇文章下面有上千条评论。 There are over a thousand comments under this article.

新媒体	xīnméitǐ	new media	现在很多年轻人通过新媒体看新闻。 Many young people now get their news from new media.
热点	rèdiǎn	hot topic, hot spot	房价一直是社会热点。 House prices are always a hot topic.
热度	rèdù	buzz, level of interest	这条新闻的热度没过几天就下去了。 The buzz around that story died down within days.
热门	rèmén	popular, in demand	计算机是现在最热门的专业之一。 Computer science is one of the most popular majors right now.
热议	rèyì	to be hotly debated	这个问题在网上引起了热议。 The question sparked a lively debate online.
焦点	jiāodiǎn	focus, centre of attention	她一进门，就成{=to become}了大家关注的焦点。 The moment she walked in, she was the centre of attention.
透露	tòulù	to reveal, let slip	他没有透露新产品的价格。 He didn't reveal the price of the new product.
露	lù	to show, reveal (lù)	听到这个消息，她脸上露{lu4-6}出了笑容。 When she heard the news, a smile appeared on her face.
启事	qǐshì	notice (in a paper, on a wall)	他在网上发了一个找狗的启事。 He posted a lost-dog notice online.
得知	dézhī	to learn of, find out	得知自己通过了考试，他高兴得跳{=to jump}了起来。 When he found out he'd passed, he jumped for joy.

pattern word-building prefixes, back again: 超—, 准—, 多—, 反—, 无—

超 / 准 / 多 / 反 / 无 | word | a new word

A few little prefixes build new words on the spot, a bit like English super-, multi-, anti-. 超 is "super, beyond"; 准 is "almost, soon-to-be" (准记者 a would-be reporter); 多 "multi-"; 反 "anti-, against"; 无 "without".

这条新闻热度超高，评论超过了十万条。 **zhè tiáo xīnwén rèdù chāo gāo pínglùn chāoguò le shí wàn tiáo** This story has massive buzz: over a hundred thousand comments.

妹妹现在是报社的准记者。 **mèimei xiànzài shì bàoshè de zhǔn jìzhě** Xiaoming's sister is now a reporter-in-training at the paper.

这次专题用了多媒体的方式，文字、图片、视频都有。 **zhè cì zhuāntí yòng le duōméitǐ de fāngshì wénzì túpiàn shìpín dōu yǒu** The feature is multimedia: text, pictures and video.

网上有无数条评论，有支持的，也有反对的。 **wǎngshang yǒu wúshù tiáo pínglùn yǒu zhīchí de yě yǒu fǎnduì de** There are countless comments online, some for and some against.

dialogue the intern

anna 听说你在报社实习了？感觉怎么样？
tīngshuō nǐ zài bàoshè shíxí le gǎnjué zěnmeyàng · I hear you're interning at a newspaper. How is it?

little sister 挺好的！编辑让我先改稿子，每天要看几十篇稿件。
tǐng hǎo de biānjí ràng wǒ xiān gǎi gǎozi měi tiān yào kàn jǐ shí piān gǎojiàn · Great! The editor has me fixing drafts first: dozens of submissions a day.

anna 那你们最近在关注什么热点？
nà nǐmen zuìjìn zài guānzhù shénme rèdiǎn · So what hot topics are you following?

little sister 我们在做一个专题，讲年轻人怎么看新闻。现在大家都通过新媒体看。
wǒmen zài zuò yí gè zhuāntí jiǎng niánqīng rén zěnme kàn xīnwén xiànzài dàjiā dōu tōngguò xīnméitǐ kàn · We're doing a feature on how young people get their news. Everyone uses new media now.

anna 我也是，很少看报刊，也不看电视频道，就看几个主播的视频。
wǒ yě shì hěn shǎo kàn bàokān yě bú kàn diànshì píndào jiù kàn jǐ gè zhǔbō de shìpín · Same here: I hardly read papers or watch TV channels, just a few streamers' videos.

little sister 所以报社也在变。下个月发行新版，还要在网上播访谈节目。
suǒyǐ bàoshè yě zài biàn xià gè yuè fāxíng xīn bǎn hái yào zài wǎngshang bō fǎngtán jiémù · That's why the paper is changing. Next month there's a new edition, and talk shows streamed online.

anna 能不能透露一下，第一个访谈请的是谁？
néng bu néng tòulù yíxià dì yī gè fǎngtán qǐng de shì shéi · Can you let slip who the first guest is?

little sister 还不能说。不过我得知他是个很热门的作家，最近成了大家热议的焦点。
hái bù néng shuō búguò wǒ dézhī tā shì gè hěn rèmén de zuòjiā zuìjìn chéng le dàjiā rèyì de jiāodiǎn · Not yet. But I hear he's a really popular writer, at the centre of a lot of debate lately.

anna 哇，那第一期的评论一定超多！
wā nà dì yī qī de pínglùn yídìng chāo duō · Wow, the first episode is going to get loads of comments!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

刊
kān
publication, periodical

编
biān
to make up; compile; weave

good to know · 稿子 is the everyday word for your draft or script; 稿件 is the formal word an editor uses for submissions. 热 builds lots of news words: 热点 hot topic, 热度 buzz, 热门 popular, 热议 hot debate. On Weibo, the trending list is 热搜. In the news, 或 is an adverb, "perhaps, may": 或将推迟 "may be postponed". In speech say 可能 or 也许; 或 "or" (A或B) you already know.

You can now follow how a story is made, from **稿子** to **第一版**, and chat about what's **热门** today.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 70 trends

Describe trends in society: what's in, what's out, who moves where and how people fit in.

Trends and moving between cities are favourite topics in Chinese news, essays and dinner talk.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
当代	dāngdài	contemporary	他研究的是中国当代文学。 He studies contemporary Chinese literature.
当今	dāngjīn	nowadays, today	当今社会，手机已经成{=to become}了生活的一部分。 In today's world, phones have become part of life.
潮流	cháoliú	trend, tide	她穿衣服从来不跟潮流。 She never follows trends in what she wears.
过时	guòshí	out of date	这种手机早就过时了。 This kind of phone went out of date ages ago.
酷	kù	cool	你这件外套真酷！ That jacket is so cool!
圈	quān	circle; to circle	她在朋友圈里发了几张旅行的照片。 She posted some travel photos on WeChat Moments.
主流	zhǔliú	mainstream	网上购物已经成{=to become}了主流。 Shopping online is now the mainstream.
多元	duōyuán	diverse, pluralistic	这座城市的文化非常多元。 This city's culture is very diverse.
新兴	xīnxīng	emerging, newly rising	人工智能是一个新兴的行业。 AI is an emerging industry.
兴起	xīngqǐ	to rise, spring up	这几年，网上兴起了一种新的购物方式。 In recent years a new way of shopping has sprung up online.
涌现	yǒngxiàn	to emerge in large numbers	这几年涌现出了一大批年轻作家。 A whole wave of young writers has appeared in recent years.
落后	luòhòu	backward; to fall behind	这个地区经济比较落后，交通也不方便。 The region is less developed, and getting around is hard.
流动	liúdòng	to flow; mobile	每年过年前后，人口流动特别大。 Around every Chinese New Year, huge numbers of people are on the move.
移民	yímín	to emigrate; immigrant	他们一家十年前就移民|国外{==abroad}了。 His family moved abroad ten years ago.
外来	wàilái	from outside, foreign	“沙发”是一个外来词。 “Shafa” (sofa) is a loanword.
本土	běntǔ	local, home-grown	这家{=(measure word)}咖啡店是本土品牌，不是外国的。 This café is a local brand, not a foreign one.

融入	róngrù	to blend into, fit in	来北京两年，她已经完全融入了这里的生活。 Two years in Beijing, and she's completely at home in the life here.
地方	dìfāng	local (vs central)	这件事由地方{di4fang1}政府负责。 This is the local government's responsibility.
州	zhōu	state, prefecture	美国有五十个州。 The USA has fifty states.
密集	mìjí	dense, crowded	这一带人口密集，房子也很贵。 This area is densely populated, and housing is expensive.
聚集	jùjí	to gather, assemble	广场上聚集了很多看表演的人。 A big crowd gathered in the square to watch the show.
群众	qúnzhòng	the public, the people	这个活动受到了群众的欢迎。 The event was a hit with the public.
民众	mínzhòng	the public, citizens	政府在网上听取民众的意见。 The government collects public opinion online.
公众	gōngzhòng	the public	这座博物馆周一不对公众开放。 The museum isn't open to the public on Mondays.
外界	wàijiè	the outside world	公司还没有向外界公布这个消息。 The company hasn't announced the news yet.

pattern 放着x不y: leaving a good thing unused

放着 | X (a good thing) | 不 | Y (use it)

放着X不Y means X is right there and you don't use it. It carries surprise or a little criticism, and often comes with a "but instead …" part. Think "you've got a perfectly good X and you won't Y it?".

她放着大公司的工作不做，回老家开了一家小店。 **tā fàng zhe dà gōngsī de gōngzuò bú zuò huí lǎojiā kāi le yì jiā xiǎo diàn** She gave up a job at a big company to open a little shop back home.

你放着这么好的机会不要，太可惜了！ **nǐ fàng zhe zhème hǎo de jīhuì bú yào tài kěxī le** You're turning down a chance like this? What a waste!

很多群众不理解，为什么放着旧图书馆不用，又要建新的。 **hěn duō qúnzhòng bù lǐjiě wèi shénme fàng zhe jiù túshūguǎn bú yòng yòu yào jiàn xīn de** Many residents don't see why the old library sits empty while a new one is built.

dialogue back home with a café

xiaoming 我大学同学放着大城市的好工作不做，回老家开咖啡店了。
wǒ dàxué tóngxué fàng zhe dà chéngshì de hǎo gōngzuò bú zuò huí lǎojiā kāi kāfēi diàn le · A university friend of mine quit a great big-city job to open a café back home.

anna 真酷！这好像是一种新的潮流。
zhēn kù zhè hǎoxiàng shì yì zhǒng xīn de cháoliú · So cool! That seems to be a new trend.

xiaoming 是啊。以前大家都往人口密集的大城市跑，现在不少人回到了小城市。
shì a yǐqián dàjiā dōu wǎng rénkǒu mìjí de dà chéngshì pǎo xiànzài bù shǎo rén huí dào le xiǎo chéngshì · Yes. People used to flock to crowded big cities; now quite a few are going back to smaller ones.

anna 他的店卖外来的咖啡，还是本土的？
tā de diàn mài wàilái de kāfēi háishi běntǔ de · Does his place sell foreign coffee, or local?

xiaoming 本土的，用的是国内的咖啡。他说除非做出自己的特色，否则很快就会过时。
běntǔ de yòng de shì guó nèi de kāfēi tā shuō chúfēi zuò chū zìjǐ de tèsè fǒuzé hěn kuài jiù huì guòshí · Local: coffee grown in China. He says unless you have your own style, you'll soon be out of date.

anna 有道理。当今的年轻人不太跟主流，喜欢多元的东西。
yǒu dàolǐ dāngjīn de niánqīng rén bú tài gēn zhǔliú xǐhuan duōyuán de dōngxi · Makes sense. Young people today don't just follow the mainstream; they like variety.

xiaoming 他的店在朋友圈里很火，周末门口聚集了很多人，连外界的媒体都来报道了。
tā de diàn zài péngyou quān lǐ hěn huǒ zhōumò ménkǒu jùjí le hěn duō rén lián wàijiè de méitǐ dōu lái bàodào le · His café is a hit on WeChat Moments: crowds at the door at weekends, and even outside media came to report on it.

anna 我在美国读书的时候，有个州也是这样，小店一家一家地涌现出来。
wǒ zài Měiguó dúshū de shíhou yǒu gè zhōu yě shì zhèyàng xiǎo diàn yì jiā yì jiā de yǒngxiàn chulai · When I studied in the US, one state was just like that: little shops popping up one after another.

xiaoming 地方政府也很支持。下次我们一起去尝尝吧！
dìfāng zhèngfǔ yě hěn zhīchí xià cì wǒmen yìqǐ qù cháng chang ba · The local government is supportive too. Let's go and try it sometime!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

圈
quān
circle; to circle

州
zhōu
state, prefecture

good to know · 群众, 民众 and 公众 all mean "the public". 群众 is common in official and news language, 民众 is "the people" in general, 公众 is the public as an audience: 对公众开放. 地方 read dìfang is "a place"; read dìfāng, as in 地方政府, it means "local" as opposed to central.

You can now talk about what's **主流**, what's **过时** and who's moving where, and gently tease a friend with **放着……不……**.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 71 doing good

Talk about charity and volunteering: donating, helping, and the people and groups who do it.

Volunteering and charity days are common at Chinese companies and universities, and a classic HSK essay topic.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
公益	gōngyì	public good, charity	她经常参加公益活动，比如给山区的孩子送书。 She often does charity work, like taking books to children in the mountains.
捐款	juānkuǎn	to donate money; donation	全公司一共捐款五万元。 The whole company donated fifty thousand yuan.
捐赠	juānzèng	to donate (things)	这家{=(measure word)}公司向学校捐赠了一百台电脑。 The company donated a hundred computers to the school.
救助	jiùzhù	to help, rescue	这个小组专门救助没有家的小动物。 This group rescues homeless animals.
互助	hùzhù	mutual help	小区里的老人成立了一个互助小组。 The older residents set up a mutual-help group.
奉献	fèngxiàn	to devote, give	王老师把一生都奉献给了教育。 Teacher Wang has given her whole life to teaching.
自愿	zìyuàn	voluntary; of one's own will	参加这个活动完全是自愿的。 Taking part is completely voluntary.
协会	xiéhuì	association, society	他是我们市摄影协会的会员。 He's a member of our city's photography association.
团体	tuántǐ	group, organisation	博物馆对团体游客有优惠。 The museum gives discounts to groups.
社	shè	club, society; agency	妹妹在大学里参加了一个摄影社。 Xiaoming's sister joined a photography club at university.
团结	tuánjié	to unite; united	只要大家团结起来，什么困难都不怕。 As long as we stick together, no problem can scare us.
和谐	héxié	harmonious	他们一家人相处得很和谐。 The family gets along very harmoniously.
贫困	pínkùn	poor, poverty-stricken	这笔钱会用来帮助贫困家庭的孩子上学。 The money will help children from poor families go to school.
残疾	cánjí	disability	新公园对残疾人来说很方便。 The new park is very accessible for people with disabilities.
盲人	mángrén	blind person	这家{=(measure word)}书店有专门为盲人准备的书。 This bookshop has books made especially for blind readers.

保障	bǎozhàng	to guarantee; safeguard	新的规定保障了老人的权利。 The new rules protect older people's rights.
发放	fāfàng	to hand out, distribute	工作人员在门口给大家发放免费的水。 Staff at the door were handing out free water.
号召	hàozhào	to call on, appeal	学校号召大家节约用水。 The school is calling on everyone to save water.
口号	kǒuhào	slogan	这个活动的口号是“少开一天车”。 The campaign slogan is “one day less in the car”.
人士	rénshì	people (of a field), figures	会{hui4-3}上|来了很多教育方面的专业人士。 Many education professionals came to the meeting.
称号	chēnghào	title (of honour)	她获得了“优秀教师”的称号。 She was given the title “outstanding teacher”.
公认	gōngrèn	generally recognised	李医生是大家公认的好医生。 Everyone agrees Dr Li is a good doctor.
和平	hépíng	peace	希望世界永远和平。 May the world always be at peace.
平等	píngděng	equal	在法律面前，人人平等。 Everyone is equal before the law.

pattern 除……外: apart from, except

除 | X | (以) 外, | 都 / 还 / 也 ...

除……外 is the written form of 除了……以外. With 都 it means “except X” (X is left out); with 还 or 也 it means “apart from X, also ...” (X is included).

除周一外，博物馆每天都开放。 **chú zhōu yī wài bówùguǎn měi tiān dōu kāifàng** The museum is open every day except Monday.

除他以外，大家都同意了。 **chú tā yǐwài dàjiā dōu tóngyì le** Everyone agreed except him.

除捐款外，你还可以捐赠旧衣服和书。 **chú juānkuǎn wài nǐ hái kěyǐ juānzèng jiù yīfu hé shū** Apart from money, you can also donate old clothes and books.

dialogue charity day

ms zhang 今天是我们公司的公益日。除了捐款以外，大家还可以报名做志愿者。
jīntiān shì wǒmen gōngsī de gōngyì rì chúle juānkuǎn yǐwài dàjiā hái kěyǐ bàomíng zuò zhìyuànzhě · Today is our company's charity day. Apart from donating, you can sign up to volunteer.

anna 我报名！这是自愿的吧?
wǒ bàomíng zhè shì zìyuàn de ba · Sign me up! It's voluntary, right?

ms zhang 当然。我们和一个盲人协会合作，给他们捐赠能听的书。
dāngrán wǒmen hé yí gè mángrén xiéhuì hézuò gěi tāmen juānzèng néng tīng de shū · Of course. We're working with an association for blind people, donating audiobooks.

xiaoming 我也想去，可是下午要加班……算了，加班的事明天再说！
wǒ yě xiǎng qù kěshì xiàwǔ yào jiābān suànle jiābān de shì míngtiān zàishuō · I want to come too, but I'm on overtime this afternoon... Oh, forget it, overtime can wait till tomorrow!

ms zhang 楼下还有一个救助小动物的团体，在给大家发放小礼物。
lóu xià hái yǒu yí gè jiùzhù xiǎo dòngwù de tuántǐ zài gěi dàjiā fāfàng xiǎo lǐwù · Downstairs there's an animal-rescue group handing out little gifts.

anna 他们的口号是什么?
tāmen de kǒuhào shì shénme · What's their slogan?

ms zhang “帮助别人，也是帮助自己。”除钱外，他们最需要的是时间。
bāngzhù biérén yě shì bāngzhù zìjǐ chú qián wài tāmen zuì xūyào de shì shíjiān · “Helping others is helping yourself.” Besides money, what they need most is time.

xiaoming 妈妈，大家公认您是公司里“最热心的人”，这个称号真没错。
māma dàjiā gōngrèn nín shì gōngsī lǐ zuì rèxīn de rén zhège chēnghào zhēn méi cuò · Mum, everyone agrees you're “the kindest person in the company”. That title fits.

ms zhang 别这么说。一个人的力量很小，大家团结起来才行。
bié zhème shuō yí gè rén de lìliàng hěn xiǎo dàjiā tuánjié qǐlai cái xíng · Don't say that. One person can't do much; it takes all of us together.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

奉
fèng
to offer respectfully

贫
pín
poor

盲
máng
blind

good to know · 捐款 is giving money; 捐赠 is more formal and covers things too: 捐赠电脑, 捐赠书. 残疾人 is the standard term for people with disabilities in mainland China; 残障人士 is a gentler word you will also hear.

You can now sign up, donate and thank people properly in Chinese, and say 算了 when the overtime can wait.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 72 laws and rules

Talk about laws and rules: what's allowed, what's banned, fines, fairness and keeping order.

Rules, fines and fairness come up everywhere, from parking signs to contracts and the news.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
法规	fǎguī	laws and regulations	开车的人必须遵守交通法规。 Drivers must follow the traffic laws.
法定	fǎdìng	legal, statutory	新年第一天是法定假日，大家都放假。 New Year's Day is a public holiday, so everyone has the day off.
法官	fǎguān	judge	法官认真听了双方的意见。 The judge listened carefully to both sides.
规范	guīfàn	standard; to standardise	这份报告写得不太规范。 This report isn't quite up to standard.
许可	xǔkě	to permit; permission	没有许可，不能在这里拍照。 You can't take photos here without permission.
严禁	yánjìn	to strictly forbid	加油站严禁吸烟。 Smoking is strictly forbidden at petrol stations.
违规	wéiguī	to break the rules	他因为违规停车被罚了两百块。 He was fined two hundred yuan for illegal parking.
犯	fàn	to commit, violate	谁都会犯错，改了就好。 Everyone makes mistakes; just put them right.
罪	zuì	crime; guilt; suffering	这么热的天排队三个小时，真是{==受罪==}。 Queuing three hours in this heat is torture.
惩罚	chéngfá	to punish; punishment	孩子犯了错，惩罚不一定是最好的办法。 When children misbehave, punishment isn't always the best answer.
处罚	chǔfá	to penalise, fine	违反规定的人会受到处罚。 Anyone who breaks the rules will be penalised.
警告	jǐnggào	to warn; warning	医生警告他不要再抽烟了。 The doctor warned him to stop smoking.
纠纷	jiūfēn	dispute	他们为了房子的事发生了纠纷。 They got into a dispute over the flat.
追究	zhuījiū	to look into; hold responsible	公司一定会追究这次事故的责任。 The company will find out who is responsible for the accident.
公正	gōngzhèng	just, fair	大家都觉得这次比赛的结果很公正。 Everyone felt the result of the match was fair.
正义	zhèngyì	justice; just	这部电影讲的是一个关于正义的故事。 The film is a story about justice.
道德	dàodé	morality, ethics	法律和道德都在约束我们的行为。 Both law and morality keep our behaviour in check.

约束	yuēshù	to restrain; constraint	没有规则的约束，比赛就会乱成{=into}一团。 Without rules to hold it together, a match turns into chaos.
履行	lǚxíng	to fulfil, carry out	双方都应该履行合同。 Both sides should honour the contract.
维护	wéihù	to maintain, protect	警察在现场维护秩序。 Police were at the scene keeping order.
秩序	zhìxù	order (orderly state)	请大家排队，遵守秩序。 Please queue and keep things orderly.
治理	zhìlǐ	to tackle; govern	这几年，城市的空气污染得到了很好的治理。 In recent years the city's air pollution has been tackled well.
监督	jiāndū	to supervise, oversee	欢迎大家对我们的服务进行监督。 We welcome everyone to keep an eye on our service.
公安	gōngān	public security, police	她爸爸在公安部门工作。 Her dad works for the police.

pattern 到……为止: up to, until

到 | a point in time / a place | 为止

到……为止 marks where something stops: up to now, until the end. 到目前为止 (so far) is one of the most useful phrases in news and reports.

到今天为止，报名的人已经超过一百个了。 **dào jīntiān wéizhǐ bàomíng de rén yǐjīng chāoguò yìbǎi gè le** As of today, over a hundred people have signed up.

到目前为止，一切都很正常。 **dào mùqián wéizhǐ yíqiè dōu hěn zhèngcháng** So far, everything is normal.

我们就讨论到这里为止吧。 **wǒmen jiù tǎolùn dào zhèlǐ wéizhǐ ba** Let's stop the discussion here.

志愿者会在门口维护秩序，一直到活动结束为止。 **zhìyuànzhě huì zài ménkǒu wéihù zhìxù yìzhí dào huódòng jiéshù wéizhǐ** Volunteers will keep order at the door until the event ends.

dialogue the parking fine

xiaoming 气死我了！我在楼下停了五分钟车，就被罚了两百块。
qì sǐ wǒ le wǒ zài lóu xià tíng le wǔ fēnzhōng chē jiù bèi fá le liǎngbǎi kuài · I'm furious! I parked downstairs for five minutes and got a two-hundred-yuan fine.

anna 那里不是严禁停车吗？牌子上写得很清楚。
nàlǐ bú shì yánjìn tíngchē ma páizi shàng xiě de hěn qīngchu · Isn't parking strictly banned there? The sign is perfectly clear.

xiaoming 我知道是违规，可是只有五分钟啊！
wǒ zhīdào shì wéiguī kěshì zhǐyǒu wǔ fēnzhōng a · I know it's against the rules, but it was only five minutes!

anna 得了吧！到目前为止，你这个月已经是第二次了。
déle ba dào mùqián wéizhǐ nǐ zhège yuè yǐjīng shì dì èr cì le · Oh, come off it! That's your second time this month so far.

xiaoming 好吧，我认罚。不过有的司机天天违规，也没人监督。
hǎo ba wǒ rèn fá búguò yǒude sījī tiān tiān wéiguī yě méi rén jiāndū · Fine, I'll pay. But some drivers break the rules every day and nobody checks.

anna 现在到处都有摄像头，交通秩序比以前好多了。
xiànzài dàochù dōu yǒu shèxiàngtóu jiāotōng zhìxù bǐ yǐqián hǎo duō le · There are cameras everywhere now; traffic is far more orderly than before.

xiaoming 也对。没有法规的约束，路上肯定更乱。
yě duì méiyǒu fǎguī de yuēshù lùshang kěndìng gèng luàn · True. Without rules to rein people in, the roads would be chaos.

anna 处罚不是为了惩罚你，是为了让大家停车更规范。
chǔfá bú shì wèile chéngfá nǐ shì wèile ràng dàjiā tíngchē gèng guīfàn · The fine isn't there to punish you; it's to get everyone parking properly.

xiaoming 好好好，下次我走路过去，又健康又不犯法。
hǎo hǎo hǎo xià cì wǒ zǒulù guoqu yòu jiànkāng yòu bú fàn fǎ · All right, all right. Next time I'll walk: healthier, and legal.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

官
guān
official, officer

犯
fàn
to commit, violate

德
dé
virtue

good to know · 得了 (déle) is “OK, that’s enough”; 得了吧 is “oh, come off it!”. Don’t mix it up with 得了 (dé le), “got (an illness)”: 他得了感冒. 惩罚 is punishment in general, even by parents; 处罚 is an official penalty: a fine, a warning, a ban. In notices and rules, 时 counts the hour, often on the 24-hour clock: 9时至21时. Out loud, people say 早上九点到晚上九点.

You can now read a notice, argue about a fine and say 到目前为止 like a reporter.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 73 crime and safety

Talk about scams, theft and safety, and say indignantly that trouble has come knocking at your door: X到Y头上来了.

Phone scams are a real worry in China, and every family has a story. Knowing these words keeps you and others safe.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
偷	tōu	to steal; secretly	我的自行车昨天被偷了。 My bike was stolen yesterday.
小偷儿	xiǎotōur	thief, pickpocket	地铁上人多，要小心小偷儿。 The metro is crowded, so watch out for pickpockets.
骗子	piànzi	swindler, con artist	那个说自己是银行工作人员的人，其实是个骗子。 The man who claimed to work for the bank was actually a con artist.
欺骗	qīpiàn	to deceive	他觉得自己被朋友欺骗了，非常难过。 He felt his friend had lied to him, and was really upset.
上当	shàngdàng	to be taken in, fall for it	这种广告太假{jia3}了，你可别上当。 Ads like this are so fake: don't fall for them.
暴力	bàolì	violence	这个游戏有太多暴力内容，不适合小孩子。 This game has too much violence for young children.
打击	dǎjī	to crack down on; blow	这次失败对他是很大的打击。 This failure was a real blow to him.
线索	xiànsuǒ	clue, lead	警察找到了一条重要的线索。 The police found an important lead.
真相	zhēnxiàng	the truth, the real story	事情的真相终于清楚了。 The truth finally came out.
暴露	bàolù	to expose, reveal	不要在网上暴露自己的家庭住址。 Don't give away your home address online.
牢	láo	firm, fast; prison	这几个字你一定要牢牢记住。 Make sure you remember these characters well.
冲突	chōngtū	conflict; to clash	这两个会{hui4-3}的时间冲突了，我只能去一个。 The two meetings clash, so I can only go to one.
冲击	chōngjī	impact; to hit hard	网上购物对传统商店造成了很大的冲击。 Online shopping has hit traditional shops hard.
混乱	hùnluàn	chaotic	停电以后，地铁站里一片混乱。 After the power cut, the metro station was in chaos.
未成年人	wèichéngniánrén	minor, under-18	商店不能卖烟给未成年人。 Shops may not sell cigarettes to minors.

自杀	zìshā	suicide	如果有人有自杀的想法，请马上帮他联系医生或者心理热线。 If someone is thinking about suicide, help them contact a doctor or a support line straight away.
局	jú	bureau, office	我去公安局办了新的身份证。 I went to the police bureau for a new ID card.
公开	gōngkāi	public; to make public	公司公开了这次事故的调查结果。 The company published the results of the accident inquiry.
公告	gōnggào	public notice, announcement	楼下贴了一张停水的公告。 There's a notice downstairs about the water being cut off.
官方	guānfāng	official (source, side)	请以官方网站的消息为{wei2}准{=(the) standard}。 Please treat the official website as the final word.
官员	guānyuán	official (person)	几位政府官员参观了这家{=(measure word)}工厂。 Several government officials visited the factory.
权力	quánlì	power, authority	经理有权力决定谁去参加培训。 The manager has the power to decide who goes on the training.
机制	jīzhì	mechanism, system	公司建立了新的奖励机制。 The company set up a new reward system.
体系	tǐxì	system	这个国家的教育体系和中国很不一样。 This country's education system is very different from China's.
只顾	zhǐgù	be absorbed only in	他只顾看手机，坐过了站。 He was so glued to his phone he missed his stop.

pattern x到y头上来了: they've come after even me!

verb + 到 + Y + 头上来了

X到Y头上来了 says something bad has reached as far as Y, someone you'd think was safe or off limits. It sounds indignant, surprised or half-joking: "now they're even scamming ME!".

骗子都骗到我头上来了！ **piànzi dōu piàn dào wǒ tóu shàng lái le** Now the scammers are even after me!

你怎么管到我头上来了？ **nǐ zěnme guǎn dào wǒ tóu shàng lái le** Since when do you get to boss me around?

他开了家新店，抢生意抢到老朋友头上来了。 **tā kāi le jiā xīn diàn qiǎng shēngyi qiǎng dào lǎo péngyou tóu shàng lái le** He's opened a new shop, and now he's even poaching customers from his old friends.

dialogue the strange phone call

ms zhang 小明，刚才有人打电话，说他是公安局的，说我的银行卡出了问题。
Xiǎomíng gāngcái yǒu rén dǎ diànhuà shuō tā shì gōngān jú de shuō wǒ de yínhángkǎ chū le wèntí · Xiaoming, someone just called saying he was from the police bureau, and that something was wrong with my bank card.

xiaoming 妈妈，您没告诉他密码吧？
māma nín méi gàosu tā mìmǎ ba · Mum, you didn't tell him your PIN, did you?

ms zhang 没有。他说得特别真，还知道我的名字。不料最后他让我把钱转到一个“安全账户”。
méiyǒu tā shuō de tèbié zhēn hái zhīdào wǒ de míngzi búliào zuìhòu tā ràng wǒ bǎ qián zhuǎn dào yí gè ānquán zhànghù · No. He sounded so real, he even knew my name. Then, out of nowhere, he asked me to move my money to a “safe account”.

xiaoming 那就是骗子！真正的警察不会让您转钱的。
nà jiùshì piànzi zhēnzhèng de jǐngchá bú huì ràng nín zhuǎn qián de · That's a scammer! Real police never ask you to transfer money.

ms zhang 我也是这么想的。我上网一查，官方早就发了公告，说最近有人这样欺骗老人。
wǒ yě shì zhème xiǎng de wǒ shàngwǎng yì chá guānfāng zǎo jiù fā le gōnggào shuō zuìjìn yǒu rén zhèyàng qīpiàn lǎorén · That's what I thought. I checked online: there's an official notice warning that people are tricking older people like this.

xiaoming 现在骗子都骗到您头上来了！您的信息可能已经暴露了。
xiànzài piànzi dōu piàn dào nín tóu shàng lái le nín de xìnxī kěnéng yǐjīng bàolù le · So now the scammers are coming after you! Your details may have leaked.

ms zhang 我差点儿就上当了。以后接电话我得多注意。
wǒ chàdiǎnr jiù shàngdàng le yǐhòu jiē diànhuà wǒ děi duō zhùyì · I nearly fell for it. I'll be more careful with calls from now on.

xiaoming 我们一起去局里说一下吧，给警察提供一条线索。
wǒmen yìqǐ qù jú lǐ shuō yíxià ba gěi jǐngchá tígōng yì tiáo xiànsuǒ · Let's go to the police bureau together and give them a lead.

ms zhang 好。希望他们好好打击这些人，早一点把他们关进大牢。
hǎo xīwàng tāmen hǎohǎo dǎjī zhèxiē rén zǎo yìdiǎn bǎ tāmen guān jìn dà láo · Yes. I hope they crack down hard and lock these people up soon.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

牢
láo
firm, fast; prison

杀
shā
to kill

good to know · Real police and banks in China never ask you to move money to a “safe account” (安全账户). If you get that call, hang up and call 110 yourself. 局 is a bureau in a city: 公安局 police, 教育局 education, 邮局 post office. 局里 is how people say “at the bureau”.

You can now spot a scam, warn a friend and say with feeling: 骗子都骗到我头上来了!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 74 our country and the world

Follow news about countries and the world: policies, citizens, flags and anthems, diplomats and international events.

These are the words of every evening news bulletin, and of the HSK 6 reading section.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
政策	zhèngcè	policy	新政策鼓励年轻人回家乡工作。 The new policy encourages young people to work in their home towns.
推行	tuīxíng	to carry out, introduce	这座城市正在推行垃圾分类。 The city is introducing rubbish sorting.
健全	jiànquán	sound, complete; to perfect	公司需要一套健全的管理制度。 The company needs a sound management system.
制	zhì	system; to make, set up	我们公司实行弹性工作制。 Our company has flexible working hours.
中央	zhōngyāng	centre; central	房间中央放着一张大桌子。 A big table stands in the middle of the room.
总理	zǒnglǐ	premier, prime minister	新闻里说，总理今天会见了几位外国客人。 The news said the premier met several foreign guests today.
公民	gōngmín	citizen	每个公民都有受教育的权利。 Every citizen has the right to education.
投票	tóupiào	to vote	大家投票选出了新的负责人。 Everyone voted to choose a new person in charge.
当选	dāngxuǎn	to be elected	她当选为{wei2}公司今年的优秀员工。 She was elected the company's outstanding employee this year.
民主	mínzhǔ	democracy; democratic	这件事我们民主一点儿，大家投票决定吧。 Let's be democratic about this and put it to a vote.
公	gōng	public; male (animal)	大白是公的，今年六岁了。 Dabai is a boy, and he's six this year.
国情	guóqíng	a country's conditions	每个国家的国情不同，不能简单比较。 Every country's situation is different, so simple comparisons don't work.
国旗	guóqí	national flag	运动员拿了第一，国旗慢慢升了起来。 The athlete came first, and the flag slowly rose.
国歌	guógē	national anthem	比赛开始前，全场一起唱国歌。 Before the match, the whole stadium sang the anthem.
祖国	zǔguó	motherland, homeland	在|国外{==abroad}住了很多年，他|还是{==still}很想念祖国。 After many years abroad, he still misses his homeland.

外交	wàijiāo	diplomacy, foreign affairs	她大学学的是外交，现在在|大使馆{==embassy}工作。 She studied diplomacy and now works at an embassy.
大使	dàshǐ	ambassador	新来的大使能说一口流利的中文。 The new ambassador speaks fluent Chinese.
会见	huìjiàn	to meet (formally)	校长在办公室会见了几位学生家长。 The head met several parents in her office.
联合国	Liánhéguó	the United Nations	联合国成立于一九四五年。 The United Nations was founded in 1945.
两岸	liǎngàn	both banks (of a river)	晚上，江两岸的灯都亮了，非常漂亮。 At night the lights come on along both banks of the river: beautiful.
海内外	hǎinèiwài	at home and abroad	这次比赛吸引了海内外很多选手。 The contest drew competitors from home and abroad.
往来	wǎnglái	contact; to come and go	毕业以后，我们一直还有往来。 We've stayed in touch since we graduated.
主办	zhǔbàn	to host, organise	这次展览由我们学校主办。 Our school is hosting this exhibition.
局面	júmiàn	situation, state of affairs	新经理来了以后，公司的局面慢慢好了起来。 After the new manager arrived, things at the company slowly improved.

pattern 不x不知道，一x……: you don't know until you try

不 | X | 不知道，一 | X | 吓一跳 / 才发现……

不X不知道，一X吓一跳 is a famous set phrase: "you wouldn't know without X-ing; X once and you get a shock". Swap in any verb (看, 听, 比, 学, 问), and finish with 吓一跳 or 才发现……

不看不知道，一看吓一跳。 **bú kàn bù zhīdào yí kàn xiàyítiào** You don't know till you look, and then it's a shock.

不比不知道，一比才发现，每个国家的国情真不一样。 **bù bǐ bù zhīdào yì bǐ cái fāxiàn měi gè guójiā de guóqíng zhēn bù yíyàng** Compare them and you see how different every country's situation is.

不学不知道，一学才发现，外交工作这么难。 **bù xué bù zhīdào yì xué cái fāxiàn wàijiāo gōngzuò zhème nán** I only realised how hard diplomacy is once I studied it.

不问不知道，一问才知道，邻居家的猫原来是公的。 **bú wèn bù zhīdào yí wèn cái zhīdào línjū jiā de māo yuánlái shì gōng de** I only found out when I asked: the neighbours' cat is a boy!

dialogue the culture festival

anna 国庆节放假你去哪儿了?
guóqìng jié fàngjià nǐ qù nǎr le · Where did you go over the National Day holiday?

little sister 哪儿也没去。学校主办了一个国际文化节，我去帮忙了。
nǎr yě méi qù xuéxiào zhǔbàn le yí gè guójì wénhuà jié wǒ qù bāngmáng le · Nowhere. The university hosted an international culture festival, and I helped out.

anna 国际文化节？都有什么活动?
guójì wénhuà jié dōu yǒu shénme huódòng · A culture festival? What was on?

little sister 二十几个国家的大使都来了，校长会见了他们。联合国的工作人员还做了讲座。
èrshí jǐ gè guójiā de dàshǐ dōu lái le xiàozhǎng huìjiàn le tāmen Liánhéguó de gōngzuò rényuán hái zuò le jiǎngzuò · Ambassadors from over twenty countries came, and the president met them. Some UN staff gave a talk too.

anna 不听不知道，一听吓一跳，规模这么大!
bù tīng bù zhīdào yì tīng xiàyítiào guīmó zhème dà · I had no idea it was that big!

little sister 是啊，海内外来了好几千人。广场中央挂满了各国的国旗，开幕式上还唱了国歌。
shì a hǎi nèiwài lái le hǎo jǐ qiān rén guǎngchǎng zhōngyāng guà mǎn le gè guó de guóqí kāimùshì shàng hái chàng le guógē · Yes, thousands of people came, from China and abroad. The middle of the square was full of flags, and the anthem was sung at the opening.

anna 英国大使也去了吗?
Yīngguó dàshǐ yě qù le ma · Did the British ambassador go?

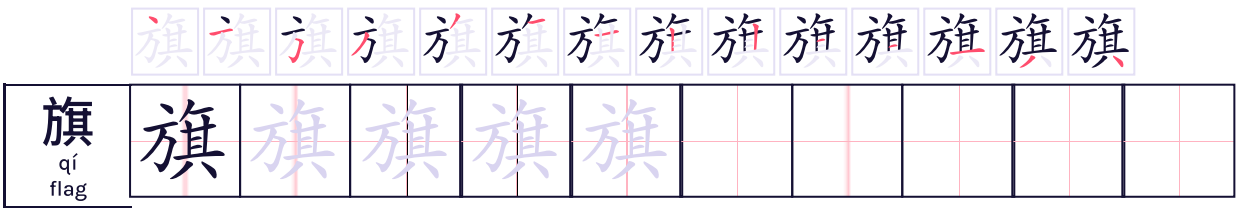
little sister 去了！他说英国和中国在教育上的往来越来越多。
qù le tā shuō Yīngguó hé Zhōngguó zài jiàoyù shàng de wǎnglái yuè lái yuè duō · He did! He said Britain and China have more and more exchanges in education.

anna 你可以写一篇关于外交的稿子了！
nǐ kěyǐ xiě yì piān guānyú wàijiāo de gǎozi le · You could write a piece on diplomacy!

little sister 我已经在写了。不管走到哪儿，大家都想念自己的祖国，这一点我特别想写。
wǒ yǐjīng zài xiě le bùguǎn zǒu dào nǎr dàjiā dōu xiǎngniàn zìjǐ de zǔguó zhè yìdiǎn wǒ tèbié xiǎng xiě · I'm already on it. Wherever people go, they miss their homeland: that's what I really want to write about.

write it trace the grey, then write your own





good to know · 两岸 first means "both banks" of a river: 长江两岸. In the news it often means the two sides of the Taiwan Strait. 公 and 母 are how you say male and female for animals: 公鸡 rooster, 母鸡 hen. For people, use 男 and 女.

You can now follow the evening news on the world stage, and say **不看不知道，一看吓一跳** like a native.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 75 mission: the reporter

Follow a reporter's first story from assignment to front page, and read a short news bulletin aloud, using the words of unit 10: the media, trends, charity, the law, crime and the wider world.

A mission puts a whole unit to work in one story, the way you will meet these words in real articles.

chapter 1 the assignment

little sister 安娜，告诉你一个好消息！编辑让我做一个专题，是我的第一篇稿子！
Ānnà gàosu nǐ yí gè hǎo xiāoxi biānjí ràng wǒ zuò yí gè zhuāntí shì wǒ de dì yī piān gǎozi · Anna, guess what! The editor's given me a feature: my very first piece!

anna 太好了！你来报社才一个月吧？什么题目？
tài hǎo le nǐ lái bàoshè cái yí gè yuè ba shénme tímù · Brilliant! You've only been at the paper a month, haven't you? What's it about?

little sister 讲骗子怎么欺骗老人。最近这是社会热点，网上热议了好几天。
jiǎng piànzi zěnme qīpiàn lǎorén zuìjìn zhè shì shèhuì rèdiǎn wǎngshang rèyì le hǎojǐ tiān · How scammers trick older people. It's a hot topic right now; it's been all over the internet for days.

anna 这个题目很热门，好几个电视频道都播过。
zhège tímù hěn rèmén hǎojǐ gè diànshì píndào dōu bō guo · It's a popular subject: several TV channels have covered it.

little sister 对，昨天还有个主播做了一期访谈，请了公安局的官员。
duì zuótiān hái yǒu gè zhǔbō zuò le yì qī fǎngtán qǐng le gōngān jú de guānyuán · Yes, and yesterday a news anchor did an interview programme with an official from the police bureau.

anna 你打算先采访谁？
nǐ dǎsuàn xiān cǎifǎng shéi · Who will you interview first?

little sister 说实话，第一个就是我妈妈。骗子都骗到她头上来了！
shuō shíhuà dì yī gè jiùshì wǒ māma piànzi dōu piàn dào tā tóu shàng lái le · To be honest, my mum. The scammers even went after her!

anna 真的吗？那你得把真相写清楚，让更多的人不再上当。不过当今还有人看报刊吗？
zhēn de ma nà nǐ děi bǎ zhēnxiàng xiě qīngchu ràng gèng duō de rén bú zài shàngdàng búguò dāngjīn hái yǒu rén kàn bàokān ma · Really? Then write down exactly what happened, so fewer people fall for it. But do people still read newspapers and magazines these days?

little sister 我们报社每天还发行十万份呢，在老人里报纸还是主流。
wǒmen bàoshè měi tiān hái fāxíng shí wàn fèn ne zài lǎorén lǐ bàozhǐ háishi zhǔliú · Our paper still prints a hundred thousand copies a day; with older people, newspapers are still the mainstream.

little sister 编辑说，交稿子的时间到下周五为止，写得好就能上第一版。
biānjí shuō jiāo gǎozi de shíjiān dào xià zhōu wǔ wéizhǐ xiě de hǎo jiù néng shàng dì yī bǎn · The editor says it's due by next Friday, and if it's good it goes on the front page.

chapter 2 mum's story

little sister 妈妈，我能采访您吗？就讲那个电话的事。
māma wǒ néng cǎifǎng nín ma jiù jiǎng nàge diànhuà de shì · Mum, can I interview you? Just about that phone call.

ms zhang 可以，不过别暴露我的名字。
kěyǐ búguò bié bàolù wǒ de míngzi · Yes, but don't reveal my name.

little sister 放心，我不会公开您的信息，照片上也不会露出您的脸。
fàngxīn wǒ bú huì gōngkāi nín de xìnxī zhàopiàn shàng yě bú huì lù chū nín de liǎn · Don't worry, I won't make your details public, and your face won't show in the photo.

little sister 他一开始怎么说的？
tā yì kāishǐ zěnme shuō de · What did he say at first?

ms zhang 他说是公安局的，说我的银行卡违规了，要处罚。
tā shuō shì gōngān jú de shuō wǒ de yínhángkǎ wéiguī le yào chǔfá · He said he was from the police bureau, that my bank card had broken the rules and there'd be a penalty.

ms zhang 我一时有点儿怕。不料他马上让我转钱，我就明白了。
wǒ yìshí yǒudiǎnr pà búliào tā mǎshàng ràng wǒ zhuǎn qián wǒ jiù míngbai le · For a moment I was a little scared. Then out of nowhere he asked me to move money, and I knew.

xiaoming 我妈妈很聪明，还给警察提供了一条线索呢。后来人抓到了！
wǒ māma hěn cōngmíng hái gěi jǐngchá tígōng le yì tiáo xiànsuǒ ne hòulái rén zhuā dào le · My mum is clever: she even gave the police a lead. And then they caught them!

ms zhang 警察说，他们犯的罪可不轻，一定会追究到底。
jǐngchá shuō tāmen fàn de zuì kě bù qīng yídìng huì zhuījiū dàodǐ · The police said the crime they'd committed was serious, and they'd pursue it to the end.

xiaoming 这种人就是电话里的小偷儿，不用暴力也能偷走老人的钱，就该坐牢！
zhè zhǒng rén jiùshì diànhuà lǐ de xiǎotōur bú yòng bàolì yě néng tōu zǒu lǎorén de qián jiù gāi zuò láo · People like that are thieves on the phone: no violence, and they still steal old people's money. They belong in prison!

ms zhang 警察还警告大家：公安局没有权力在电话里让你转钱。
jǐngchá hái jǐnggào dàjiā gōngān jú méiyǒu quánlì zài diànhuà lǐ ràng nǐ zhuǎn qián · The police also warned everyone: the police bureau has no power to make you move money over the phone.

ms zhang 得了，别夸我了。要是官方没发公告，我可能就上当了。
déle bié kuā wǒ le yàoshi guānfāng méi fā gōnggào wǒ kěnéng jiù shàngdàng le · Oh, stop it. If there hadn't been an official notice, I'd have fallen for it too.

chapter 3 the volunteers

teacher wang 欢迎！我们这个互助社是个公益团体，每周六教老人怎么认出骗子。
huānyíng wǒmen zhège hùzhù shè shì gè gōngyì tuántǐ měi zhōu liù jiāo lǎorén zěnme rèn chū piànzi · Welcome! Our mutual-help club is a charity group: every Saturday we teach older people how to spot scammers.

little sister 我是从社区的一张启事上得知你们的。王老师，您也是志愿者吗？
wǒ shì cóng shèqū de yì zhāng qǐshì shàng dézhī nǐmen de Wánglǎoshī nín yě shì zhìyuànzhě ma · I found out about you from a notice in the neighbourhood. Teacher Wang, are you a volunteer too?

teacher wang 是啊，完全自愿。除我以外，还有二十多位志愿者，大都是退休的老师和医生。
shì a wánquán zìyuàn chú wǒ yǐwài hái yǒu èrshí duō wèi zhìyuànzhě dàdū shì tuìxiū de lǎoshī hé yīshēng · Yes, entirely voluntary. Besides me there are over twenty volunteers, mostly retired teachers and doctors.

anna 上课的人多吗？
shàngkè de rén duō ma · Do many people come?

teacher wang 开始只有几个人，这儿一个，那儿一个。后来地方政府号召大家参加，现在每次都坐满了。
kāishǐ zhǐyǒu jǐ gè rén zhèr yí gè nàr yí gè hòulái dìfāng zhèngfǔ hàozhào dàjiā cānjiā xiànzài měi cì dōu zuò mǎn le · At first only a few, one here, one there. Then the local government encouraged people to come, and now every class is full.

teacher wang 里面也有外来的移民，大家一起学，很快就融入了社区。
lǐmiàn yě yǒu wàilái de yímín dàjiā yìqǐ xué hěn kuài jiù róngrù le shèqū · Some are immigrants from elsewhere; everyone learns together, and they soon fit into the community.

teacher wang 上课不收钱，靠的是热心人士捐款，还有一家公司捐赠了五十部手机。
shàngkè bù shōu qián kào de shì rèxīn rénshì juānkuǎn hái yǒu yì jiā gōngsī juānzèng le wǔshí bù shǒujī · The classes are free; we rely on donations from kind-hearted people, and one company donated fifty phones.

teacher wang 我们还跟盲人协会合作，给盲人和有残疾的老人专门上课。
wǒmen hái gēn mángrén xiéhuì hézuò gěi mángrén hé yǒu cánjí de lǎorén zhuānmén shàngkè · We also work with the association for the blind, and run special classes for blind and disabled older people.

teacher wang 有的贫困老人被骗光了钱，我们就救助他们，给他们发放生活用品。
yǒude pínkùn lǎorén bèi piàn guāng le qián wǒmen jiù jiùzhù tāmen gěi tāmen fāfàng shēnghuó yòngpǐn · When poor older people have been cheated out of all their money, we help them and hand out daily necessities.

little sister 这个机制真好，难怪你们得了“和谐社区”的称号。
zhège jīzhì zhēn hǎo nánguài nǐmen dé le héxié shèqū de chēnghào · What a great system; no wonder you won the title “harmonious community”.

anna 大家都公认，王老师为社区奉献了很多。
dàjiā dōu gōngrèn Wánglǎoshī wèi shèqū fèngxiàn le hěn duō · Everyone agrees Teacher Wang has given a great deal to the community.

teacher wang 谈不上奉献。大家要团结起来，互相提醒。一个人只顾自己，是很难保护好自己的。
tánbùshàng fèngxiàn dàjiā yào tuánjié qǐlai hùxiāng tíxǐng yí gè rén zhǐgù zìjǐ shì hěn nán bǎohù hǎo zìjǐ de · It’s hardly giving. We need to stick together and remind each other. If you only look out for yourself, it’s hard to protect yourself.

anna 您刚才说的可以当专题的口号了！
nín gāngcái shuō de kěyǐ dāng zhuāntí de kǒuhào le · That could be the slogan for your feature!

chapter 4 the evening news (read aloud)

xiaoming 听说报社今天让你在网上的频道当主播?
tīngshuō bàoshè jīntiān ràng nǐ zài wǎngshang de píndào dāng zhǔbō · I hear the paper has made you the anchor on its online channel today?

little sister 对，就播五分钟新闻。你们帮我听听！
duì jiù bō wǔ fēnzhōng xīnwén nǐmen bāng wǒ tīng ting · Yes, just five minutes of news. Listen and tell me how it sounds!

little sister 各位晚上好。总理今天在北京会见了多国大使，双方谈到了外交和经济上的往来。
gèwèi wǎnshang hǎo zǒnglǐ jīntiān zài Běijīng huìjiàn le duō guó dàshǐ shuāngfāng tán dào le wàijiāo hé jīngjì shàng de wǎnglái · (news) Good evening. The premier met ambassadors from several countries in Beijing today; they discussed diplomacy and economic ties.

little sister 下个月，由我国主办的联合国和平会议将在上海举行。
xià gè yuè yóu wǒ guó zhǔbàn de Liánhéguó hépíng huìyì jiāng zài Shànghǎi jǔxíng · (news) Next month, a United Nations peace conference hosted by China will be held in Shanghai.

little sister 中央最近推行了一项新政策，打击各种欺骗老人的行为。
zhōngyāng zuìjìn tuīxíng le yí xiàng xīn zhèngcè dǎjī gèzhǒng qīpiàn lǎorén de xíngwéi · (news) The central government has recently introduced a new policy to crack down on all kinds of scams against older people.

little sister 国庆节快到了，江两岸挂满了国旗，海内外的中国人都在用自己的方式庆祝祖国的生日。
guóqìng jié kuài dào le jiāng liǎngàn guà mǎn le guóqí hǎi nèiwài de Zhōngguó rén dōu zài yòng zìjǐ de fāngshì qìngzhù zǔguó de shēngrì · (news) National Day is coming: flags line both banks of the river, and Chinese people at home and abroad are celebrating their homeland's birthday in their own way.

little sister 国庆节是法定假日，各大公园将有警察维护秩序。没有许可，严禁在公园里卖东西。
guóqìng jié shì fǎdìng jiàrì gè dà gōngyuán jiāng yǒu jǐngchá wéihù zhìxù méiyǒu xǔkě yánjìn zài gōngyuán lǐ mài dōngxi · (news) National Day is a statutory holiday; police will keep order in the main parks. Selling in the parks without a permit is strictly forbidden.

little sister 受大雨影响，周日的足球比赛或将推迟。
shòu dà yǔ yǐngxiǎng Zhōurì de zúqiú bǐsài huò jiāng tuīchí · (news) Because of heavy rain, Sunday's football match may be postponed.

little sister 国家博物馆假期不休息，开放时间是每天9时至17时。
guójiā bówùguǎn jiàqī bù xiūxi kāifàng shíjiān shì měi tiān shí zhì shí · (news) The National Museum stays open over the holiday, from 9:00 to 17:00 every day.

little sister 当代年轻人中兴起了一种新潮流：喜欢本土的东西，不再觉得外来的就一定好。
dāngdài niánqīng rén zhōng xīngqǐ le yì zhǒng xīn cháoliú xǐhuan běntǔ de dōngxi bú zài juéde wàilái de jiù yídìng hǎo · (news) A new trend has risen among today's young people: they like home-grown things and no longer think foreign means better.

little sister 近年来，一批新兴的小店在人口密集的老城区涌现出来，周末聚集了大量年轻人。
jìnnián lái yì pī xīnxīng de xiǎo diàn zài rénkǒu mìjí de lǎo chéngqū yǒngxiàn chulai zhōumò jùjí le dàliàng niánqīng rén · (news) In recent years, a wave of new small shops has sprung up in the crowded old town, drawing crowds of young people at weekends.

little sister 经过两年的治理，老城区交通混乱的局面已经好多了。
jīngguò liǎng nián de zhìlǐ lǎo chéngqū jiāotōng hùnluàn de júmiàn yǐjīng hǎo duō le · (news) After two years of work on the problem, the chaotic traffic in the old town is much better.

chapter 5 front page

anna 快看！你的专题上了今天报纸的第一版！
kuài kàn nǐ de zhuāntí shàng le jīntiān bàozhǐ de dì yī bǎn · Look! Your feature made today's front page!

little sister 真的？我还以为编辑会让我再修订一遍。
zhēn de wǒ hái yǐwéi biānjí huì ràng wǒ zài xiūdìng yí biàn · Really? I thought the editor would make me revise it again.

xiaoming 新媒体上也发了，评论超过两万条，热度超高，朋友圈里全是你！
xīnméitǐ shàng yě fā le pínglùn chāoguò liǎng wàn tiáo rèdù chāo gāo péngyou quān lǐ quán shì nǐ · It's on new media too: over twenty thousand comments, huge buzz, and my social feed is all you!

dr li 我们医院的老人们都在转，说这是今天的焦点新闻，连外界的媒体都来问了。
wǒmen yīyuàn de lǎorénmen dōu zài zhuǎn shuō zhè shì jīntiān de jiāodiǎn xīnwén lián wàijiè de méitǐ dōu lái wèn le · All the older patients at the hospital are sharing it and calling it today's top story; even outside media have been asking about it.

little sister 有人说报纸早就过时了，看来不一定。
yǒu rén shuō bàozhǐ zǎo jiù guòshí le kànlái bù yídìng · People say newspapers went out of date long ago; it seems not necessarily.

dr li 评论里有人说，光靠道德约束骗子是不够的，得靠法规和惩罚。
pínglùn lǐ yǒu rén shuō guāng kào dàodé yuēshù piànzi shì búgòu de děi kào fǎguī hé chéngfá · Someone in the comments said restraining scammers with morality alone isn't enough; it takes laws and punishment.

anna 我同意。还要健全监督体系，社会才会更公正。
wǒ tóngyì hái yào jiànquán jiāndū tǐxì shèhuì cái huì gèng gōngzhèng · I agree. The system of oversight needs to be strengthened too; only then will society be fairer.

little sister 不写不知道，一写才发现，公众这么关心这个问题。
bù xiě bù zhīdào yì xiě cái fāxiàn gōngzhòng zhème guānxīn zhège wèntí · I had no idea until I wrote it how much the public cares about this.

xiaoming 对了，报社让读者投票，你的稿件当选了本月最受欢迎的文章！
duìle bàoshè ràng dúzhě tóupiào nǐ de gǎojiàn dāngxuǎn le běn yuè zuì shòu huānyíng de wénzhāng · Oh, and the paper let readers vote: your piece was voted this month's most popular story!

little sister 太酷了！记者就要履行自己的责任，为正义说话。
tài kù le jìzhě jiù yào lǚxíng zìjǐ de zérèn wèi zhèngyì shuōhuà · That's so cool! A reporter has to do her duty and speak up for justice.

anna 这就是好记者的力量。下一个专题写什么？
zhè jiùshì hǎo jìzhě de lìliàng xià yí gè zhuāntí xiě shénme · That's the power of a good reporter. What's your next feature?

little sister 还不能透露。不过，我已经是个准记者啦！
hái bù néng tòulù búguò wǒ yǐjīng shì gè zhǔn jìzhě la · Can't reveal that yet. But I'm practically a real reporter now!

Unit 10 done: you can read a news story, argue about rules and trends, and warn your friends about scams, all in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 76 on stage

Talk about plays, films and shows: scripts, plots, roles, rehearsals and filming.

Films, TV dramas and comedy are the easiest way into Chinese culture, and the best small talk.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
文艺	wényì	literature and the arts	她从小就喜欢文艺，唱歌跳舞都会。 She's loved the arts since she was little: she can sing and dance.
戏曲	xìqǔ	traditional Chinese opera	京剧是中国最有名的戏曲之一。 Peking opera is one of China's best-known forms of opera.
相声	xiàngsheng	crosstalk (comic dialogue)	爷爷最爱听相声，一听就笑。 Grandpa loves crosstalk: he laughs the moment it starts.
喜剧	xǐjù	comedy	周末我们去看了一部喜剧，笑得肚子都疼了。 We saw a comedy at the weekend and laughed till our sides hurt.
悲剧	bēijù	tragedy	这部电影是一个悲剧，看完大家都哭了。 The film is a tragedy: everyone cried at the end.
剧本	jùběn	script, screenplay	演员们拿到剧本以后，开始认真准备。 Once the actors had the script, they got down to work.
情节	qíngjié	plot	这部小说情节很简单，但是很感人。 The novel's plot is simple, but very moving.
场景	chǎngjǐng	scene, setting	电影里下{=to fall (rain, snow)}雪的场景是在北京拍的。 The snowy scenes in the film were shot in Beijing.
场面	chǎngmiàn	scene, spectacle	开幕式的场面非常热闹。 The opening ceremony was a lively spectacle.
开头	kāitóu	beginning; to start	这部电影开头有点儿慢，后来越来越好看。 The film starts slowly but gets better and better.
结尾	jiéwěi	ending; to wind up	这个故事的结尾谁都没想到。 No one saw the ending of this story coming.
主角	zhǔjué	lead role, main character	她在这部电影里演主角。 She plays the lead in this film.
主演	zhǔyǎn	to star; lead actor	这部电影由两位年轻演员主演。 The film stars two young actors.
扮演	bànyǎn	to play (a role)	他在电视剧里扮演一位老医生。 He plays an old doctor in the TV series.
艺人	yìrén	performer, entertainer	她是一位很受欢迎的艺人。 She's a very popular entertainer.
出场	chūchǎng	to come on stage	主角一出场，台下就响起了掌声。 The moment the lead appeared, the audience burst into applause.

上台	shàngtái	to go on stage	第一次上台的时候，我紧张极了。 The first time I went on stage, I was incredibly nervous.
排练	páiliàn	to rehearse	演出前，他们每天排练到晚上十点。 Before the show they rehearsed until ten every night.
场次	chǎngcì	showing, performance (time)	周末的场次都卖完了，只能看周一的。 The weekend showings are sold out, so it'll have to be Monday.
字幕	zìmù	subtitles	我看外国电影喜欢开中文字幕。 I like watching foreign films with Chinese subtitles on.
镜头	jìngtóu	camera lens; shot	这个镜头拍了二十多次才成功。 That shot took over twenty takes to get right.
摄像	shèxiàng	to film (video)	婚礼上请了专业的人来摄像。 They hired a professional to film the wedding.
录像	lùxiàng	video recording; to videotape	演出的录像已经发到网上了。 The recording of the show is already online.
录制	lùzhì	to record (a programme)	这个节目每周三录制，周六播出。 The show is recorded on Wednesdays and airs on Saturdays.

pattern 一时……一时……: one moment …, the next …

一时 | A | ，一时（又） | B

一时A，一时B describes something that keeps switching: moods, weather, plans. It often adds 又 before the second part. On its own, 一时 means "for a moment": 我一时想不起来.

这几天的天气一时晴，一时下雨。 **zhè jǐ tiān de tiānqì yìshí qíng yìshí xià yǔ** The weather these days is sunny one moment and raining the next.

他一时说要去，一时又说不去，我也不知道他到底怎么想的。 **tā yìshí shuō yào qù yìshí yòu shuō bu qù wǒ yě bù zhīdào tā dàodǐ zěnme xiǎng de** First he says he's going, then he says he isn't: I've no idea what he really thinks.

这个剧本的情节一时让人紧张，一时又让人想笑。 **zhège jùběn de qíngjié yìshí ràng rén jǐnzhāng yìshí yòu ràng rén xiǎng xiào** The plot of this script keeps you on edge one moment and laughing the next.

dialogue a part for anna

little sister 安娜，我们话剧社要演一部喜剧，你能来扮演一个外国留学生吗?
Ānnà wǒmen huàjù shè yào yǎn yí bù xǐjù nǐ néng lái bànyǎn yí gè wàiguó liúxuéshēng ma · Anna, our drama club is doing a comedy. Could you play a foreign student?

anna 我？我从来没有上台表演过！
wǒ wǒ cónglái méiyǒu shàngtái biǎoyǎn guo · Me? I've never been on stage!

little sister 别怕，就几句台词。主角是我，主演还有我的两个同学。
bié pà jiù jǐ jù táicí zhǔjué shì wǒ zhǔyǎn hái yǒu wǒ de liǎng gè tóngxué · Don't worry, it's just a few lines. I'm the lead, and two of my classmates star too.

anna 剧本给我看看……这个情节特有意思！开头在火车站，结尾在婚礼上。
jùběn gěi wǒ kàn kan zhège qíngjié tè yǒu yìsi kāitóu zài huǒchēzhàn jiéwěi zài hūnlǐ shàng · Let me see the script… What a fun plot! It opens at a train station and ends at a wedding.

little sister 对。我们每天晚上七点排练，你能来吗?
duì wǒmen měi tiān wǎnshang qī diǎn páiliàn nǐ néng lái ma · Yes. We rehearse every evening at seven. Can you make it?

anna 能。可是我现在一时觉得兴奋，一时又觉得紧张。
néng kěshì wǒ xiànzài yìshí juéde xīngfèn yìshí yòu juéde jǐnzhāng · Yes. But right now I'm excited one moment and nervous the next.

little sister 哈哈，正常。演出那天有人摄像，录像会发到网上，还加中文字幕呢。
hā hā zhèngcháng yǎnchū nà tiān yǒu rén shèxiàng lùxiàng huì fā dào wǎngshang hái jiā Zhōngwén zìmù ne · Ha, that's normal. Someone's filming on the night; the video goes online, with Chinese subtitles.

anna 那我一出场，镜头就会对着我？我得好好练练！
nà wǒ yì chūchǎng jìngtóu jiù huì duì zhe wǒ wǒ děi hǎohǎo liàn lian · So the moment I come on, the camera will be on me? I'd better practise!

little sister 你肯定行！周六的两个场次，票已经卖得差不多了。
nǐ kěndìng xíng zhōu liù de liǎng gè chǎngcì piào yǐjīng mài de chàbuduō le · You'll be great! The two Saturday shows are almost sold out.

good to know · 相声 is a Beijing comic duo act, full of puns and fast talk. Learners love it, and it's great listening practice once you know the slang. 话剧 is a spoken play in the Western style; 戏曲 is traditional opera, sung, with painted faces and stylised moves.

You can now talk through a whole film, from 开头 to 结尾, and cheer your friends on before they go on stage.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 77 music and stars

Talk about music and musicians: instruments, rhythm, singers, idols and talent.

Music is a way into any friendship, and fans talk about their idols constantly.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
乐器	yuèqì	musical instrument	你会演奏什么乐器? What instrument do you play?
乐曲	yuèqǔ	piece of music	这首乐曲听起来很安静。 This piece sounds very peaceful.
曲	qǔ	tune, melody; song	这首歌的曲是她自己写的。 She wrote the music for this song herself.
演奏	yǎnzòu	to perform (on an instrument)	他在|音乐会{==concert}上演奏了一首古典乐曲。 He played a classical piece at the concert.
指挥	zhǐhuī	to conduct, direct; conductor	这位指挥只有三十岁。 The conductor is only thirty.
节奏	jiézòu	rhythm, pace	这首歌节奏很快，很适合跳舞。 This song has a fast beat, great for dancing.
歌唱	gēchàng	to sing (formal)	孩子们站{zhan4-3}在台上，一起歌唱美好的生活。 The children stood on stage and sang about a happy life.
民歌	míngē	folk song	这首民歌已经流传了几百年。 This folk song has been handed down for centuries.
动听	dòngtīng	pleasant to hear	她的声音特别动听。 She has a beautiful voice.
话筒	huàtǒng	microphone	请把话筒给下{=next}一位同学。 Please pass the mic to the next student.
麦克风	màikèfēng	microphone	麦克风好像坏了，后面的人听不见。 The microphone seems broken: people at the back can't hear.
古典	gǔdiǎn	classical	我做作业的时候喜欢听古典音乐。 I like listening to classical music while I do homework.
偶像	ǒuxiàng	idol	这位歌手是很多年轻人的偶像。 This singer is an idol to lots of young people.
名气	míngqi	fame, reputation	这家{=(measure word)}小饭馆名气很大，每天都要排队。 This little restaurant is famous: there's a queue every day.
出名	chūmíng	famous; to become famous	她十八岁就出名了。 She was famous by eighteen.
天才	tiāncái	genius	他五岁就会弹钢琴，大家都说他是天才。 He played the piano at five; everyone called him a genius.

才华	cáihuá	talent, brilliance	这位年轻作家很有才华。 This young writer is very talented.
多才多艺	duōcáiduōyì	multi-talented	妹妹多才多艺，会唱歌、画画，还会弹钢琴。 Xiaoming's sister is multi-talented: she sings, paints and plays the piano.
大师	dàshī	master (of an art)	他是一位书法大师。 He is a master of calligraphy.
高超	gāochāo	superb (skill)	这位医生的技术十分高超。 This doctor's skill is superb.
惊人	jīngrén	astonishing	他的|记忆力{==memory}惊人，看一遍就能|记住{==to remember}。 His memory is astonishing: one read and he's got it.
十足	shízú	full, out-and-out	他上台的时候信心十足。 He went on stage full of confidence.

pattern special measure words: 串, 滴, 枝, 扇, 卷

一 / 串 / 滴 / 枝 / 扇 / 卷 / noun

These measure words paint a picture of the thing: 串 a string or bunch (keys, grapes), 滴 a drop, 枝 a stem or stick (flowers, pens), 扇 a door or window, 卷 a roll (paper, film). 一滴……也没 means "not a single drop".

他的包上挂着一串钥匙。 **tā de bāo shàng guà zhe yí chuàn yàoshi** A bunch of keys hangs from his bag.

这几天一滴雨也没下。 **zhè jǐ tiān yì dī yǔ yě méi xià** There hasn't been a drop of rain these past few days.

演出结束后，她送给指挥一枝花。 **yǎnchū jiéshù hòu tā sòng gěi zhǐhuī yì zhī huā** After the concert, she gave the conductor a flower.

这扇门后面就是舞台。 **zhè shàn mén hòumiàn jiùshì wǔtái** The stage is right behind this door.

dialogue the young conductor

xiaoming 今天的指挥只有二十五岁，听说是个天才。
jīntiān de zhǐhuī zhǐyǒu èrshíwǔ suì tīngshuō shì gè tiāncái · Tonight's conductor is only twenty-five. They say he's a genius.

anna 我知道他！他三岁就开始学乐器，十几岁就出名了。
wǒ zhīdào tā tā sān suì jiù kāishǐ xué yuèqì shí jǐ suì jiù chūmíng le · I know him! He started on instruments at three and was famous in his teens.

xiaoming 第一首是古典乐曲，第二首是一首民歌，节奏比较慢。
dì yī shǒu shì gǔdiǎn yuèqǔ dì èr shǒu shì yì shǒu míngē jiézòu bǐjiào màn · The first piece is classical; the second is a folk song, slower.

anna 你看，那位演奏钢琴的是一位大师，名气特别大。
nǐ kàn nà wèi yǎnzòu gāngqín de shì yí wèi dàshī míngqi tèbié dà · Look, the man at the piano is a master: really famous.

xiaoming 他的技术真高超。我小时候也学过钢琴，学了三年，累透了，就放弃了。
tā de jìshù zhēn gāochāo wǒ xiǎoshíhou yě xué guo gāngqín xué le sān nián lèi tòu le jiù fàngqì le · His technique is superb. I learned the piano as a kid; after three years I was worn out and gave up.

anna 哈哈。你妹妹说，她的偶像下个月也来北京开演唱会。
hā hā nǐ mèimei shuō tā de ǒuxiàng xià gè yuè yě lái Běijīng kāi yǎnchànghuì · Ha! Your sister says her idol is giving a concert in Beijing next month.

xiaoming 那个多才多艺的歌手吧？又会唱歌，又会写曲。
nàge duōcái duōyì de gēshǒu ba yòu huì chàng gē yòu huì xiě qǔ · That multi-talented singer? He sings and writes his own music.

anna 对，他声音动听，才华惊人。上次麦克风坏了，他没用话筒也唱完了。
duì tā shēngyīn dòngtīng cáihuá jīngrén shàng cì màikèfēng huài le tā méi yòng huàtǒng yě chàng wán le · Yes: a beautiful voice and amazing talent. Last time the microphone broke, and he finished without a mic.

xiaoming 真是信心十足！好了，开始了。
zhēn shì xìnxīn shízú hǎo le kāishǐ le · That's real confidence! OK, it's starting.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

奏
zòu
to play music

筒
tǒng
tube

good to know · 乐 is yuè in music words (音乐, 乐器, 乐曲) and lè in "happy" words (快乐, 乐观). 俱乐部 (club) uses lè. 话筒 and 麦克风 both mean microphone. People also just say 麦: 把麦给我 (pass me the mic).

You can now gush about a concert, compare idols and say **累透了** after a long rehearsal.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 78 art and design

Describe art and design: colours, shapes, patterns, style and meaning.

Whether it's a painting, a phone or a dress, saying why something is beautiful is a skill you use every day.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
绘画	huìhuà	painting, drawing	她从小学习绘画，现在在一家{=(measure word)}广告公司工作。 She's studied painting since childhood and now works at an ad agency.
图案	túàn	pattern, design	这条裙子上的花图案很漂亮。 The flower pattern on this skirt is lovely.
造型	zàoxíng	shape, look, styling	这个杯子的造型很特别，像一只小猫。 This cup has an unusual shape, like a kitten.
塑造	sùzào	to shape, portray	这部小说塑造了一个勇敢的女孩子。 The novel portrays a brave girl.
审美	shěnměi	aesthetic taste	每个人的审美都不一样。 Everyone's taste is different.
美观	měiguān	good-looking (things)	这个设计既美观又实用。 This design is both good-looking and practical.
对称	duìchèn	symmetrical	中国传统建筑很讲究对称。 Traditional Chinese architecture pays great attention to symmetry.
精美	jīngměi	exquisite, beautifully made	这本书的图片非常精美。 The pictures in this book are exquisite.
精致	jīngzhì	delicate, refined	这家{=(measure word)}店的点心做得很精致。 The pastries at this shop are beautifully made.
鲜明	xiānmíng	bright; distinct	这幅画的颜色非常鲜明。 The colours in this painting are very bold.
鲜艳	xiānyàn	brightly coloured	孩子们穿着鲜艳的衣服。 The children are in brightly coloured clothes.
抽象	chōuxiàng	abstract	这幅画太抽象了，我看不懂。 This painting is too abstract for me.
新颖	xīnyǐng	original, fresh	他的设计很新颖，大家都很喜欢。 His design is original; everyone loves it.
创意	chuàngyì	creativity, creative idea	这个广告很有创意。 This ad is really creative.
时尚	shíshàng	fashion; fashionable	她穿得很时尚。 She dresses very fashionably.
模特儿	mótèr	(fashion) model	她大学的时候做过{guo}模特儿。 She modelled when she was at university.
收藏	shōucáng	to collect; collection	爷爷收藏了很多老邮票。 Grandpa has collected lots of old stamps.
宏大	hóngdà	grand, vast	这座新博物馆规模宏大。 The new museum is on a grand scale.

内涵	nèihán	depth, inner meaning	这首诗很短，但内涵很丰富。 The poem is short but rich in meaning.
趣味	qùwèi	interest, fun; taste	这本书|写得很有趣味，孩子们都爱看。 The book is great fun; children love it.
动漫	dòngmàn	anime and comics	我弟弟特别喜欢看动漫。 My little brother is crazy about anime.
漫画	mànhuà	comics, cartoon	这本漫画讲的是一只猫的故事。 This comic is about a cat.
圆满	yuánmǎn	successful, perfect	这次展览圆满结束了。 The exhibition came to a successful close.

pattern 好（不）容易: at last, with great difficulty

好容易 / 好不容易 | 才 | did it

Surprise: 好容易 and 好不容易 mean the same thing, “with great difficulty, finally”. They usually come with 才 and describe something you only just managed.

我好不容易才买到这个展览的票。 **wǒ hǎobùróngyì cái mǎi dào zhège zhǎnlǎn de piào** I had a real job getting tickets for this exhibition.

好容易等到周末，又下雨了。 **hǎoróngyì děngdào zhōumò yòu xià yǔ le** At long last the weekend came, and it rained again.

他好不容易才把这幅画画完。 **tā hǎobùróngyì cái bǎ zhè fú huà huà wán** He finally managed to finish this painting.

dialogue the big exhibition

anna 陈教授，我好不容易才买到这个展览的票，您也来了！
Chénjiàoshòu wǒ hǎobùróngyì cái mǎi dào zhège zhǎnlǎn de piào nín yě lái le · Professor Chen! It took me forever to get tickets, and you're here too!

professor chen 是啊，我特地从学校赶过来的。这次展览规模宏大，古代的、当代的都有。
shì a wǒ tèdì cóng xuéxiào gǎn guolai de zhè cì zhǎnlǎn guīmó hóngdà gǔdài de dāngdài de dōu yǒu · Yes, I came straight over from the university. It's a huge exhibition, ancient and contemporary.

anna 您看这幅抽象画，颜色这么鲜艳，可是我看不懂它的内涵。
nín kàn zhè fú chōuxiàng huà yánsè zhème xiānyàn kěshì wǒ kàn bu dǒng tā de nèihán · Look at this abstract painting: such bright colours, but I don't get what it means.

professor chen 抽象绘画不需要都看懂，你看到它有什么感觉，就够了。
chōuxiàng huìhuà bù xūyào dōu kàn dǒng nǐ kàn dào tā yǒu shénme gǎnjué jiù gòu le · You don't need to understand abstract painting. What you feel when you see it is enough.

anna 那边那个花瓶的造型很精致，图案也很对称。
nàbiān nàge huāpíng de zàoxíng hěn jīngzhì túàn yě hěn duìchèn · That vase over there has such a delicate shape, and the pattern is symmetrical too.

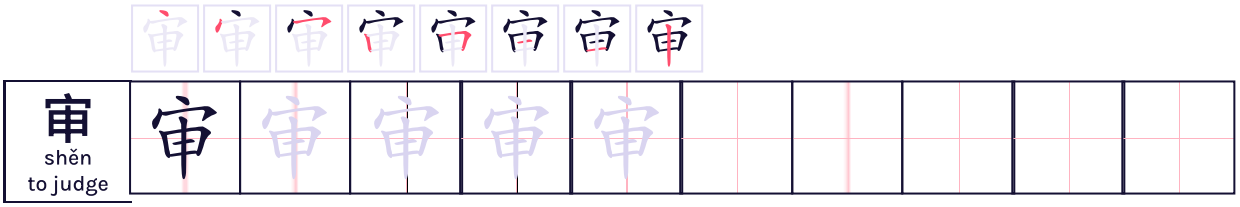
professor chen 那个花瓶已经有六百多年的历史了。那时候的人，审美真不简单。
nàge huāpíng yǐjīng yǒu liùbǎi duō nián de lìshǐ le nà shíhou de rén shěnměi zhēn bù jiǎndān · That vase is over six hundred years old. People back then had remarkable taste.

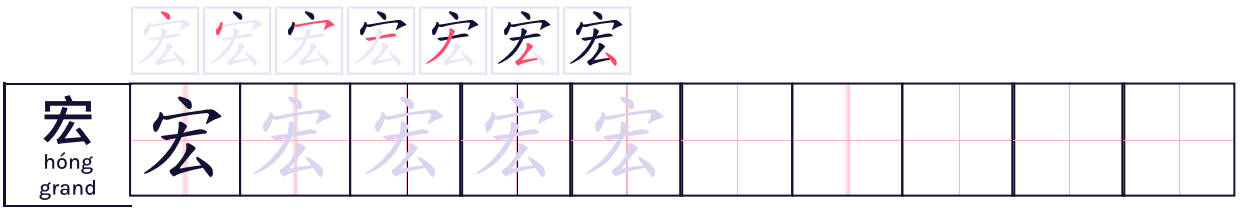
anna 我看着看着，不禁笑了起来：瓶子上画的猫好可爱！
wǒ kàn zhe kàn zhe bùjīn xiào le qǐlai píngzi shàng huà de māo hǎo kěài · I can't help smiling: the cat painted on it is so cute!

professor chen 以前的人也很有趣味嘛。走，楼上还有动漫和漫画的展览，很有创意。
yǐqián de rén yě hěn yǒu qùwèi ma zǒu lóu shàng hái yǒu dòngmàn hé mànhuà de zhǎnlǎn hěn yǒu chuàngyì · People back then had a sense of fun too. Come on, upstairs there's an anime and comics show; it's very creative.

anna 太好了！今天真是圆满的一天。
tài hǎo le jīntiān zhēn shì yuánmǎn de yì tiān · Great! What a perfect day.

write it trace the grey, then write your own





good to know · 好容易 and 好不容易 look like opposites but mean the same: "with great difficulty". Learners love this one. 精美 is beautifully made (books, gifts); 精致 is delicate and refined (food, small objects); 美观 is good-looking but practical (buildings, products).

You can now say why something is beautiful, and that you **好不容易** got the tickets.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 79 books and stories

Talk about books and writing: genres, describing and narrating, technique, adaptations and prizes.

Books are a favourite topic of conversation, and HSK 6 asks you to read and write about them.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
著作	zhùzuò	(written) work, book	陈教授写过{guo}|好几{==quite a few}部历史著作。 Professor Chen has written several history books.
散文	sǎnwén	prose, essay	我很喜欢读他的散文，写得又短又美。 I love reading his essays: short and beautiful.
章	zhāng	chapter	这本小说一共有二十章。 This novel has twenty chapters.
童话	tónghuà	fairy tale	小时候，妈妈每天晚上给我讲童话。 When I was small, Mum told me a fairy tale every night.
科幻	kēhuàn	science fiction	他最爱看科幻小说。 Sci-fi novels are his favourite.
题材	tícái	subject matter, theme	这部电影的题材很新颖。 The film has a very original subject.
描写	miáoxiě	to describe (in writing)	这段文字描写了秋天的北京。 This passage describes Beijing in autumn.
描绘	miáohuì	to depict, paint (a picture of)	作家描绘了一个美好的未来。 The writer paints a picture of a bright future.
叙述	xùshù	to narrate, recount	他把事情的经过叙述了一遍。 He went through what had happened.
手法	shǒufǎ	technique, method (in art)	作者用了很多新的写作手法。 The author uses lots of new writing techniques.
技巧	jìqiǎo	skill, technique	写作文也有很多技巧。 There are lots of techniques for writing essays, too.
改编	gǎibiān	to adapt (a work)	这部电影是根据一本小说改编的。 The film is adapted from a novel.
编	biān	to make up; compile; weave	别听他的，这个故事是他自己编的。 Don't listen to him: he made that story up.
模仿	mófǎng	to imitate, copy	小孩子喜欢模仿大人说话。 Little children love copying how grown-ups talk.
评选	píngxuǎn	to choose (by judging or voting)	学校每年都评选优秀学生。 Every year the school chooses its outstanding students.

入选	rùxuǎn	to be selected	她的小说入选了今年的十大好书。 Her novel made this year's top ten books.
荣誉	róngyù	honour	能得{de2}这个奖是我一生的荣誉。 Winning this award is the honour of my life.
工夫	gōngfu	time; effort	他没花{hua1}多少工夫就把问题解决了。 He solved the problem without much effort.
肯	kěn	to be willing to	只要你肯努力，就一定能学好。 As long as you're willing to work at it, you'll learn it well.
一模一样	yīmúyīyàng	exactly alike	这两个杯子一模一样，我分不清哪个是我的。 These two cups are identical: I can't tell which is mine.
贴近	tiējìn	close to; to draw near	这本书的故事很贴近生活。 The stories in this book are true to life.

pattern 要么……，要么……: either … or …

要么 A ，要么 B

要么A，要么B lays out two choices, and you must take one. It sounds practical and decisive, often a suggestion. Compare 或者 (or), which is softer.

周末我要么在家看书，要么去公园跑步。 zhōumò wǒ yàome zài jiā kàn shū yàome qù gōngyuán pǎobù
At weekends I either read at home or go running in the park.

要么现在走，要么明天一早走，你选吧。 yàome xiànzài zǒu yàome míngtiān yì zǎo zǒu nǐ xuǎn ba
Either we leave now or first thing tomorrow: your call.

这本书要么改编成电影，要么改编成电视剧，导演还没决定。 zhè běn shū yàome gǎibiān chéng diànyǐng yàome gǎibiān chéng diànshìjù dǎoyǎn hái méi juédìng The book will be adapted either as a film or as a TV series: the director hasn't decided yet.

dialogue writing advice

little sister 陈教授，祝贺您！您的新著作入选了今年的十大好书。
Chénjiàoshòu zhùhè nín nín de xīn zhùzuò rùxuǎn le jīnnián de shí dà hǎo shū · Professor Chen, congratulations! Your new book made this year's top ten.

professor chen 谢谢！能被评选上是很大的荣誉。我花了五年工夫才写完。
xièxie néng bèi píngxuǎn shàng shì hěn dà de róngyù wǒ huā le wǔ nián gōngfu cái xiě wán · Thank you! Being chosen is a great honour. It took me five years to write.

little sister 我最近也在写小说，要么写童话，要么写科幻，还没决定。
wǒ zuìjìn yě zài xiě xiǎoshuō yàome xiě tónghuà yàome xiě kēhuàn hái méi juédìng · I'm writing a novel too: either a fairy tale or sci-fi, I haven't decided.

professor chen 选题材的时候，最好贴近自己的生活。
xuǎn tícái de shíhou zuìhǎo tiējìn zìjǐ de shēnghuó · When you choose your subject, it's best to stay close to your own life.

little sister 可是我总是模仿别人，写得跟我喜欢的作家一模一样。
kěshì wǒ zǒngshì mófǎng biérén xiě de gēn wǒ xǐhuan de zuòjiā yìmú yíyàng · But I always copy others: what I write is exactly like my favourite authors.

professor chen 一开始模仿没关系，慢慢就有自己的手法了。写作的技巧要靠多写。
yì kāishǐ mófǎng méi guānxi màn màn jiù yǒu zìjǐ de shǒufǎ le xiězuò de jìqiǎo yào kào duō xiě · Copying at first is fine; your own style comes slowly. Writing technique comes from writing a lot.

little sister 那我要么每天写一章，要么每天写一千字，您觉得哪个好？
nà wǒ yàome měi tiān xiě yì zhāng yàome měi tiān xiě yìqiān zì nín juéde nǎge hǎo · So should I write a chapter a day, or a thousand characters a day?

professor chen 只要你肯坚持，哪个都行。对了，我的书要改编成电影，导演都找到我头上来了，让我帮忙改剧本！
zhǐyào nǐ kěn jiānchí nǎge dōu xíng duì le wǒ de shū yào gǎibiān chéng diànyǐng dǎoyǎn dōu zhǎo dào wǒ tóu shàng lái le ràng wǒ bāngmáng gǎi jùběn · Either works, as long as you stick with it. Oh, and my book is being made into a film: the director has even roped me in to help with the script!

little sister 太厉害了！到时候我一定去看。
tài lìhai le dào shíhou wǒ yídìng qù kàn · Amazing! I'll definitely go and see it.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

叙
xù
to narrate

誉
yù
reputation

good to know · 描写 is describing in words; 描绘 is painting a picture, in paint or in words; 叙述 is telling events in order. 工夫 is time and effort (花工夫). 功夫, same sound, is skill and kung fu. You will see both mixed up, even by native speakers.

You can now recommend a book, explain how it's written and give a friend a 要么……要么…… push to start writing.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 80 sports day

Talk about sports and outdoor fun: events, venues, gear, races and commentary.

Company sports days, ski trips and watching matches together are part of life in China.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
田径	tiánjìng	track and field, athletics	他是学校田径队的。 He's on the school athletics team.
体操	tǐcāo	gymnastics	小时候她练过{guo}五年体操。 She did gymnastics for five years as a child.
跳水	tiàoshuǐ	diving; to dive	我第一次跳水的时候特别紧张。 I was so nervous the first time I dived.
滑冰	huábīng	ice skating; to skate	冬天，很多人去公园的湖上滑冰。 In winter, lots of people skate on the park lake.
滑雪	huáxuě	skiing; to ski	今年冬天我们打算去东北滑雪。 This winter we're planning to go skiing in the northeast.
滑行	huáxíng	to glide, taxi	飞机在跑道上慢慢滑行。 The plane taxied slowly along the runway.
棒球	bàngqiú	baseball	棒球在美国很受欢迎。 Baseball is very popular in the US.
台球	táiqiú	billiards, pool	下班以后，他常和同事去打台球。 After work he often plays pool with colleagues.
射击	shèjī	shooting (sport)	射击比赛需要很强的|注意力{==concentration}。 Target shooting takes intense concentration.
射	shè	to shoot (a ball, an arrow)	他一脚把球射进了|球门{==goal}。 He fired the ball into the net with one kick.
奔跑	bēnpǎo	to run, race along	孩子们在草地上开心地奔跑。 The children ran happily across the grass.
起点	qǐdiǎn	starting point, start	运动员们已经站{zhan4-3}在了起点。 The athletes are already on the start line.
终点	zhōngdiǎn	finish, end point	他第一个跑到了终点。 He was first to the finish.
场地	chǎngdì	venue, ground	比赛场地已经准备好了。 The venue is all set for the match.
场馆	chǎngguǎn	stadium, sports venue	这座城市新建了很多体育场馆。 The city has built lots of new sports venues.
装备	zhuāngbèi	equipment, gear; to equip	滑雪的装备有点儿贵。 Ski gear is a bit pricey.
俱乐部	jùlèbù	club	我参加了一个跑步俱乐部。 I've joined a running club.

解说	jiěshuō	to commentate; commentary	这场比赛的解说特别精彩。 The commentary on this match was brilliant.
钓鱼	diàoyú	to fish (with a rod)	爸爸周末喜欢去河边钓鱼。 Dad likes fishing by the river at weekends.
盘	pán	plate (of); game (of chess)	他一个人吃了一盘{pan2}饺子。 He ate a whole plate of dumplings by himself.
局	jú	game, set (measure word)	这场乒乓球比赛一共打了五局{ju2}。 The table-tennis match went to five games.
飞速	fēisù	at full speed, rapidly	这几年，城市飞速发展。 The city has developed at lightning speed in recent years.
顾	gù	to attend to, care about	他忙得连饭都顾不上吃。 He's so busy he can't even find time to eat.

pattern 啦 and 嘛 at the end of a sentence

sentence	啦 (= 了 + 啊)	嘛 (it's obvious!)

啦 is 了 and 啊 squeezed together: lively news or excitement (我们赢啦！). 嘛 says "it's obvious" or gently urges: 别着急嘛 (come on, don't rush). Both are friendly, spoken and warm.

我们赢啦！ **wǒmen yíng la** We won!

别担心嘛，比赛就是玩玩。 **bié dānxīn ma bǐsài jiùshì wán wan** Don't worry, it's only a game.

他是新来的嘛，当然不知道规则。 **tā shì xīn lái de ma dāngrán bù zhīdào guīzé** He's new, so of course he doesn't know the rules.

吃完这盘饺子，我们就去打棒球啦！ **chī wán zhè pán jiǎozi wǒmen jiù qù dǎ bàngqiú la** Once we finish this plate of dumplings, we're off to play baseball!

dialogue sports day

manager liu 安娜，快来！公司运动会要开始啦！
Ānnà kuài lái gōngsī yùndònghuì yào kāishǐ la · Anna, hurry! The company sports day is starting!

anna 刘经理，今天的场地真大，是新建的场馆吧？
Liújīnglǐ jīntiān de chǎngdì zhēn dà shì xīn jiàn de chǎngguǎn ba · Ms Liu, this place is huge. Is it a new venue?

manager liu 对，这是一家体育俱乐部的场馆，田径、跳水都可以。你参加什么项目？
duì zhè shì yì jiā tǐyù jùlèbù de chǎngguǎn tiánjìng tiàoshuǐ dōu kěyǐ nǐ cānjiā shénme xiàngmù · Yes, it belongs to a sports club: athletics, diving, the lot. What are you doing?

anna 我参加的是一百米。可是我的装备都没带……
wǒ cānjiā de shì yìbǎi mǐ kěshì wǒ de zhuāngbèi dōu méi dài · I'm in the 100 metres. But I didn't bring any of my gear…

manager liu 没关系嘛，跑步又不需要什么装备。快去起点吧！
méi guānxi ma pǎobù yòu bù xūyào shénme zhuāngbèi kuài qù qǐdiǎn ba · No problem: running doesn't need gear! Off to the start line!

xiaoming 安娜，加油！人家都说你跑得特别快。
Ānnà jiāyóu rénjia dōu shuō nǐ pǎo de tèbié kuài · Go, Anna! Everyone says you're really fast.

anna 别给我压力啦！人家本来就紧张。
bié gěi wǒ yālì la rénjia běnlái jiù jǐnzhāng · Don't put pressure on me! I'm nervous enough already.

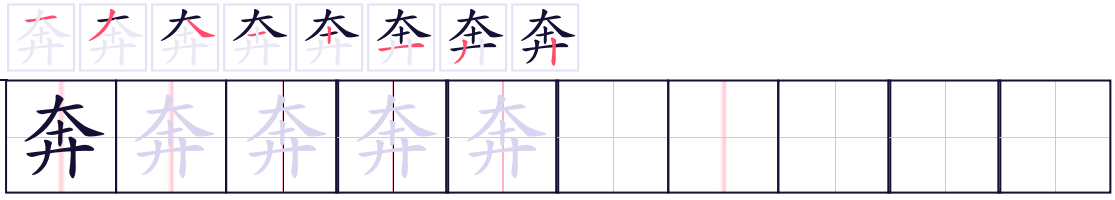
manager liu 来，大家齐声喊：“安娜，加油！”
lái dàjiā qí shēng hǎn Ānnà jiāyóu · Come on, everyone, all together: “Go, Anna!”

xiaoming 你看她奔跑的样子，像在飞！马上要到终点啦！
nǐ kàn tā bēnpǎo de yàngzi xiàng zài fēi mǎshàng yào dào zhōngdiǎn la · Look at her run, she's flying! She's nearly at the finish!

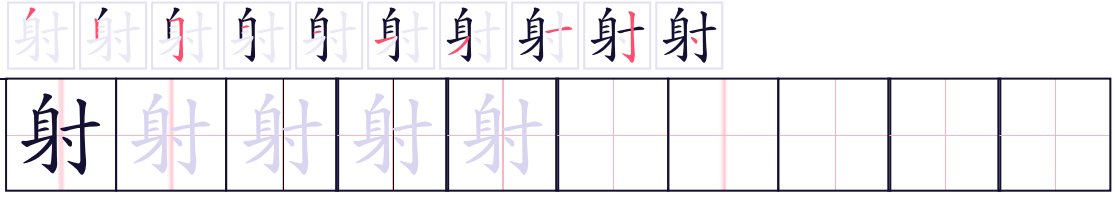
manager liu 第一名！好，比赛完了大家去吃饭，我请客。今天谁都顾不上减肥啦！
dì yī míng hǎo bǐsài wán le dàjiā qù chī fàn wǒ qǐngkè jīntiān shéi dōu gù bu shàng jiǎnféi la · First place! Right, after the races, dinner's on me. Nobody's dieting today!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

奔
bēn
to rush



射
shè
to shoot (a ball, an arrow)



good to know · 人家 can mean “other people” (人家都说……), a specific “he/she”, or, said playfully, “me”: 人家本来就紧张 (I'm nervous enough!). 局 counts games or sets in table tennis, chess and cards: 三局两胜 is “best of three”. 盘 counts games of chess and plates of food. 周 is also a measure word for a circuit: 绕场一周 “a lap of the ground”, 地球绕太阳一周 “one orbit of the sun”. 齐 “even, all present” (人到齐了) also means “together”: 齐声 “in unison”, 一齐 “all at once”, 齐心 “of one mind”.

You can now cheer, commentate and celebrate in Chinese: 我们赢啦!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 81 winning and losing

Talk about competitions: rankings, knock-outs, medals, winning and losing, and board games.

From the Olympics to a game of Go in the park, winning and losing is a story everyone loves to tell.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
竞赛	jìngsài	contest, competition	他参加了全国数学竞赛。 He took part in the national maths competition.
赛事	sàishì	sporting event, tournament	今年夏天有很多国际赛事。 There are lots of international tournaments this summer.
选拔	xuǎnbá	to select (talent)	学校正在选拔参加比赛的学生。 The school is selecting students for the competition.
淘汰	táotài	to eliminate, knock out	我们队在第一轮{=round}就被淘汰了。 Our team was knocked out in the first round.
排名	páimíng	ranking; to rank	这所大学的排名每年都在上升。 This university climbs the rankings every year.
争夺	zhēngduó	to fight for, contend	两个队正在争夺冠军。 The two teams are battling for the title.
夺	duó	to seize; to win	她在比赛中夺得{de2}了第一名。 She took first place in the competition.
夺取	duóqǔ	to win, capture	他们希望在这次比赛中夺取冠军。 They hope to win the championship this time.
对抗	duìkàng	to oppose; face-off	今天晚上的比赛是两支强队的对抗。 Tonight's match is a clash of two strong teams.
击败	jībài	to defeat	他在决赛中击败了去年的冠军。 He beat last year's champion in the final.
战胜	zhànshèng	to overcome, beat	她战胜了自己的害怕，第一次上台演讲。 She overcame her fear and gave her first speech on stage.
败	bài	to lose, be defeated	这次比赛我们败了，但是学到了很多。 We lost this time, but we learned a lot.
超越	chāoyuè	to surpass, go beyond	他的水平已经超越了他的老师。 He's already better than his teacher.
高手	gāoshǒu	expert, ace	他是下{=to play (board games)}围棋的高手。 He's an ace at Go.
金牌	jīnpái	gold medal	她在国际比赛中拿了两块金牌。 She won two golds at an international competition.
银牌	yínpái	silver medal	只{zhi3}差零点一秒，他拿了银牌。 Just a tenth of a second behind, he took silver.
铜牌	tóngpái	bronze medal	这块铜牌对她来说意义很大。 This bronze means a lot to her.

奖牌	jiǎngpái	medal	我们学校在运动会上一共拿了十块奖牌。 Our school won ten medals in all at the sports meet.
亚军	yàjūn	runner-up, second place	我们班得{de2}了亚军，只{zhi3}比第一名少两分{=points}。 Our class came second, just two points behind first.
季军	jìjūn	third place	冠军、亚军和季军都上台领奖了。 The first, second and third-place winners all went up to collect their prizes.
象棋	xiàngqí	Chinese chess (xiangqi)	公园里常有老人在下{=to play (board games)}象棋。 There are often old people playing Chinese chess in the park.
围棋	wéiqí	Go (weiqi)	围棋看起来简单，其实非常难。 Go looks simple, but it's actually very hard.
棋子	qízǐ	game piece, chess piece	围棋的棋子只有黑白{=white}两种。 Go has only two kinds of piece: black and white.

pattern word-building suffixes: —化, —式, —型, —性

word	化 / 式 / 型 / 性

Four suffixes build new words: —化 “become, -ise” (现代化), —式 “style” (中国式), —型 “type, model” (新型), —性 “-ness, -ity” (个性). You can understand thousands of new words with them.

比赛越来越国际化了。 **bǐsài yuè lái yuè guójì huà le** Competitions are more and more international.

这是一种新型的运动，年轻人大都喜欢。 **zhè shì yì zhǒng xīnxíng de yùndòng niánqīng rén dàdū xǐhuan** It's a new kind of sport, and most young people love it.

中国式的教育和美国式的不太一样。 **Zhōngguó shì de jiàoyù hé Měiguó shì de bú tài yíyàng** Chinese-style education is quite different from the American style.

他是一个很有个性的运动员。 **tā shì yí gè hěn yǒu gèxìng de yùndòngyuán** He's an athlete with real personality.

dialogue the go final

xiaoming 爸爸，您又在看围棋比赛?
bàba nín yòu zài kàn wéiqí bǐsài · Dad, watching Go again?

dr li 这是今年最重要的赛事之一，两个高手在争夺冠军，是一场高水平的对抗。
zhè shì jīnnián zuì zhòngyào de sàishì zhī yī liǎng gè gāoshǒu zài zhēngduó guànjūn shì yì chǎng gāo shuǐpíng de duìkàng · It's one of the biggest events of the year: two top players fighting for the title, a real clash of masters.

xiaoming 现在人工智能都能击败世界冠军了，人还下什么围棋?
xiànzài réngōng zhìnéng dōu néng jībài shìjiè guànjūn le rén hái xià shénme wéiqí · AI can beat world champions now. Why do people still play?

dr li 这你就不懂了。下围棋不是为了战胜机器，是为了超越自己。
zhè nǐ jiù bù dǒng le xià wéiqí bú shì wèile zhànshèng jīqì shì wèile chāoyuè zìjǐ · That's where you're wrong. Playing Go isn't about beating machines; it's about going beyond yourself.

xiaoming 好吧。那个年轻人排名多少?
hǎo ba nàge niánqīng rén páimíng duōshao · Fine. Where's that young player ranked?

dr li 他去年净输，今年大都赢了，排名一下子升到了第三。
tā qùnián jìng shū jīnnián dàdū yíng le páimíng yíxiàzi shēng dào le dì sān · Last year he lost almost every game; this year he's won most of them and shot up to third.

xiaoming 我小时候也参加过选拔，第一轮就被淘汰了。
wǒ xiǎoshíhou yě cānjiā guo xuǎnbá dì yī lún jiù bèi táotài le · I tried out once as a kid and got knocked out in the first round.

dr li 你那时候净想着踢足球。
nǐ nà shíhou jìng xiǎng zhe tī zúqiú · Back then all you thought about was football.

xiaoming 那倒是。来，我们一同下一盘象棋吧，我就不信我会败给您!
nà dàoshì lái wǒmen yìtóng xià yì pán xiàngqí ba wǒ jiù bú xìn wǒ huì bài gěi nín · True. Come on, let's play a game of Chinese chess. I refuse to believe you'll beat me!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

汰
tài
to discard

夺
duó
to seize; to win

抗
kàng
to resist

good to know · 冠军, 亚军, 季军 are first, second and third place. 亚 means "second" (亚军), and 季 was once the word for the youngest of brothers. 下 is the verb for board games: 下围棋, 下象棋. Ball games take 打 or 踢.

You can now follow a tournament, from 选拔 to 金牌, and challenge a friend to a game of 象棋.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 82 mission: the festival show

Chinese HSK 6 in 90 days
unit 11 · arts & sports

Follow a whole festival weekend, from rehearsal to prize-giving: stage, music, art and books, a sports meet and a Go contest, with the words of unit 11.

A mission puts the unit to work in one story, the way you will meet these words at a real show or match.

chapter 1 the last rehearsal

little sister 最后一次排练啦！安娜，你的台词都记住了吗?
zuìhòu yí cì páiliàn la Ānnà nǐ de táicí dōu jìzhù le ma · Last rehearsal! Anna, have you learned all your lines?

anna 记住了……可是我一时觉得没问题，一时又全忘了。
jìzhù le kěshì wǒ yìshí juéde méi wèntí yìshí yòu quán wàng le · I have… but one minute I'm fine, the next I've forgotten everything.

little sister 别紧张嘛。你一出场，大家就会笑。这是喜剧，又不是悲剧！
bié jǐnzhāng ma nǐ yì chūchǎng dàjiā jiù huì xiào zhè shì xǐjù yòu bú shì bēijù · Relax! The moment you come on, everyone will laugh. It's a comedy, not a tragedy!

anna 我扮演的是一个想当艺人的女孩子。开头那个场景，我最怕。
wǒ bànyǎn de shì yí gè xiǎng dāng yìrén de nǚ háizi kāitóu nàge chǎngjǐng wǒ zuì pà · I play a girl who wants to be an entertainer. The opening scene is the one I dread most.

little sister 别怕，结尾那段你演得特好，连主演都夸你呢。
bié pà jiéwěi nà duàn nǐ yǎn de tè hǎo lián zhǔyǎn dōu kuā nǐ ne · Don't worry, you're great in the ending: even the lead actor praised you.

xiaoming 不好了，话筒坏了，后面的人什么也听不见！
bù hǎo le huàtǒng huài le hòumiàn de rén shénme yě tīng bu jiàn · Oh no, the mic's broken: nobody at the back can hear a thing!

little sister 早不坏，晚不坏，就在这个时候坏了！还有别的麦克风吗?
zǎo bú huài wǎn bú huài jiù zài zhège shíhou huài le hái yǒu biéde màikèfēng ma · Of all the times to break! Is there another microphone?

xiaoming 我好不容易才借到一个，放在后台了。
wǒ hǎobùróngyì cái jiè dào yí gè fàng zài hòutái le · I managed to borrow one in the end; it's backstage.

little sister 太好了！摄像的同学也到了。今天的演出要全部录制，以后还要配上字幕。
tài hǎo le shèxiàng de tóngxué yě dào le jīntiān de yǎnchū yào quánbù lùzhì yǐhòu hái yào pèi shàng zìmù · Brilliant! The student filming has arrived too. The whole show is being recorded, and it'll get subtitles later.

xiaoming 今天一共两个场次，下午三点和晚上七点。镜头对着舞台，你别看它就行。
jīntiān yígòng liǎng gè chǎngcì xiàwǔ sān diǎn hé wǎnshang qī diǎn jìngtóu duì zhe wǔtái nǐ bié kàn tā jiù xíng · There are two performances today, at three and at seven. The camera points at the stage: just don't look at it.

anna 好。我们后面还有相声和戏曲，这个文艺节真热闹！
hǎo wǒmen hòumiàn hái yǒu xiàngsheng hé xìqǔ zhège wényìjié zhēn rènao · OK. After us there's crosstalk and Chinese opera too. What a lively arts festival!

chapter 2 on stage

anna 演完了！我上台的时候，手都是凉的。
yǎn wán le wǒ shàngtái de shíhou shǒu dōu shì liáng de · It's over! When I went on stage, my hands were ice-cold.

teacher wang 可是你演得特好！观众笑了好几次，场面异常热闹。
kěshì nǐ yǎn de tè hǎo guānzhòng xiào le hǎojǐ cì chǎngmiàn yìcháng rènao · But you were brilliant! The audience laughed again and again: what an atmosphere.

anna 王老师，您特地来看我们演出？
Wánglǎoshī nín tèdì lái kàn wǒmen yǎnchū · Teacher Wang, you came specially to see us?

teacher wang 当然。下面还有合唱，我是指挥。这首民歌歌唱的是家乡，你们一定会喜欢。
dāngrán xiàmiàn hái yǒu héchàng wǒ shì zhǐhuī zhè shǒu míngē gēchàng de shì jiāxiāng nǐmen yídìng huì xǐhuan · Of course. There's a choir next, and I'm conducting. This folk song sings of home: you'll love it.

little sister 王老师真是多才多艺！上次您演奏的古典乐曲，大家都说动听极了。
Wánglǎoshī zhēn shì duōcái duōyì shàng cì nín yǎnzòu de gǔdiǎn yuèqǔ dàjiā dōu shuō dòngtīng jí le · Teacher Wang, you can do everything! Everyone said the classical piece you played last time was gorgeous.

teacher wang 哪里哪里。今天真正的天才，是那位弹钢琴的同学，她才十六岁。
nǎlǐnǎlǐ jīntiān zhēnzhèng de tiāncái shì nà wèi tán gāngqín de tóngxué tā cái shíliù suì · Oh, not at all. Today's real genius is the girl at the piano: she's only sixteen.

anna 她的技巧太高超了！节奏那么快，却一点儿都没弹错，真惊人。
tā de jìqiǎo tài gāochāo le jiézòu nàme kuài què yìdiǎnr dōu méi tán cuò zhēn jīngrén · Her technique is superb! Such a fast rhythm, and not a single slip. Astonishing.

little sister 她一曲弹完，全场都安静了。听说她还会好几种乐器，才华十足！
tā yì qǔ tán wán quánchǎng dōu ānjìng le tīngshuō tā hái huì hǎojǐ zhǒng yuèqì cáihuá shízú · When she finished her piece, the whole hall went quiet. They say she plays several instruments too: real talent!

teacher wang 她的老师是一位音乐大师，在国内很有名气。
tā de lǎoshī shì yí wèi yīnyuè dàshī zài guó nèi hěn yǒu míngqi · Her teacher is a master musician, quite famous in China.

teacher wang 快去后台吧，大家都在等着跟你们这些新偶像拍照呢！
kuài qù hòutái ba dàjiā dōu zài děng zhe gēn nǐmen zhèxiē xīn ǒuxiàng pāizhào ne · Off you go backstage: everyone's waiting to take photos with their new idols!

chapter 3 the art and book fair

ms zhang 安娜，这边是绘画，那边是图书，我们先看哪个？
Ānnà zhèbiān shì huìhuà nàbiān shì túshū wǒmen xiān kàn nǎge · Anna, paintings over here and books over there. Which first?

anna 先看画吧。这幅画描绘的是北京的秋天，颜色真鲜艳，图案也很对称。
xiān kàn huà ba zhè fú huà miáohuì de shì Běijīng de qiūtiān yánsè zhēn xiānyàn túàn yě hěn duìchèn · The paintings first. This one depicts Beijing in autumn: such bright colours, and a symmetrical pattern.

ms zhang 我更喜欢旁边那幅抽象画，看起来简单，其实很有内涵。
wǒ gèng xǐhuan pángbiān nà fú chōuxiàng huà kànqǐlai jiǎndān qíshí hěn yǒu nèihán · I prefer the abstract one next to it. It looks simple, but it has real depth.

little sister 妈妈，您的审美一向很时尚嘛！
māma nín de shěnměi yíxiàng hěn shíshàng ma · Mum, you've always had fashionable taste!

ms zhang 你看这些动漫和漫画作品，造型精致，很有创意，也很有趣味。
nǐ kàn zhèxiē dòngmàn hé mànhuà zuòpǐn zàoxíng jīngzhì hěn yǒu chuàngyì yě hěn yǒu qùwèi · Look at these anime and comic works: refined designs, very creative, and fun too.

little sister 有一位同学还请了模特儿，把她漫画里的人物变成了真人。
yǒu yí wèi tóngxué hái qǐng le mótèr bǎ tā mànhuà lǐ de rénwù biànchéng le zhēn rén · One student even got a model to bring a character from her comic to life.

anna 那边有一位老先生，收藏了几百本古书，每一本都那么精美。
nàbiān yǒu yí wèi lǎo xiānsheng shōucáng le jǐ bǎi běn gǔ shū měi yì běn dōu nàme jīngměi · Over there an old gentleman has a collection of hundreds of old books, each one beautifully made.

ms zhang 这些新书也设计得很美观。这本是一部宏大的科幻著作，一共五十章。
zhèxiē xīn shū yě shèjì de hěn měiguān zhè běn shì yí bù hóngdà de kēhuàn zhùzuò yígòng wǔshí zhāng · These new books are well designed too. This one is a vast science-fiction work, fifty chapters long.

little sister 我小时候只看童话，现在更喜欢散文，题材越平凡越好。
wǒ xiǎoshíhou zhǐ kàn tónghuà xiànzài gèng xǐhuan sǎnwén tícái yuè píngfán yuè hǎo · As a kid I only read fairy tales; now I prefer essays, and the more ordinary the subject, the better.

ms zhang 这位作家描写人物的手法很特别，叙述得非常自然。
zhè wèi zuòjiā miáoxiě rénwù de shǒufǎ hěn tèbié xùshù de fēicháng zìrán · This writer has a special way of describing people, and he tells a story so naturally.

anna 他的小说入选了今年的好书，还被改编成了电影。
tā de xiǎoshuō rùxuǎn le jīnnián de hǎo shū hái bèi gǎibiān chéng le diànyǐng · His novel was picked as one of this year's best books, and it's been adapted into a film.

little sister 他肯花工夫，一个故事要编好几年。有人模仿他，可怎么也写不出那个味道。
tā kěn huā gōngfu yí gè gùshi yào biān hǎojǐ nián yǒu rén mófǎng tā kě zěnme yě xiě bu chū nàge wèidào · He's willing to put in the time: one story takes him years to make up. People imitate him, but they can never get that flavour.

chapter 4 the sports afternoon

little sister 下午是运动会！田径场地就在场馆旁边。
xiàwǔ shì yùndònghuì tiánjìng chǎngdì jiù zài chǎngguǎn pángbiān · The sports meet is this afternoon! The athletics ground is right next to the stadium.

xiaoming 今年的赛事真多：体操、跳水、射击，冬天还有滑冰和滑雪。
jīnnián de sàishì zhēn duō tǐcāo tiàoshuǐ shèjī dōngtiān hái yǒu huábīng hé huáxuě · So many events this year: gymnastics, diving, shooting, and skating and skiing in the winter.

dr li 开幕的时候，运动员们先绕场一周。
kāimù de shíhou yùndòngyuánmen xiān rào chǎng yì zhōu · At the opening, the athletes first do a lap of the ground.

little sister 快看！我们班的同学从起点开始飞速奔跑，第一个到了终点！
kuài kàn wǒmen bān de tóngxué cóng qǐdiǎn kāishǐ fēisù bēnpǎo dì yī gè dào le zhōngdiǎn · Look! Our classmate raced off from the start and got to the finish first!

xiaoming 来，大家齐声喊：“加油！”
lái dàjiā qí shēng hǎn jiāyóu · Come on, everyone, all together: “Go!”

dr li 他夺得了金牌！上次只拿了银牌，这次总算战胜了对手。
tā duó dé le jīnpái shàng cì zhǐ ná le yínpái zhè cì zǒngsuàn zhànshèng le duìshǒu · He’s won gold! Last time he only got silver; this time he finally beat his rival.

little sister 二班是季军，拿了铜牌。
èr bān shì jìjūn ná le tóngpái · Class Two came third and got bronze.

xiaoming 今年的选拔特别难，很多人第一轮就被淘汰了。
jīnnián de xuǎnbá tèbié nán hěn duō rén dì yī lún jiù bèi táotài le · The selection was really tough this year: lots of people were knocked out in the first round.

little sister 体育俱乐部的解说员说得太精彩了，我都顾不上看比赛了！
tǐyù jùlèbù de jiěshuō yuán shuō de tài jīngcǎi le wǒ dōu gùbùshàng kàn bǐsài le · The sports club’s commentator was so good I could hardly watch the races!

xiaoming 我的装备都带了，晚上我们去打台球吧。棒球我可不会。
wǒ de zhuāngbèi dōu dài le wǎnshang wǒmen qù dǎ táiqiú ba bàngqiú wǒ kě bú huì · I’ve brought all my gear. Let’s play pool tonight. Baseball I can’t do.

dr li 你们去吧。明天我要去钓鱼，好好休息一下。
nǐmen qù ba míngtiān wǒ yào qù diàoyú hǎohǎo xiūxi yíxià · You go. Tomorrow I’m going fishing for a good rest.

chapter 5 the go contest and the prizes

dr li 小明，你真的报名参加围棋比赛了？
Xiǎomíng nǐ zhēn de bàomíng cānjiā wéiqí bǐsài le · Xiaoming, did you really enter the Go contest?

xiaoming 是啊。上次我败给您以后，每天晚上都在练。
shì a shàng cì wǒ bài gěi nín yǐhòu měi tiān wǎnshang dōu zài liàn · Yes. After you beat me last time, I've practised every night.

dr li 围棋跟象棋不一样，棋子只有黑白两种。对手是谁？
wéiqí gēn xiàngqí bù yíyàng qízǐ zhǐ yǒu hēi bái liǎng zhǒng duìshǒu shì shéi · Go isn't like Chinese chess: the pieces are only black and white. Who's your opponent?

xiaoming 一个大学生，排名第一，是个高手。不过人家才十九岁，我不怕！
yí gè dàxuéshēng páimíng dì yī shì gè gāoshǒu búguò rénjia cái shíjiǔ suì wǒ bú pà · A student ranked number one: an ace. But he's only nineteen. I'm not scared!

dr li 下围棋要有耐心，别一开始就想着击败他。
xià wéiqí yào yǒu nàixīn bié yì kāishǐ jiù xiǎng zhe jībài tā · Go needs patience. Don't go in thinking only of beating him.

xiaoming 知道啦。三局两胜，第一局我输了，第二局我赢了！
zhīdào la sān jú liǎng shèng dì yī jú wǒ shū le dì èr jú wǒ yíng le · I know. It's best of three: I lost the first game and won the second!

dr li 最后一局了。不管胜败，你能走到这里，已经超越自己了。
zuìhòu yì jú le bùguǎn shèng bài nǐ néng zǒu dào zhèlǐ yǐjīng chāoyuè zìjǐ le · Last game. Win or lose, getting this far means you've gone beyond yourself.

professor chen 下面公布今年文艺节的评选结果！
xiàmiàn gōngbù jīnnián wényìjié de píngxuǎn jiéguǒ · And now, the results of this year's arts festival!

professor chen 最佳演出：话剧社的喜剧！剧本新颖，情节贴近生活，主角塑造得非常鲜明。
zuìjiā yǎnchū huàjù shè de xǐjù jùběn xīnyǐng qíngjié tiējìn shēnghuó zhǔjué sùzào de fēicháng xiānmíng · Best show: the drama club's comedy! An original script, a plot true to life and a vivid lead character.

little sister 我们赢啦！安娜，这份荣誉也有你一份！
wǒmen yíng la Ānnà zhè fèn róngyù yě yǒu nǐ yí fèn · We won! Anna, this honour is yours too!

professor chen 围棋竞赛：经过一番激烈的争夺，冠军是那位十九岁的同学，亚军是李小明！
wéiqí jìngsài jīngguò yì fān jīliè de zhēngduó guànjūn shì nà wèi shíjiǔ suì de tóngxué yàjūn shì Lǐ Xiǎomíng · The Go contest: after a fierce battle, the champion is our nineteen-year-old, and the runner-up is Li Xiaoming!

xiaoming 亚军也很好嘛！我拿到了人生中的第一块奖牌。
yàjūn yě hěn hǎo ma wǒ ná dào le rénshēng zhōng de dì yī kuài jiǎngpái · Second is great! It's the first medal of my life.

anna 这个周末过得真圆满。录像发到网上以后，我们都要出名啦！
zhège zhōumò guò de zhēn yuánmǎn lùxiàng fā dào wǎngshang yǐhòu wǒmen dōu yào chūmíng la · What a perfect weekend. Once the video's online, we'll all be famous!

Unit 11 done: you can review a show, praise a musician, judge a design and commentate a game, all in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 83 festivals and customs

Chinese HSK 6 in 90 days
unit 12 · culture & history

Talk about festivals and customs: what people eat, hang and say, and where traditions come from.

Festivals are when Chinese families gather, and knowing the customs and good wishes makes you part of the table.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
习俗	xísú	custom, tradition	过年吃饺子是北方的习俗。 Eating dumplings at New Year is a northern custom.
民俗	mínsú	folk customs	这个小镇保留了很多传统民俗。 This little town has kept many traditional folk customs.
民间	mínjiān	among the people, folk	这个故事在民间流传了几百年。 This story has been told among ordinary people for centuries.
拜年	bàinián	to pay a New Year call	大年初一，孩子们去给爷爷奶奶拜年。 On New Year's Day, the children go to wish their grandparents a happy New Year.
元宵	yuánxiāo	Lantern Festival; sweet rice ball	元宵节晚上，大家一起看灯。 On the night of the Lantern Festival, everyone goes out to see the lanterns.
汤圆	tāngyuán	sweet rice dumpling (tangyuan)	南方人元宵节喜欢吃汤圆。 In the south, people like to eat tangyuan at the Lantern Festival.
粽子	zòngzi	zongzi (sticky rice in leaves)	粽子有甜的，也有咸的。 Zongzi can be sweet or savoury.
灯笼	dēnglong	lantern	过年的时候，家家门口都挂着红灯笼。 At New Year, red lanterns hang at every door.
团圆	tuányuán	to be reunited (family)	过年最重要的是一家人团圆。 What matters most at New Year is the whole family being together.
喜事	xǐshì	happy event (often a wedding)	听说你家有喜事，恭喜恭喜！ I hear your family has happy news: congratulations!
仪式	yíshì	ceremony	婚礼的仪式简单又温暖。 The wedding ceremony was simple and warm.
祝福	zhùfú	to bless; blessing, good wishes	新年到了，我给大家送上最好的祝福。 The New Year's here: my very best wishes to you all.
祝愿	zhùyuàn	to wish (formal)	祝愿你们身体健康，生活幸福！ Wishing you good health and a happy life!
吉祥	jíxiáng	lucky, auspicious	在中国，红色是一种吉祥的颜色。 In China, red is a lucky colour.

属	shǔ	to be born in the year of	我属龙，我妹妹属马。 I was born in the Year of the Dragon, my sister in the Year of the Horse.
神	shén	god (in myths); amazing	你猜得这么准，真是神了！ You guessed it exactly: that's uncanny!
神奇	shénqí	magical, amazing	这种花只{zhi3}在晚上开，真神奇。 This flower only opens at night: amazing.
相传	xiāngchuán	legend has it	相传，这口{=(measure word for wells)}井已经有一千年了。 Legend has it this well is a thousand years old.
由来	yóulái	origin (of a name, a custom)	你知道这个节日的由来吗? Do you know how this festival began?
源于	yuányú	to come from, originate in	很多节日习俗都源于古代的生活。 Many festival customs come from everyday life in ancient times.
起源	qǐyuán	origin; to originate	关于这个节日的起源，有好几种说法。 There are several stories about how this festival began.
样	yàng	kind, type (measure word)	桌子上摆了十几样菜。 There were a dozen or more dishes on the table.
未	wèi	not yet (written)	这个问题至今未解决。 This problem still hasn't been solved.

pattern time adverbs: 一向, 不时, 依旧, 仍旧, 一时

subject | **一向 / 不时 / 依旧 / 仍旧** | **verb or adjective**

一向 is "always, all along" (a habit); 不时 is "every so often"; 依旧 and 仍旧 are "still, as before", a little more written than 还是. 一时 is "for a moment".

他一向很准时。 **tā yíxiàng hěn zhǔnshí** He's always on time.

十年没见，她依旧那么年轻。 **shí nián méi jiàn tā yījiù nàme niánqīng** Ten years on, she looks as young as ever.

雨仍旧下个不停。 **yǔ réngjiù xià gè bù tíng** The rain still hasn't stopped.

窗外不时传来孩子们的笑声。 **chuāng wài bùshí chuán lái háizimen de xiào shēng** Every now and then, children's laughter drifts in through the window.

dialogue the lantern festival

ms zhang 安娜，快进来！今天是元宵节，我们一起吃汤圆。
Ānnà kuài jinlai jīntiān shì yuánxiāo jié wǒmen yìqǐ chī tāngyuán · Anna, come in! It's the Lantern Festival: let's have tangyuan together.

anna 谢谢阿姨！北方人吃的叫元宵，南方人吃的叫汤圆，对吗？
xièxie āyí běifāng rén chī de jiào yuánxiāo nánfāng rén chī de jiào tāngyuán duì ma · Thank you! In the north they're called yuanxiao and in the south tangyuan, right?

ms zhang 对。我是南方人，所以我们家一向吃汤圆。
duì wǒ shì nánfāng rén suǒyǐ wǒmen jiā yíxiàng chī tāngyuán · Right. I'm from the south, so we've always had tangyuan.

xiaoming 吃完我们去公园看灯笼吧。今年有一个超大的灯笼，十米高，特别神奇！
chī wán wǒmen qù gōngyuán kàn dēnglong ba jīnnián yǒu yí gè chāo dà de dēnglong shí mǐ gāo tèbié shénqí · After we eat, let's go and see the lanterns in the park. There's a giant one this year, ten metres high: amazing!

little sister 相传，元宵节看灯的习俗已经有两千年了。
xiāngchuán yuánxiāo jié kàn dēng de xísú yǐjīng yǒu liǎngqiān nián le · Legend says the custom of lantern-watching is two thousand years old.

anna 这个节日的起源是什么？
zhège jiérì de qǐyuán shì shénme · How did the festival begin?

little sister 关于它的由来，民间有好几种说法，有人说它源于古代的一个仪式。
guānyú tā de yóulái mínjiān yǒu hǎo jǐ zhǒng shuōfǎ yǒu rén shuō tā yuányú gǔdài de yí gè yíshì · There are several folk stories about it; some say it comes from an ancient ceremony.

dr li 不管怎么说，最重要的是一家人团圆。来，我祝愿大家新的一年身体健康！
bùguǎn zěnme shuō zuì zhòngyào de shì yì jiā rén tuányuán lái wǒ zhùyuàn dàjiā xīn de yì nián shēntǐ jiànkāng · Whatever the story, what matters is the family together. Here's to good health for everyone this year!

anna 我也送上我的祝福：祝大家新年吉祥！
wǒ yě sòng shàng wǒ de zhùfú zhù dàjiā xīnnián jíxiáng · And my good wishes too: a lucky New Year to you all!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

吉
jí
lucky

宵
xiāo
night

good to know · 你属什么？ asks which of the twelve zodiac animals you were born under. It's a polite way to guess someone's age within twelve years. 神 in everyday talk often just means "amazing, uncanny": 太神了！ 神 also appears in 神话 (myths) and 精神 (spirit). 习俗 is any custom of a place or festival (过年的习俗); 民俗 is folk culture as a whole: 民俗文化, 民俗表演. The everyday word for local ways is 风俗.

You can now join a festival table, ask how a custom began and give your good wishes like family.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 84 the chinese language

Talk about the Chinese language itself: tones, syllables, dialects, idioms, poetry and writing.

After five levels, you can finally talk about Chinese in Chinese, and that's when it becomes yours.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
成语	chéngyǔ	chengyu (four-character idiom)	“一模一样”是一个常用的成语。 “Yi mu yi yang” (exactly alike) is a common idiom.
方言	fāngyán	dialect	爷爷说的方言，我只能听懂一半。 I can only understand half of Grandpa's dialect.
母语	mǔyǔ	mother tongue	安娜的母语不是中文，可是她的中文说得很地道。 Chinese isn't Anna's mother tongue, but her Chinese sounds very natural.
声调	shēngdiào	tone (of a syllable)	普通话有四个声调，还有一个轻声。 Mandarin has four tones, plus a neutral tone.
音节	yīnjié	syllable	一个汉字一般就是一个音节。 One Chinese character is usually one syllable.
言语	yányǔ	speech, words	他的言语中带着对家乡的想念。 His words were full of longing for home.
含义	hányì	meaning, implication	这个成语的含义是什么? What does this idiom mean?
符号	fúhào	symbol, sign	拼音上面的这些小符号表示声调。 The little marks above the pinyin show the tones.
诗词	shīcí	classical poetry	很多中国孩子从小就会背{bei4-5}古代诗词。 Lots of Chinese children learn classical poems by heart from an early age.
诗歌	shīgē	poetry, poems	她在大学里研究现代诗歌。 She studies modern poetry at university.
书写	shūxiě	to write (formal)	请用中文书写你的名字。 Please write your name in Chinese.
书画	shūhuà	calligraphy and painting	陈教授家里挂着很多书画。 Professor Chen's home is full of calligraphy and paintings.
横	héng	horizontal; horizontal stroke	“三”字有三个横。 The character 三 has three horizontal strokes.
竖	shù	vertical; vertical stroke	写“十”的时候，先写横，再写竖。 To write 十, write the horizontal stroke first, then the vertical.
尺	chǐ	chi (a third of a metre); ruler	一尺大约是三十三厘米。 One chi is about thirty-three centimetres.
寸	cùn	cun (about 3.3 cm), inch	十寸是一尺。 Ten cun make one chi.

识	shí	to know, recognise	他三岁就开始识字了。 He started learning to read at three.
误	wù	to miss, delay; by mistake	路上堵车，我差点儿误了飞机。 There was traffic, and I nearly missed my flight.
限	xiàn	to limit	这本书很受欢迎，每人限买两本。 The book is so popular it's limited to two per person.
限于	xiànyú	to be limited to	这次活动限于我们学校的学生参加。 This event is open only to students of our school.
尽	jìn	to use up; to the utmost	我会尽最大的努力。 I'll do my very best.
免	miǎn	to exempt, avoid	六岁以下的孩子免票。 Children under six get in free.

pattern 把 with a thing as the subject

a thing or event | **把** | **what it affects** | **verb + result**

The subject of 把 doesn't have to be a person. Rain, a word, a tone or a mistake can 把 something into a new state: 一场雨把路弄湿了 (the rain got the road wet). The verb always ends with its result.

一场雨把路弄湿了。 **yì chǎng yǔ bǎ lù nòng shī le** The rain made the road wet.

一个错字把整个句子的意思都改了。 **yí gè cuò zì bǎ zhěnggè jùzi de yìsi dōu gǎi le** One wrong character changed the meaning of the whole sentence.

这道题把我难住了。 **zhè dào tí bǎ wǒ nánzhù le** This question has me stumped.

大风把门吹开了。 **dà fēng bǎ mén chuī kāi le** The wind blew the door open.

dialogue tones and idioms

teacher wang 安娜，好久不见！你的中文越来越地道了。
Ānnà hǎojiǔ bújiàn nǐ de Zhōngwén yuè lái yuè dìdao le · Anna, long time no see! Your Chinese sounds more and more natural.

anna 谢谢王老师！不过声调还是不太准。上次我说“买”，一个声调把意思全改成了“卖”。
xièxie Wánglǎoshī búguò shēngdiào háishi bú tài zhǔn shàng cì wǒ shuō mǎi yí gè shēngdiào bǎ yìsi quán gǎichéng le mài · Thank you! But my tones still slip. Last time I said “buy”, and one tone turned it into “sell”.

teacher wang 哈哈，很多学生都犯过这个错。普通话的每个音节都有声调，母语没有声调的人常常觉得这一点最难。
hā hā hěn duō xuéshēng dōu fàn guo zhège cuò pǔtōnghuà de měi gè yīnjié dōu yǒu shēngdiào mǔyǔ méiyǒu shēngdiào de rén chángcháng juéde zhèyìdiǎn zuì nán · Ha, lots of students make that mistake. Every syllable in Mandarin has a tone, and if your mother tongue has none, that’s often the hardest part.

anna 还有方言！我去南方旅行，当地人说的方言，我一点儿也听不懂。
hái yǒu fāngyán wǒ qù nánfāng lǚxíng dāngdì rén shuō de fāngyán wǒ yìdiǎnr yě tīng bu dǒng · And dialects! When I travelled in the south, I couldn’t understand the local dialect at all.

teacher wang 方言虽然不同，但是书写都用汉字，所以写下来大家都能看懂。
fāngyán suīrán bù tóng dànshì shūxiě dōu yòng Hànzì suǒyǐ xiě xialai dàjiā dōu néng kàn dǒng · Dialects differ, but they’re all written in characters, so everyone can read them.

anna 我最近在学成语，可是很多成语的含义很难猜。
wǒ zuìjìn zài xué chéngyǔ kěshì hěn duō chéngyǔ de hányì hěn nán cāi · I’ve been learning idioms lately, but their meanings are often hard to guess.

teacher wang 很多成语来自古代的诗词和故事。你可以先学一些常用的，比如“一模一样”。
hěn duō chéngyǔ láizì gǔdài de shīcí hé gùshi nǐ kěyǐ xiān xué yìxiē cháng yòng de bǐrú yìmú yíyàng · Many idioms come from classical poems and stories. Start with common ones, like “exactly alike”.

anna 下周学校有一个书画展览，我能去吗？
xià zhōu xuéxiào yǒu yí gè shūhuà zhǎnlǎn wǒ néng qù ma · There’s a calligraphy and painting show here next week. Can I come?

teacher wang 当然！参观的人不限于学生，大家都可以来，而且免票。
dāngrán cānguān de rén bú xiànyú xuéshēng dàjiā dōu kěyǐ lái érqiě miǎn piào · Of course! It isn’t just for students: everyone’s welcome, and it’s free.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

横
héng
horizontal; horizontal stroke

竖
shù
vertical; vertical stroke

good to know · 买 mǎi (buy) and 卖 mài (sell) differ only in tone. A memory picture for the characters: 卖 is 买 with an extra 十 on top. 尽 is jìn in 尽力 and 尽头, and jǐn in 尽管 and 尽量. Same character, two readings.

You can now talk about Chinese in Chinese: tones, dialects, idioms and strokes. That's a real milestone.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 85 heritage and crafts

Talk about heritage and traditional crafts: relics, sites, archaeology, masters and apprentices.

China's museums, gardens and crafts are among the world's great treasures, and a favourite HSK reading topic.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
遗产	yíchǎn	heritage; inheritance	长城{==the Great Wall}是世界文化遗产。 The Great Wall is a World Heritage site.
文物	wénwù	cultural relic, artefact	博物馆里有很多珍贵的文物。 The museum holds many precious relics.
国宝	guóbǎo	national treasure	大熊猫被称为中国的国宝。 The giant panda is called China's national treasure.
瓷器	cíqì	porcelain, china	中国的瓷器在古代就卖到了世界各地。 Chinese porcelain was sold all over the world in ancient times.
园林	yuánlín	classical garden	这座园林有山、有水，还有很多老树。 The garden has hills, water and lots of old trees.
古迹	gǔjì	historic site	北京有很多名胜古迹。 Beijing has lots of famous historic sites.
遗址	yízhǐ	ruins, archaeological site	这里发现了一个五千年前的村子遗址。 The ruins of a five-thousand-year-old village were found here.
现存	xiàncún	to be still in existence	这是现存最老的一座木头建筑。 It is the oldest wooden building still standing.
考古	kǎogǔ	archaeology; to do archaeology	她大学学的是考古，经常在外面工作。 She studied archaeology and often works out in the field.
痕迹	hénjì	trace, mark	墙上还能看到当年的痕迹。 You can still see traces of those days on the wall.
技艺	jìyì	craft, skill	这门技艺已经有八百多年的历史了。 This craft has a history of over eight hundred years.
师父	shīfu	master (teacher of a craft)	他跟着师父学了十年。 He trained under his master for ten years.
徒弟	túdì	apprentice	这位老师父一共收了五个徒弟。 The old master has taken on five apprentices in all.
传承	chuánchéng	to pass on (and carry on)	年轻人应该把这些传统传承下去。 Young people should carry these traditions on.
继承	jìchéng	to inherit, carry on	他继承了爸爸的饭馆。 He took over his dad's restaurant.
延续	yánxù	to continue, carry on	这个习俗一直延续到今天。 This custom has carried on to this day.

融合	rónghé	to blend, fuse	这家{=(measure word for businesses)}餐厅的菜融合了中西两种风格。 This restaurant's food blends Chinese and Western styles.
严	yán	strict	师父对徒弟要求很严。 The master is very strict with his apprentices.
系列	xìliè	series	电视台做了一个关于传统技艺的系列节目。 The TV station made a series about traditional crafts.
显著	xiǎnzhù	notable, marked	这几年，保护文物的工作效果显著。 Work to protect relics has shown clear results in recent years.
看似	kànsì	to seem, look like	这个问题看似简单，其实很难。 The question looks easy but is actually hard.

pattern 东一a，西一a: scattered all over

东一 measure ，西一 measure

东一个，西一个 literally says "one in the east, one in the west": things scattered here and there, untidy or random. It also works for talk: 东一句，西一句 (rambling, a bit here, a bit there).

他的衣服东一件，西一件，房间乱极了。 tā de yīfu dōng yí jiàn xī yí jiàn fángjiān luàn jí le His clothes are scattered everywhere; the room's a mess.

地上东一块，西一块，都是古代瓷器的碎片。 dì shàng dōng yí kuài xī yí kuài dōu shì gǔdài cíqì de suì piàn The ground is scattered with bits of ancient porcelain.

他说话东一句，西一句，大家都听不明白。 tā shuōhuà dōng yí jù xī yí jù dàjiā dōu tīng bu míngbai He rambles from one thing to another, and no one can follow.

dialogue the porcelain workshop

professor chen 这位老师父做瓷器已经五十年了，这门技艺在他们家传承了五代。
zhè wèi lǎo shīfu zuò cíqì yǐjīng wǔshí nián le zhè mén jìyì zài tāmen jiā chuánchéng le wǔ dài · This old master has made porcelain for fifty years. The craft has been handed down through five generations of his family.

anna 太了不起了！他的徒弟多吗？
tài liǎobuqǐ le tā de túdì duō ma · Amazing! Does he have many apprentices?

professor chen 现在有三个。师父对徒弟要求很严，一个碗做得不好，就得再做一个。
xiànzài yǒu sān gè shīfu duì túdì yāoqiú hěn yán yí gè wǎn zuò de bù hǎo jiù děi zài zuò yí gè · Three at the moment. He's strict with them: if a bowl isn't right, they have to make another.

anna 难怪地上东一个，西一个，都是没做好的碗！
nánguài dì shàng dōng yí gè xī yí gè dōu shì méi zuò hǎo de wǎn · No wonder there are rejected bowls all over the floor!

professor chen 对。看似简单的一个碗，其实要花好几天的工夫。
duì kànsì jiǎndān de yí gè wǎn qíshí yào huā hǎo jǐ tiān de gōngfu · Yes. A bowl looks simple, but it takes days of work.

anna 这个碗的颜色好特别，融合了传统和现代的风格。
zhège wǎn de yánsè hǎo tèbié rónghé le chuántǒng hé xiàndài de fēnggé · This bowl's colour is so unusual: it blends traditional and modern styles.

professor chen 你的眼光倒是不错！这是他徒弟做的，别看他才二十岁，技艺已经很高了。
nǐ de yǎnguāng dàoshì búcuò zhè shì tā túdì zuò de biékàn tā cái èrshí suì jìyì yǐjīng hěn gāo le · You've got a good eye! His apprentice made it: only twenty, and already highly skilled.

anna 我真想干脆在这里学一个月！
wǒ zhēn xiǎng gāncuì zài zhèlǐ xué yí gè yuè · I'm tempted to just stay here and learn for a month!

professor chen 好啊，你总算找到一件让你停不下来的事了。
hǎo a nǐ zǒngsuàn zhǎo dào yí jiàn ràng nǐ tíng bu xialai de shì le · Go for it: you've finally found something you can't put down.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

瓷
cí
porcelain

痕
hén
scar, mark

good to know · 师父 is a master who trains you, almost like a parent; 师傅, same sound, is a polite word for any skilled worker, and for taxi drivers. 传承 is to hand down and carry on (traditions, crafts); 继承 is to take over what someone leaves you (a business, a style, an inheritance).

You can now walk through a museum or a workshop and talk about what you see, and who keeps it alive.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 86 emperors and dynasties

Chinese HSK 6 in 90 days
unit 12 · culture & history

Talk about emperors, dynasties and the ancient world: courts, palaces, ancestors and civilisation.

History is everywhere in China, from palace tours to TV dramas, and HSK 6 texts love it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
朝代	cháodài	dynasty	中国历史上有很多朝代。 There were many dynasties in Chinese history.
皇帝	huángdì	emperor	中国的第一个皇帝在公元前二二一年统一了中国。 China's first emperor unified China in 221 BC.
国王	guówáng	king	童话里的国王总是有一个漂亮的女儿。 In fairy tales, the king always has a beautiful daughter.
王子	wángzǐ	prince	小王子要去很远的地方旅行。 The little prince is setting off on a long journey.
公主	gōngzhǔ	princess	我女儿想当公主，每天都穿着长裙子。 My daughter wants to be a princess and wears a long dress every day.
大臣	dàchén	minister (of a king or emperor)	那位大臣常常给皇帝提意见。 That minister often gave the emperor advice.
官	guān	official, officer	他的爷爷的爷爷以前当过{guo}官。 His great-great-grandfather was once an official.
宫	gōng	palace	古代的皇帝住在宫里，很少出来。 In ancient times the emperor lived in the palace and seldom came out.
天下	tiānxià	the whole world, all under heaven	天下没有免费的午饭。 There's no such thing as a free lunch.
公元	gōngyuán	AD, the Common Era	这座古城建于公元前五百年左右。 The ancient city was built around 500 BC.
古人	gǔrén	people of ancient times	古人没有手机，就写信给远方的家人。 People long ago had no phones, so they wrote letters to family far away.
后人	hòurén	later generations	他写的书，后人读了一千多年。 People have read his books for over a thousand years.
后代	hòudài	descendants	我们要把美丽的地球留给后代。 We must leave a beautiful planet to our descendants.
祖先	zǔxiān	ancestors	我们的祖先很早就开始种{zhong4}水稻了。 Our ancestors started growing rice very early on.

文明	wénmíng	civilisation; civilised	中国是世界上最古老的文明之一。 China is one of the world's oldest civilisations.
原始	yuánshǐ	primitive, original	原始人用石头做工具。 Early humans made tools out of stone.
诞生	dànshēng	to be born, come into being	世界上第一台电脑诞生于二十世纪四十年代。 The world's first computer was born in the 1940s.
开创	kāichuàng	to found, pioneer	他开创了一种新的绘画风格。 He pioneered a new style of painting.
历经	lìjīng	to go through, undergo	这座古桥历经一千年，至今还在使用。 This old bridge has stood a thousand years and is still in use.
势力	shìlì	power, influence (of a group)	那个时候，各地的势力都想控制天下。 In those days, rival powers everywhere wanted to rule the land.
跪	guì	to kneel	在古代，大臣见皇帝的时候要跪下。 In ancient times, ministers had to kneel before the emperor.

pattern 看你x的 / 瞧他x的: look how x you are!

看 / 瞧 | 你 / 他 | adjective | 的

看你急的 and 瞧他高兴的 point at how someone looks: "look how worried you are!", "look how happy he is!". It's warm teasing or concern, and often comes before advice: 瞧你急的，慢慢说.

瞧他急的，满头是汗。 **qiáo tā jí de mǎn tóu shì hàn** Look how worked up he is: his face is dripping with sweat.

看你高兴的，有什么好消息？ **kàn nǐ gāoxìng de yǒu shénme hǎo xiāoxi** Look how happy you are! What's the good news?

看你紧张的，放松一点儿。 **kàn nǐ jǐnzhāng de fàngsōng yìdiǎnr** Look how nervous you are: relax a bit.

dialogue the emperor's palace

little sister 快看，这就是古代皇帝住的宫！
kuài kàn zhè jiùshì gǔdài huángdì zhù de gōng · Look, this is where the emperors lived!

professor chen 这座宫历经六百年，二十几位皇帝都在这里住过。
zhè zuò gōng lìjīng liùbǎi nián èrshí jǐ wèi huángdì dōu zài zhèlǐ zhù guo · This palace has stood for six hundred years; over twenty emperors lived here.

anna 大臣见皇帝的时候，真的要跪下吗？
dàchén jiàn huángdì de shíhou zhēn de yào guì xià ma · Did ministers really have to kneel before the emperor?

professor chen 是的。那时候，大臣和当官的人见了皇帝都要跪。
shì de nà shíhou dàchén hé dāng guān de rén jiàn le huángdì dōu yào guì · Yes. Back then, ministers and officials all knelt before him.

anna 我们快走吧，我想把每个地方都看一遍！
wǒmen kuài zǒu ba wǒ xiǎng bǎ měi gè dìfang dōu kàn yí biàn · Let's hurry: I want to see every single corner!

little sister 瞧你急的，安娜！这么大的地方，一天看不完的。
qiáo nǐ jí de Ānnà zhème dà de dìfang yì tiān kàn bu wán de · Look at you, Anna, so impatient! A place this big takes more than a day.

anna 那倒是。可是我太兴奋了！
nà dàoshì kěshì wǒ tài xīngfèn le · That's true. But I'm so excited!

professor chen 中国有几千年的文明，从原始社会到最后一个朝代，后人一直在研究古人的生活。
Zhōngguó yǒu jǐ qiān nián de wénmíng cóng yuánshǐ shèhuì dào zuìhòu yí gè cháodài hòurén yìzhí zài yánjiū gǔrén de shēnghuó · China has thousands of years of civilisation. From the earliest societies to the last dynasty, people keep studying how the ancients lived.

little sister 小时候我总以为自己是公主，祖先一定是国王。
xiǎoshíhou wǒ zǒng yǐwéi zìjǐ shì gōngzhǔ zǔxiān yídìng shì guówáng · When I was little I was sure I was a princess, and my ancestors were kings.

professor chen 哈哈，中国古代的皇帝可不叫国王。不过天下的孩子都喜欢公主和王子的故事。
hā hā Zhōngguó gǔdài de huángdì kě bú jiào guówáng búguò tiānxià de háizi dōu xǐhuan gōngzhǔ hé wángzǐ de gùshi · Ha! Chinese emperors were never called kings. But children everywhere love stories of princesses and princes.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

皇
huáng
sovereign

臣
chén
minister, subject

诞
dàn
birth

good to know · 皇帝 is an emperor (China from 221 BC; earlier rulers were called 王); 国王 is a king, for other countries and fairy tales. 公元 is AD and 公元前 BC. Years are read digit by digit: 二二一年 is “two-two-one year”.

You can now tour a palace in Chinese, ask how the court worked and tease a friend: 瞧你急的!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 87 war and heroes

Talk about history's battles in a museum, and about everyday heroes, using the words of war and struggle carefully.

War words fill history books and the news, and many of them live double lives: 发动 starts a car, 攻击 hits a website, 抵抗力 is your immune system.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
战争	zhànzhēng	war	这本书讲的是两千年前的一场战争。 The book is about a war two thousand years ago.
战斗	zhàndòu	battle; to fight	消防员们{==firefighters}战斗了一整夜，终于把火灭了。 The firefighters battled all night and finally put the fire out.
打仗	dǎzhàng	to fight a war	爷爷常说，能不打仗，就不打仗。 Grandpa always says: if war can be avoided, avoid it.
军队	jūnduì	army, armed forces	这座城墙是古代用来保护城市、挡住军队的。 In ancient times this wall protected the city and kept out armies.
军人	jūnrén	soldier, serviceman	他爸爸以前是军人，所以他做事特别认真。 His father used to be in the army, so he does everything very carefully.
部队	bùduì	troops, unit	发生地震以后，部队马上赶去救人。 After the earthquake, troops rushed to the rescue.
兵	bīng	soldier; the soldier piece (chess)	下{=to play (chess)}象棋的时候，兵不能往后走。 In Chinese chess, the soldier can never move backward.
士兵	shìbīng	soldier	博物馆里展出了古代士兵穿的衣服。 The museum shows the clothes ancient soldiers wore.
将军	jiāngjūn	general; check! (in chess)	爸爸笑着说：“将军！你输了！” Dad grinned: “Check! You've lost!”
率领	shuàilǐng	to lead, head	队长率领球队拿下了冠军。 The captain led the team to the title.
命令	mìnglìng	to order; order, command	我又不是你的士兵，别用命令的|口气{==tone (of voice)}跟我说话！ I'm not your soldier: don't talk to me like you're giving orders!
发动	fādòng	to start (an engine); launch	天太冷了，车怎么也发动不起来。 It was so cold the car just wouldn't start.
攻击	gōngjī	to attack	公司的网站昨天受到了网络攻击。 The company website was hit by a cyber attack yesterday.
抵抗	dǐkàng	to resist	多运动可以提高身体的|抵抗力{==resistance, immunity}。 Exercise boosts your body's resistance.

斗争	dòuzhēng	to struggle, fight; struggle	她一直在和疾病斗争，从来没放弃过{guo}。 She has kept fighting her illness and never given up.
革命	gémìng	revolution	手机给我们的生活带来了一场革命。 Phones have revolutionised our lives.
解放	jiěfàng	to liberate, free	有了洗衣机，我们的双手被解放了。 Washing machines have set our hands free.
英雄	yīngxióng	hero	那位救了孩子的司机，大家都叫他英雄。 Everyone calls the driver who saved the child a hero.
武器	wǔqì	weapon	这个博物馆展出了很多古代的武器。 The museum displays many ancient weapons.
枪	qiāng	gun	这把{=(measure word: things with a handle)}老枪是一百多年前的，现在放在博物馆里。 This old gun is over a century old and now sits in a museum.
剑	jiàn	sword	这把{=(measure word: things with a handle)}剑有两千多年了，还是{==still}很亮。 This sword is over two thousand years old and still shines.
箭	jiàn	arrow	他第一次射箭就成功了。 He got it right on his very first try at archery.
杀	shā	to kill	好的将军都明白：能少杀一个人，就少杀一个人。 Good generals know: every life you can spare, spare it.

pattern 把 + the person affected: 这件事把他急坏了

a thing or event | 把 | a person | feeling + 坏了 / 得……

Here 把 is followed by the person who feels something, and the cause comes first: 这个消息把大家高兴坏了 (the news made everyone over the moon). Endings like 坏了, 死了 and 得…… say how strong the feeling was.

这个消息把大家高兴坏了。 **zhège xiāoxi bǎ dàjiā gāoxìng huài le** The news made everyone over the moon.

这场比赛把运动员们累坏了。 **zhè chǎng bǐsài bǎ yùndòngyuánmen lèi huài le** The match wore the players out.

洗衣机把妈妈的双手解放了出来。 **xǐyījī bǎ māma de shuāng shǒu jiěfàng le chulai** The washing machine freed Mum's hands.

dialogue the history hall

xiaoming 陈教授，这里展出的都是古代的武器吗？
Chénjiàoshòu zhèlǐ zhǎnchū de dōu shì gǔdài de wǔqì ma · Professor Chen, are these all ancient weapons?

professor chen 对。你看，这把剑有两千多年了，那边是古代士兵用的箭。
duì nǐ kàn zhè bǎ jiàn yǒu liǎngqiān duō nián le nàbiān shì gǔdài shìbīng yòng de jiàn · Yes. Look, this sword is over two thousand years old, and those are arrows ancient soldiers used.

xiaoming 那把枪呢？看起来不太老。
nà bǎ qiāng ne kànqǐlai bú tài lǎo · What about that gun? It doesn't look so old.

professor chen 那把枪是一百多年前的。博物馆把它放在这里，是想让大家记住战争带来的痛苦。
nà bǎ qiāng shì yìbǎi duō nián qián de bówùguǎn bǎ tā fàng zài zhèlǐ shì xiǎng ràng dàjiā jìzhù zhànzhēng dài lái de tòngkǔ · That gun is just over a century old. The museum shows it so that people remember the pain war brings.

xiaoming 古代的将军率领军队打仗，一定很辛苦。
gǔdài de jiāngjūn shuàilǐng jūnduì dǎzhàng yídìng hěn xīnkǔ · Leading an army in ancient wars must have been hard.

professor chen 是啊。可是最了不起的将军，往往是能不打仗就不打仗的人。好的将军都明白：能少杀一个人，就少杀一个人。
shì a kěshì zuì liǎobuqǐ de jiāngjūn wǎngwǎng shì néng bù dǎzhàng jiù bù dǎzhàng de rén hǎo de jiāngjūn dōu míngbai néng shǎo shā yí gè rén jiù shǎo shā yí gè rén · Yes. But the greatest generals were often those who avoided war if they could. Good generals know: every life you can spare, spare it.

xiaoming 我觉得真正的英雄是保护大家的人，比如救人的军人和消防员。
wǒ juéde zhēnzhèng de yīngxióng shì bǎohù dàjiā de rén bǐrú jiù rén de jūnrén hé xiāofángyuán · I think real heroes are the people who protect us, like the soldiers and firefighters who save lives.

professor chen 好你个小明，说得比我还好！
hǎo nǐ gè Xiǎomíng shuō de bǐ wǒ hái hǎo · Well, Xiaoming, you put that better than I could!

xiaoming 哈哈，这些都是跟您学的嘛！
hā hā zhèxiē dōu shì gēn nín xué de ma · Ha, I learned it all from you!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

仗
zhàng
battle

兵
bīng
soldier; the soldier piece (chess)

攻
gōng
to attack

英
yīng
outstanding



雄
xióng
male, mighty



枪
qiāng
gun



good to know · 好你个X is teasing or scolding, depending on tone: 好你个小明！ can be “why, you rascal!” or “well done, you!”. Many war words have peaceful everyday uses: 发动 a car, 攻击 a website, 抵抗力 immunity, 解放双手 free your hands, 战斗 a fire.

You can now walk through a history museum in Chinese, and talk about courage in a way that honours peace.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 88 mission: the museum night

Chinese HSK 6 in 90 days
unit 12 · culture & history

Follow a museum night from hall to hall: festivals, the Chinese language, crafts, dynasties and the history of war, with the words of unit 12.

The last mission ties the course together: one evening where every unit you have learned comes back.

chapter 1 lanterns at the door

anna 哇，门口挂满了红灯笼，像过年一样！
wā ménkǒu guà mǎn le hóng dēnglong xiàng guònián yíyàng · Wow, the entrance is full of red lanterns, just like New Year!

professor chen 今天是博物馆之夜，恰好也是元宵节。欢迎大家！
jīntiān shì bówùguǎn zhī yè qiàhǎo yě shì yuánxiāo jié huānyíng dàjiā · It's museum night, and it happens to be the Lantern Festival too. Welcome, everyone!

little sister 元宵节当然要吃汤圆！门口还有三样传统小吃，可以免费尝尝。
yuánxiāo jié dāngrán yào chī tāngyuán ménkǒu hái yǒu sān yàng chuántǒng xiǎochī kěyǐ miǎnfèi cháng chang · The Lantern Festival means sweet rice balls, of course! And there are three kinds of traditional snacks at the door to try for free.

xiaoming 在北方，我们一般叫它“元宵”，南方人才叫“汤圆”。
zài běifāng wǒmen yìbān jiào tā yuánxiāo nánfāng rén cái jiào tāngyuán · In the north we usually call them yuanxiao; it's southerners who say tangyuan.

anna 那为什么要挂灯笼呢？这个习俗源于什么？
nà wèi shénme yào guà dēnglong ne zhège xísú yuányú shénme · So why hang lanterns? Where does the custom come from?

professor chen 关于它的起源，民间有很多说法。相传两千多年前就有了。
guānyú tā de qǐyuán mínjiān yǒu hěn duō shuōfǎ xiāngchuán liǎngqiān duō nián qián jiù yǒu le · There are lots of folk stories about its origin. Legend has it that it goes back over two thousand years.

professor chen 不过大家都同意一件事：灯笼和汤圆，都象征着团圆。
búguò dàjiā dōu tóngyì yí jiàn shì dēnglong hé tāngyuán dōu xiàngzhēng zhe tuányuán · But everyone agrees on one thing: lanterns and rice balls both stand for the family being together.

little sister 你们看，这个灯笼会自己转，太神奇了！
nǐmen kàn zhège dēnglong huì zìjǐ zhuǎn tài shénqí le · Look, this lantern turns by itself. Amazing!

ms zhang 今年是龙年，小明属龙。我们家今年喜事特别多！
jīnnián shì lóng nián Xiǎomíng shǔ lóng wǒmen jiā jīnnián xǐshì tèbié duō · It's the Year of the Dragon, and Xiaoming was born in a dragon year. Our family has had so many happy events this year!

anna 那我祝福你们！也祝愿大家新的一年一切顺利。
nà wǒ zhùfú nǐmen yě zhùyuàn dàjiā xīn de yì nián yíqiè shùnlì · Then my best wishes to you! And I wish everyone every success in the new year.

professor chen 八点有一个点灯仪式，现在还未开始。我们先进去吧。
bā diǎn yǒu yí gè diǎn dēng yíshì xiànzài hái wèi kāishǐ wǒmen xiān jìnqù ba · There's a lantern-lighting ceremony at eight, and it hasn't started yet. Let's go in first.

chapter 2 the hall of words

little sister 教授，听说今天晚上还有一个系列讲座？
jiàoshòu tīngshuō jīntiān wǎnshang hái yǒu yí gè xìliè jiǎngzuò · Professor, I hear there's a series of talks tonight?

professor chen 对，从民俗讲到考古，每个小时一个。每场限五十人，学生免票。
duì cóng mínsú jiǎng dào kǎogǔ měi gè xiǎoshí yí gè měi chǎng xiàn wǔshí rén xuéshēng miǎn piào · Yes, from folk customs to archaeology, one every hour. Each one takes fifty people at most, and students get in free.

xiaoming 好你个妹妹，又是学生又是记者，什么都不用花钱！
hǎo nǐ gè mèimei yòu shì xuéshēng yòu shì jìzhě shénme dōu búyòng huā qián · Why, you! A student and a reporter: you never pay for anything!

little sister 人家可是来工作的！我要写一篇关于文物保护的专题。
rénjia kěshì lái gōngzuò de wǒ yào xiě yì piān guānyú wénwù bǎohù de zhuāntí · I'm here to work, you know! I'm writing a feature on protecting relics.

teacher wang 这里讲的是汉字和汉语。展览不限于文字，还有诗词、诗歌和书画。
zhèlǐ jiǎng de shì Hànzì hé Hànyǔ zhǎnlǎn bú xiànyú wénzì hái yǒu shīcí shīgē hé shūhuà · This part is about Chinese characters and the language. It's not just writing: there's poetry and calligraphy and painting too.

anna 这幅字写得真大，有五尺长吧？每个字都有好几寸。
zhè fú zì xiě de zhēn dà yǒu wǔ chǐ cháng ba měi gè zì dōu yǒu hǎojǐ cùn · This calligraphy is huge: five chi long, surely? Each character is several cun across.

teacher wang 古人书写的时候，是从上往下竖着写的。写字也有规矩：先横后竖。
gǔrén shūxiě de shíhou shì cóng shàng wǎng xià shù zhe xiě de xiě zì yě yǒu guīju xiān héng hòu shù · In the old days people wrote from top to bottom, in columns. And there are rules for each character: horizontal stroke first, then vertical.

dr li 古时候，识字的人很少。能写一手好字，很受尊重。
gǔ shíhou shí zì de rén hěn shǎo néng xiě yì shǒu hǎo zì hěn shòu zūnzhòng · In ancient times, few people could read. Beautiful handwriting earned a lot of respect.

anna 我是在英国长大的，母语不是汉语。对我来说，最难的是声调。
wǒ shì zài Yīngguó zhǎng dà de mǔyǔ bú shì Hànyǔ duì wǒ lái shuō zuì nán de shì shēngdiào · I grew up in the UK, so Chinese isn't my mother tongue. For me, the hardest part is the tones.

teacher wang 汉语一个字就是一个音节，声调一变，意思就变了。中国还有很多方言呢。
Hànyǔ yí gè zì jiùshì yí gè yīnjié shēngdiào yí biàn yìsi jiù biàn le Zhōngguó hái yǒu hěn duō fāngyán ne · In Chinese each character is one syllable: change the tone and you change the meaning. And China has lots of dialects too.

xiaoming 我最喜欢成语，四个字就能讲一个故事。
wǒ zuì xǐhuan chéngyǔ sì gè zì jiù néng jiǎng yí gè gùshi · I love chengyu best: four characters can tell a whole story.

teacher wang 不过很多人误用成语，闹出笑话。言语要谨慎，用之前最好查一查。
búguò hěn duō rén wù yòng chéngyǔ nào chū xiàohua yányǔ yào jǐnshèn yòng zhīqián zuìhǎo chá yi cha · But lots of people misuse chengyu and make fools of themselves. Words need care: look an idiom up before you use it.

chapter 3 masters and apprentices

anna 这些瓷器真精美！那个碗看似很普通，为什么放在中间？
zhèxiē cíqì zhēn jīngměi nàge wǎn kànsì hěn pǔtōng wèi shénme fàng zài zhōngjiān · This porcelain is exquisite! That bowl looks so ordinary: why is it in the middle?

professor chen 因为它是国宝，是现存最老的一件。考古人员在一个遗址里找到它的时候，上面东一块，西一块，都是泥。
yīnwèi tā shì guóbǎo shì xiàncún zuì lǎo de yí jiàn kǎogǔ rényuán zài yí gè yízhǐ lǐ zhǎo dào tā de shíhou shàngmiàn dōng yí kuài xī yí kuài dōu shì ní · Because it's a national treasure, the oldest that survives. When archaeologists found it at a site, it was caked in mud all over.

anna 碗上还能看到一些修补的痕迹。
wǎn shàng hái néng kàn dào yìxiē xiū bǔ de hénjì · You can still see some traces of repairs on the bowl.

professor chen 对。我们会尽全力保护这些文物，让它们一直延续下去。
duì wǒmen huì jìn quánlì bǎohù zhèxiē wénwù ràng tāmen yìzhí yánxù xiaqu · Yes. We do everything we can to protect these relics, so that they last.

little sister 你们看那边！一位老师父在画瓷器，旁边站着他的徒弟。
nǐmen kàn nàbiān yí wèi lǎo shīfu zài huà cíqì pángbiān zhàn zhe tā de túdì · Look over there! An old master is painting porcelain, with his apprentice standing beside him.

professor chen 这门技艺已经传承了几百年。师父对徒弟要求特别严，一笔都不能错。
zhè mén jìyì yǐjīng chuánchéng le jǐ bǎi nián shīfu duì túdì yāoqiú tèbié yán yì bǐ dōu bù néng cuò · This craft has been passed down for hundreds of years. The master is very strict with his apprentice: not one brushstroke can be wrong.

ms zhang 现在的年轻人还愿意继承这种老技艺吗？
xiànzài de niánqīng rén hái yuànyì jìchéng zhè zhǒng lǎo jìyì ma · Are young people today still willing to carry on an old craft like this?

professor chen 越来越多了。有的人把传统技艺和现代设计融合在一起，效果很显著。
yuè lái yuè duō le yǒude rén bǎ chuántǒng jìyì hé xiàndài shèjì rónghé zài yìqǐ xiàoguǒ hěn xiǎnzhù · More and more of them. Some blend the traditional craft with modern design, and the results are striking.

teacher wang 楼上还有一个展览，介绍南方的园林和古迹。
lóu shàng hái yǒu yí gè zhǎnlǎn jièshào nánfāng de yuánlín hé gǔjì · Upstairs there's another exhibition on the classical gardens and historic sites of the south.

chapter 4 emperors, generals and heroes

professor chen 第一部分讲的是原始社会。我们的祖先用石头做工具，慢慢地，文明就诞生了。
dì yī bùfen jiǎng de shì yuánshǐ shèhuì wǒmen de zǔxiān yòng shítou zuò gōngjù màn màn de wénmíng jiù dànshēng le · The first part is about early human society. Our ancestors made tools from stone, and little by little civilisation was born.

professor chen 后来，中国历经了很多朝代。每个朝代的开创者，都想统一天下。
hòulái Zhōngguó lìjīng le hěn duō cháodài měi gè cháodài de kāichuàng zhě dōu xiǎng tǒngyī tiānxià · Later, China went through many dynasties. Each dynasty's founder wanted to unite the whole land.

little sister 西方叫国王、王子、公主，中国叫皇帝，对吧?
xīfāng jiào guówáng wángzǐ gōngzhǔ Zhōngguó jiào huángdì duì ba · In the West they say king, prince and princess, and in China it's the emperor, right?

professor chen 差不多。皇帝和他的家人住在宫里，下面有很多官，帮他管理国家。大臣见了皇帝还得跪下。
chàbuduō huángdì hé tā de jiārén zhù zài gōng lǐ xiàmiàn yǒu hěn duō guān bāng tā guǎnlǐ guójiā dàchén jiàn le huángdì hái děi guì xià · More or less. The emperor and his family lived in the palace, with lots of officials under him to help run the country. Ministers even had to kneel when they saw him.

dr li 你们看，这是皇帝用过的毛笔，旁边是大臣写给他的信。
nǐmen kàn zhè shì huángdì yòng guo de máobǐ pángbiān shì dàchén xiě gěi tā de xìn · Look, this is a brush an emperor used, and next to it a letter a minister wrote to him.

professor chen 可是到了后期，地方势力越来越大，这个朝代就结束了。
kěshì dào le hòuqī dìfang shìlì yuè lái yuè dà zhège cháodài jiù jiéshù le · But towards the end, regional powers grew stronger and stronger, and the dynasty came to an end.

xiaoming 这把剑也好酷！我能不能摸一下?
zhè bǎ jiàn yě hǎo kù wǒ néng bu néng mō yíxià · This sword is so cool too! Can I touch it?

professor chen 瞧你急的！文物都不能摸，这是规定。
qiáo nǐ jí de wénwù dōu bù néng mō zhè shì guīdìng · Look at you, so eager! You can't touch the relics: those are the rules.

xiaoming 那倒是。要是每个人都摸一下，它早就坏了。
nà dàoshì yàoshi měi gè rén dōu mō yíxià tā zǎo jiù huài le · Fair enough. If everyone touched it, it would have been ruined long ago.

professor chen 这把剑是公元前三百年左右的。一位将军率领军队抵抗敌人，用的就是它。
zhè bǎ jiàn shì gōngyuán qián sānbǎi nián zuǒyòu de yí wèi jiāngjūn shuàilǐng jūnduì dǐkàng dírén yòng de jiùshì tā · This sword is from around 300 BC. A general used it when he led his army against an enemy.

anna 古代打仗，除了剑，还有箭这样的武器吧?
gǔdài dǎzhàng chúle jiàn hái yǒu jiàn zhèyàng de wǔqì ba · In ancient wars, besides swords there were weapons like arrows, weren't there?

professor chen 你们看这幅画：将军正在给部队下命令，士兵们准备战斗。
nǐmen kàn zhè fú huà jiāngjūn zhèngzài gěi bùduì xià mìnglìng shìbīngmen zhǔnbèi zhàndòu · Look at this painting: the general is giving orders to his troops, and the soldiers are getting ready for battle.

anna 那些军人身上的东西看起来好重啊。
nàxiē jūnrén shēn shàng de dōngxi kànqǐlai hǎo zhòng a · The things those soldiers are carrying look so heavy.

dr li 对。可是不管哪场战争，最苦的都是普通士兵和老百姓。
duì kěshì bùguǎn nǎ chǎng zhànzhēng zuì kǔ de dōu shì pǔtōng shìbīng hé lǎobǎixìng · Yes. But in any war, it's the ordinary soldiers and people who suffer most.

professor chen 所以我们看这些文物，是为了记住历史、珍惜和平，也记住那些英雄。
suǒyǐ wǒmen kàn zhèxiē wénwù shì wèile jìzhù lìshǐ zhēnxī hépíng yě jìzhù nàxiē yīngxióng · That's why we look at these relics: to remember history, treasure peace, and remember the heroes.

chapter 5 the last quiz

dr li 将军！小明，你的兵还没过河呢，就输了。
jiāngjūn Xiǎomíng nǐ de bīng hái méi guò hé ne jiù shū le · Check! Xiaoming, your soldier hasn't even crossed the river and you've lost.

xiaoming 爸爸，您一向比我厉害。不玩了，教授的问题要开始了。
bàba nín yíxiàng bǐ wǒ lìhai bù wán le jiàoshòu de wèntí yào kāishǐ le · Dad, you've always beaten me. I'm done, Professor Chen's questions are starting.

professor chen 第一个问题：除了汤圆，还有什么传统食品跟节日有关?
dì yī gè wèntí chúle tāngyuán hái yǒu shénme chuántǒng shípǐn gēn jiérì yǒuguān · First question: besides sweet rice balls, what other traditional foods go with a festival?

little sister 粽子！还有中秋节的月饼。
zòngzi hái yǒu Zhōngqiūjié de yuèbing · Zongzi! And mooncakes at the Mid-Autumn Festival.

professor chen 答对了！最后一个问题：“一模一样”是什么意思？谁先答对，谁就有奖！
dá duì le zuìhòu yí gè wèntí yìmú yíyàng shì shénme yìsi shéi xiān dá duì shéi jiù yǒu jiǎng · Correct! Last question: what does “yi mu yi yang” mean? First right answer wins a prize!

anna 我知道！就是完全一样，没有一点儿不同。
wǒ zhīdào jiùshì wánquán yíyàng méiyǒu yìdiǎnr bù tóng · I know! It means exactly the same, without the slightest difference.

professor chen 答对了！你的奖是一个小灯笼，祝你一切吉祥。
dá duì le nǐ de jiǎng shì yí gè xiǎo dēnglong zhù nǐ yíqiè jíxiáng · Correct! Your prize is a little lantern: may everything go well for you.

teacher wang 安娜，还记得吗？你第一天来学校，只会说“你好”和“谢谢”。
Ānnà hái jìde ma nǐ dì yī tiān lái xuéxiào zhǐ huì shuō nǐhǎo hé xièxie · Anna, do you remember? On your first day at school, all you could say was “hello” and “thank you”.

anna 当然记得！现在我能看新闻、跟人讨论问题，还能在博物馆里听讲座。
dāngrán jìde xiànzài wǒ néng kàn xīnwén gēn rén tǎolùn wèntí hái néng zài bówùguǎn lǐ tīng jiǎngzuò · Of course! Now I can read the news, argue a point, and follow a talk in a museum.

teacher wang 这条路你走得不容易，可是你一直肯努力，总算走到了这里。
zhè tiáo lù nǐ zǒu de bù róngyì kěshì nǐ yìzhí kěn nǔlì zǒngsuàn zǒu dào le zhèlǐ · It hasn't been an easy road, but you kept putting in the work, and here you are at last.

anna 谢谢大家！没有你们，就没有今天的我。
xièxie dàjiā méiyǒu nǐmen jiù méiyǒu jīntiān de wǒ · Thank you, all of you! I couldn't have done it without you.

The last mission is done. From **你好** on day one of HSK 1 to museum talks in HSK 6: that road is yours.
祝你一切顺利!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**